

Content

A-Z



OWNER'S HANDBOOK. BMW X1.





WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Handbook.

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your vehicle, the easier you will find it is to operate in traffic. We therefore request:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important information on how to operate your vehicle, helping you get the most out of your BMW's technical features. It also contains information to help keep your BMW operating safely on the road and maintain its full resale value.

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook is the most up-to-date version. After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Supplementary information is provided in further on-board literature.
We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

! NOTES

Notes	6
-------------	---

⚡ QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in	22
Adjustment and operation	25
On the move	28

👉 CONTROLS

Vehicle cockpit	36
Sensors in the vehicle	40
Vehicle operating condition	45
BMW iDrive	49
BMW Remote Software Upgrade	62
Personal settings	66
Opening and closing	72
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel	100
Carrying children safely	114
Driving	126
Displays	145
Lights	165
Safety	175
Driving stability control systems	214
Driver assistance systems	219
Parking	250
Driving comfort	275
Air conditioning	276
Interior equipment	288
Storage compartments	295
Luggage compartment	298

DRIVING HINTS

Driving precautions	306
Trailers and load carriers	312
Saving fuel	321

MOBILITY

Refuelling	328
Wheels and tyres	330
Engine compartment	353
Operating fluids	356
Maintenance	367
Replacing parts	370
Help in case of a breakdown	375
Care	385

REFERENCE

Technical data	390
Seats for child restraint systems	397
Appendix	400
Everything from A to Z	402

© 2023 Bayerische Motoren Werke

Aktiengesellschaft

Munich, Germany

Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without written permission from BMW AG, Munich.

English IDCID8 II/23, -

Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

Orientation

The quickest way to find information on a particular topic or feature is to consult the alphabetical index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend the quick reference in the Owner's Handbook.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the contents of the printed Owner's Handbook are up to date.

Depending on the national-market version, there may be differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle due to updates after the editorial deadline.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

Depending on the national-market version, the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain the latest information after a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade.

Before starting a journey, ensure that the Integrated Owner's Handbook is available and up-to-date.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication is available as a printed book from Service.

These topics are also covered in the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Media overview

General

Content from the Owner's Handbook can be accessed through various media. The Owner's Handbook is available in the following media:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Handbook

The printed Owner's Handbook shows all standard equipment, national-market equipment and optional equipment which is offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Handbook shows all standard equipment, national-market equipment and optional equipment which is offered or maybe offered in future on a model-specific basis. The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown on the control display.

Selecting the Owner's Handbook

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" /
2. Select the required method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling within the Owner's Handbook

Swipe up or down until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context-sensitive help

General

The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Handbook is displayed.

Selecting context-sensitive help from a menu

1. Press and hold the desired menu item.
2. "General help"

Selecting context-sensitive help from a Check Control message

To switch directly from the Check Control message on the control display:

"Owner's Handbook"

After a software update in the vehicle

Depending on the national-market version, the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain the latest information after a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade.

Before starting a journey, ensure that the Integrated Owner's Handbook is available and up-to-date.

Supplementary Owner's Handbooks

Please also pay attention to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks which are provided along with the on-board literature as required.

Additional sources of information

Service Partner

An authorised service partner will be happy to answer any questions you may have.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW – on technology, for example – are available on the Internet: www.bmw.com.

BMW Driver's Guide App

The BMW Driver's Guide App shows all standard equipment, national-market equipment and optional equipment which is offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide web version

BMW Driver's Guide Web shows all standard, national-market and optional equipment which is offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis. BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed on any current browser.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Handbook

Icon	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts on a display in the vehicle for selecting functions.

Icon Meaning

...< Commands for the voice control system.

>...<< Replies by the voice control system.

- ▷ Selected optional equipment.
- ▷ National-market version or national-market equipment.
- ▷ Possibility of subsequent enabling and software updates.

This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.

Actions

Actions that need to be carried out are shown as a numbered list. The list of steps must be carried out in the specified sequence.

1. First action.
2. Second action.

Lists

Alternative options and lists of items with no implied sequence are shown as bullet point lists:

- ▷ First option.
- ▷ Second option.

Icon on components and assemblies

 This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Handbook.

Before starting a journey, check whether a piece of equipment or a function that is described is available in the vehicle. Information about whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or whether and when the function can be installed in the vehicle can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner.

If a piece of equipment, system or function is described in the Owner's Handbook, this does not mean that it will be available in the vehicle.

Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

If certain equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks provided.

In right-hand drive vehicles, some operating elements are arranged differently from those shown in this Owner's Handbook.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook shows all standard equipment, national-market equipment and optional equipment which is offered or will be offered on a model-specific basis, i.e. in the model range. As a result, this Owner's Handbook may also contain descriptions and illustrations of equipment, systems and functions which are not installed in the vehicle in question, for example due to:

Production date

The production date of your vehicle can be found at the bottom of the body pillar on the driver's door.

The production date is defined as the calendar month and the calendar year in which the vehicle body and the transmission assemblies are joined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

Status of the Owner's Handbook

General

The high standards of safety and quality that characterise the vehicles are ensured through ongoing development. On rare occasions, this may mean that the features described in this handbook will vary from those in your vehicle.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the contents of the printed Owner's Handbook are up to date.

Depending on the national-market version, there may be differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle due to updates after the editorial deadline.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

Depending on the national-market version, the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain the latest information after a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade.

Before starting a journey, ensure that the Integrated Owner's Handbook is available and up-to-date.

Your own safety

Intended use

Please comply with the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Information attached to the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical data of the vehicle.
- ▷ The applicable laws and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle is used.
- ▷ Vehicle papers and legal documents.

Warranty

The vehicle is technically designed for the operating conditions and approval (homologation) requirements of the country to which it was first delivered. If the vehicle is to be driven in another country, it may need to first be adapted to any different operating conditions and approval requirements prevailing in that country. If the vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country, no warranty claims can be lodged there for the vehicle. Warranty claims may also be invalidated if the electrical system has been modified, for example through the use of control units, hardware, or software which the vehicle manufacturer classifies as unsuitable. A Service Partner is able to provide further information.

Note: in addition to the warranty required by law, the selling Authorised BMW Retailers or the selling BMW AG subsidiaries in Germany grant additional benefits with the purchase of new BMW vehicles within the framework of the BMW Warranty Booklet. More information: www.bmw.de/qualitaetsbrief.

Maintenance and repairs

The advanced technology used in your vehicle, for example the state-of-the-art materials and high-performance electronics, requires appropriate maintenance and repair methods.

The manufacturer of the vehicle therefore recommends having the corresponding work carried out by an authorised Service Partner, e.g. a dealership or a BMW service partner. If you choose to use a different specialist workshop,

BMW recommends using one that performs the corresponding work, such as maintenance and repair, in accordance with BMW specifications and that employs properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Handbook, facilities of this kind are referred to as "another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop".

If work such as maintenance and repair is carried out incorrectly, it could result in subsequent damage with associated safety risks.

Incorrectly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can cause components, for example the radar sensors, to fail or malfunction, resulting in a safety hazard.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessories that are approved by BMW and are therefore suitable for this purpose.

You are recommended to consult a BMW Service Partner for advice on genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and expert advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW.

BMW accepts product responsibility for genuine BMW parts and accessories. However, BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each third-party product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Likewise no guarantee can be assumed even if the product has been granted official approval in a specific country. Tests performed for such approvals cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient.

Vehicle data and data protection

Responsibility and rights

Responsibility for data

Within the scope of data protection directives and legislation, the manufacturer of the vehicle is responsible for processing personal data which is collected when the vehicle is used or from web pages, customer support, online services, and marketing campaigns.

Personal identification

Every vehicle has a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, and with the assistance of the relevant authorities, the registered keeper can be identified from the vehicle identification number and the number plate. There are also other ways of tracing data collected in the vehicle back to the driver or registered keeper, for example via the ConnectedDrive account used.

Data protection laws

In accordance with current data protection law, vehicle users have certain rights vis-à-vis the vehicle manufacturer or companies that collect or process their personal data.

Vehicle users have a free and comprehensive right of access to their personal data which has been collected and held by organisations.

Such organisations could be:

- ▷ Vehicle manufacturer.
- ▷ Qualified Service Partners.
- ▷ Specialist workshops.
- ▷ Service providers.

Vehicle users may request information about what personal data has been saved, what it is used for and where it has come from. Proof of ownership or use is required in order to obtain this information.

The right of access also extends to information about data that has been transferred to other companies or bodies.

Please refer to the vehicle manufacturer's website for the applicable data protection policy. This data protection policy contains information about the right to have data deleted or corrected. The vehicle manufacturer's website also provides its contact details and those of its data protection officer.

The registered keeper can have the data stored in the vehicle read out by an authorised Service Partner, or another qualified Service Partner, or a specialist workshop, for a fee, as necessary.

Vehicle data is read out by the socket for on-board diagnosis, which is required by law.

Data processing

The collection of personal data may be necessary to enable the manufacturer of the vehicle to fulfil obligations to the customer or to legislators, or to offer high-quality products and services.

These include, for example:

- ▷ To fulfill contractual obligations regarding the sale, servicing and repair of vehicles, for example sales processes, maintenance.
- ▷ To fulfill contractual obligations regarding the provision of digital vehicle services, for example BMW ConnectedDrive.
- ▷ To safeguard product quality and the research and development of new products, and to optimise service processes.
- ▷ To perform sales, service and administration processes, including branches and National Sales Companies.
- ▷ To provide customer support, for example contract processing.
- ▷ To conduct advertising communication and market research on the basis of personal consent.

- ▷ To fulfill legal obligations, for example information regarding Technical Campaigns.
- ▷ To process warranty claims.

Data collection

Type of data collected

Depending on the situation, the following personal data may be collected.

Contact details

- ▷ Name, address, telephone number.
- ▷ Email address.

Personal data

- ▷ Personal information provided by customers, for example date of birth, education, household size or occupation.
- ▷ Data to determine identity, for example driver's licence.

Contract data

- ▷ Customer number, contract number, booked online services.
- ▷ Stored payment information, for example credit card number.

Credit rating

- ▷ Information about transactions.
- ▷ Information about fraud or criminal offences.

Interests

Information provided by the customer regarding areas of interest, for example product preferences, hobbies, and other personal preferences.

Use of web pages and communication

- ▷ Information on how web pages are used and whether messages are opened or forwarded.
- ▷ Account information regarding online services, customer portals, and prospective customer portals.

Transaction and interaction data

Information on the purchasing of products and services, interactions with customer support and participation in market research studies.

Use of apps and services of the vehicle manufacturer

Information on the use of apps on mobile devices and online services.

Information on vehicle functions and settings

Information on functions and settings in the vehicle, for example when using online services.

Vehicle-related sensor data and usage data

Data generated or processed in the vehicle.

- ▷ Driver assistance systems: processing of sensor data which is used to evaluate the vehicle's surroundings or the driver's behaviour.
- ▷ Personal settings: settings saved in the vehicle profile, for example seat setting.
- ▷ Multimedia, navigation, for example destinations.

Time of data collection

Personal data may be collected at the following times:

- ▷ When the customer makes direct contact with the manufacturer of the vehicle, for example via the web page.
- ▷ When requesting information on products and services or direct purchases, for example on web pages or in apps.

- ▷ When making direct purchases, for example on the web page.
- ▷ When purchasing services directly, for example online services.
- ▷ When the customer responds to direct marketing activities, for example when personal data is provided.
- ▷ When using vehicles, products, services and digital offers, for example web pages, apps.
- ▷ When communicating personal data through qualified partners of the vehicle manufacturer or through third-party providers, provided that data protection requirements are met.
- ▷ When providing personal data through certified address providers, provided that data protection requirements are met.
- ▷ When vehicle data, including the vehicle identification number, is read out during service, maintenance and repair activities.

Data in the vehicle**General**

A number of electronic control devices are installed in your vehicle. Electronic control units process data that they receive from vehicle sensors, generate themselves, or exchange with one another, for example. Many of the control units are necessary for safe operation of the vehicle, or provide assistance while driving, for example driver assistance systems. There are also control devices which manage comfort or infotainment functions.

Data saved in the vehicle can be deleted at any time. This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly requested in the course of using online services. The transfer depends on the settings selected for using the services.

Sensor data

Driver assistance systems, for example Active Cruise Control, Collision Warning, or Attentive-

ness Assistant, process sensor data which is used to evaluate the vehicle's surroundings or the driver's behaviour.

These include, for example:

- ▷ Status messages relating to the vehicle and its individual components, for example wheel speed, wheel circumferential velocity, deceleration, lateral acceleration, fastened seat belts.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, for example temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is processed within the vehicle and is usually transient. It is only saved for longer than the operating time if it is required in order to provide services agreed with the customer.

Electronic components

Electronic components, for example control devices and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component use and wear, maintenance requirements, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or the vehicle's surroundings, including:

- ▷ Operating states of system components, for example fill levels, tyre inflation pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults of important system components, for example lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses of the vehicle to particular driving situations, for example triggering of an airbag, activation of the driving stability control systems.
- ▷ Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required so that the control units can perform their functions. It is also used for detecting and rectifying malfunctions, as well as to optimise vehicle functions.

Most of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or fault memories in response to specific circumstances.

Personal settings

Convenience functions, such as seat, climate or light settings, enhance the driving experience. The personal settings for these functions can be saved in a BMW ID or in a driver profile within the vehicle and retrieved as required, for example if the settings have been changed in the meantime by another driver. Depending on the equipment, these profiles can be saved in the vehicle manufacturer's secure data systems. When changing vehicles, a BMW ID can simply be transferred to another vehicle.

The vehicle settings stored in a BMW ID or in a driver profile can be changed at any time. A BMW ID or a driver profile can be deleted at any time.

Multimedia and navigation

Data can be additionally imported into the vehicle entertainment and communication system, for example, via smartphone. The imported data can be processed within the vehicle, for example to play the user's favourite music. Depending on the equipment, this data includes:

- ▷ Multimedia data, such as music or photos, for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▷ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▷ Destinations: depending on the equipment, route guidance can be started automatically using destinations learned by the navigation system.
- ▷ Data on usage of Internet services.

This data may be saved locally in the vehicle or stored on a device that has been connected to

the vehicle, for example, a smartphone or USB stick.

Service data

General

When services are required, for example repairs, service operations, warranty work and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

Stored data

Electronic vehicle components may contain data storage medium which store technical information relating to the vehicle condition, events and faults. The data required for service measures is processed locally and is deleted automatically once the work is complete. An authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can read out the information. During servicing and repair work, data is read out by the socket for on-board diagnosis using special diagnosis systems and sent to the vehicle manufacturer. The customer is entitled to withhold consent to the data being read out and forwarded.

Optimising service processes

The vehicle manufacturer maintains documentation relating to each vehicle to ensure the best possible service is provided. Within the scope of legal requirements, this documentation may be made available to authorised third parties, for example specialist workshops.

The authorised third parties may only use this data for the purposes of performing the service or repair order in question. This prevents work from being duplicated unnecessarily on the vehicle, for example.

Ensuring product quality

The data logs the technical conditions of the vehicle and helps in locating faults, complying

with warranty obligations and improving quality.

To ensure product quality and the development of new products, data on the usage of individual components and systems, for example, lights, brake, electric windows, displays, can be read out. This data helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimise the design of components and systems. Data analysis also provides the basis for Technical Campaigns and mandatory recalls.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring obligations to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfil these obligations, the vehicle manufacturer requires technical data from the vehicle. This also includes the software versions in the vehicle.

Goodwill and warranty claims

Data from the vehicle can also be used to check customer warranty claims. If goodwill or warranty claims are asserted, the data is read out and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer to resolve the claims promptly.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop performs repair or servicing work.

Control over data

You may request the stopping of data transfers to the vehicle manufacturer for the purpose of ensuring product quality and optimising service processes.

Legal requirements regarding data disclosure

According to current law, the vehicle manufacturer is obliged to provide the authorities with any data it has stored. Data is provided to the extent required and on a case-by-case basis, for example to investigate a criminal offence.

Current law also gives state bodies authorisation to read out data from the vehicle them-

selves for individual cases. Information can be read out from the airbag control unit, etc. to shed light on the circumstances of an accident, for example.

Within the framework of legal obligations in the EU, certain vehicle consumption data, such as fuel or energy consumption and distance travelled, also called OBFCM data, is sent to the EU Commission by the vehicle manufacturer. The registered keeper may refuse to provide this data for this purpose.

Mobile devices

Depending on the equipment, mobile devices such as smartphones can be connected to the vehicle to control smartphone functions from the vehicle, for example Apple CarPlay. Sound and images from the mobile device may be played back or displayed through the multimedia system in the vehicle, for example.

Selected information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of integration, this includes position data and other general vehicle information, for example. This enables optimum use of selected apps, for example navigation and music playback. How the data is processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used.

Services

General

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, data can be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems, for example with BMW ConnectedDrive.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

The various functions of online services provided by the vehicle manufacturer are described at appropriate points, for example in the Owner's Handbook or on the manufacturer's web

page. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is also given.

Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for example with the vehicle manufacturer's data systems set up for this purpose.

Any collection, processing and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services always requires legal permission, a contractual agreement or consent of the user.

BMW ConnectedDrive

BMW ConnectedDrive networks the vehicle with a number of digital services. When these services are used, only the data stored in the vehicle and required to provide the service is transferred online, for example information on identifying and locating the vehicle. Usage is based on a contractual agreement with the user.

In individual cases, the transfer of data is triggered as a result of predefined events, such as an intelligent emergency call. The wireless network connection is established via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for example smartphones. Data transfer can be deactivated on request.

The wireless network connection enables online functions to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data protection conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence over the data that is exchanged.

Information as to how personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data and its pur-

pose, can be obtained from the relevant provider.

Personal decision

Every user decides for themselves whether they wish to enter into a contract for a service such as BMW ConnectedDrive. Information on the extent of data processing and the content involved is provided in writing before the service is acquired and forms part of the vehicle handover.

The user has the option to deactivate the services at any time and consequently to stop the data processing required for the services. It is also possible to have the entire data connection activated or deactivated. Excluded from this are functions and services which are required by law, for example emergency call systems.

Transparency concerning vehicle data

BMW CarData provides transparency in handling vehicle data with the use of BMW ConnectedDrive. BMW CarData enables users to control whether vehicle data being processed in the context of BMW ConnectedDrive is transferred to third parties. Users can decide for each individual service offering whether data access is to be granted or refused to third parties, for example to insurance companies.

An archive can also be requested from BMW CarData at any time. The archive provides information on the data that has been transmitted and saved in the context of BMW ConnectedDrive. BMW CarData can only be accessed by third-party providers via the vehicle manufacturer's servers. Direct access to the vehicle and its data is not permitted.

More information on BMW CarData is available on the BMW ConnectedDrive Customer Portal.

Statutory emergency call system

General

The eCall emergency call system required by law enables manual or automatic emergency calls to be made, for example in the event of an accident.

The emergency calls are answered by the public rescue coordination centre.

For information on the eCall statutory on-board emergency call system based on the 112 emergency call, as well as its operation and its functions, see the chapter on emergency calls.

The eCall service based on the 112 emergency call is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.

If a serious accident occurs, the legal emergency call system is activated automatically by on-board sensors as standard practice. It is also triggered automatically if the vehicle is equipped with an intelligent emergency call system that fails to work in the event of a serious accident.

The legal emergency call system can also be triggered manually if required.

If a critical system failure occurs that would put the eCall statutory emergency call system out of operation, the vehicle occupants receive a warning.

For further information:

- ▷ Emergency call, see page [377](#).
- ▷ Malfunction, see page [378](#).

Information on data processing

The eCall statutory emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with the following regulations:

- ▷ Protection of personal data: Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council.
- ▷ Protection of personal data: Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.

Personal data is only processed for the purpose of transmitting eCall emergency calls to the single European emergency call number 112.

SIM card

The legal emergency call system operates via mobile radio through the SIM card installed in the vehicle. The SIM card is not permanently connected to the mobile phone network; rather, it remains connected only as long as the emergency call is active.

Data types and their recipients

The legal emergency call system may only collect and process the following data:

- ▷ The vehicle identification number for rapidly identifying the vehicle, for example the model.
- ▷ Vehicle type, for example passenger car.
- ▷ Type of vehicle drive, for estimating risks during recovery, e.g. fire hazard.
- ▷ The vehicle's position at the time of the accident, its last three locations and the direction of travel in order to locate the vehicle more quickly on very complex route sections, for example.
- ▷ A log of the automatic system activation, along with the time stamp.
- ▷ Control information, which tells rescue services whether the emergency call was triggered automatically or manually, for example.

- ▷ A time stamp for determining the time of the accident in order to optimise the deployment plans of the rescue services.
- ▷ The direction of travel for establishing which side of the carriageway is affected, for example.

The authorities of the state in whose territory the eCall system emergency call is made determine which emergency call centres receive and process the statutory emergency call.

Data processing configuration

The legal emergency call system ensures that the data stored on the system memory can only be accessed outside the system once an emergency call is triggered.

The data collected for the legal emergency call system is only saved in the vehicle and sent to the rescue coordination centre when an emergency call is triggered.

The legal emergency call system ensures that it cannot be traced and that it is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

The legal emergency call system ensures that the data in the internal system memory is deleted automatically and continuously.

The vehicle's location data is continuously overwritten in the system's internal memory so that only the vehicle's last three locations - which the system needs for normal operation - are ever stored.

The activity data log of the eCall statutory emergency call system is retained only for as long as is necessary to handle the eCall emergency call and under no circumstances for any longer than 13 hours after the eCall emergency call was triggered.

Rights of individuals affected by data processing

The individual affected by data processing, for example the registered keeper, has the right to access the data and can request that their personal data, as well as data whose process-

ing does not comply with legal requirements, be corrected, deleted, or restricted as applicable. Each time that data is corrected, deleted or blocked in line with these regulations, the third parties to whom the data was transmitted must be notified, insofar as this is reasonably practical.

The individual affected by data processing has the right to file a complaint with the relevant data protection body if they believe that their rights have been violated as a result of having their personal data processed.

For matters relating to access rights, please contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Intelligent emergency call system

General

The intelligent emergency call system enables manual or automatic emergency calls to be placed, for example in the event of an accident.

The emergency calls are answered by an emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer.

In addition to the intelligent emergency call system, the legal emergency call system is present in the vehicle and is active depending on the situation.

The registered keeper has the right to use either the intelligent emergency call system or the legal emergency call system.

For further information:

Emergency call, see page [377](#).

Legal basis

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with the following regulations:

- ▷ Protection of personal data: Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council.
- ▷ Protection of personal data: Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.

The ConnectedDrive contract concluded for this feature, as well as the relevant laws, ordinances, and directives of the European Parliament and the European Council, provide the legal basis for the activation and function of the Intelligent Emergency Call system.

The relevant ordinances and directives govern the protection of individuals in terms of processing personal data.

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with European directives on the protection of personal data.

The Intelligent Emergency Call system processes personal data only with the registered keeper's consent.

The Intelligent Emergency Call system and other services providing additional benefit may only process personal data with the express consent of the individual affected by data processing, for example the registered keeper.

SIM card

The intelligent emergency call system operates via mobile radio through the SIM card installed in the vehicle. The SIM card is permanently logged into the mobile phone network so a connection setup can be established quickly. The data is sent to the vehicle manufacturer in emergencies.

Improving quality

The vehicle manufacturer also uses the data sent as part of an emergency call to improve product and service quality.

Position determination

Only the provider of the mobile phone network is able to determine the position of the vehicle based on mobile phone mast locations. The network operator is not able to link the vehicle identification number to the phone number of the installed SIM card. Only the vehicle manufacturer is able to link the vehicle identification number to the phone number of the installed SIM card.

Log data for emergency calls

The log data for emergency calls is saved in a vehicle memory. The oldest log data is regularly deleted. The log data includes information on when and where an emergency call was placed, for example in the event of an accident. In exceptional cases, the log data can be read out from the vehicle memory. The log data is usually read out only if a court order has been issued and is only possible when the relevant devices are connected directly to the vehicle.

Automatic emergency call

The system is designed so that it automatically triggers an emergency call if the vehicle sensors detect an accident of corresponding severity.

Sent information

If an emergency call is made by the intelligent emergency call system, the same information is sent to the appointed emergency call centre as is normally sent to the public rescue coordination centre by the legal emergency call system.

Furthermore, the intelligent emergency call system also conveys the following additional information to an emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer and, where applicable, to the public rescue coordination centre:

- ▷ Accident data, for example the direction of the collision as detected by the vehicle sen-

sors in order to assist the rescue services in their deployment plans.

- ▷ Contact data, for example the phone number of the installed SIM card and the driver's phone number, if available, so that those involved in the accident can be contacted quickly if necessary.

Data storage

The data relating to a placed emergency call is saved in the vehicle. The data contains information about the emergency call, for example the place and time it was made.

The emergency call centre saves audio recordings of the emergency call.

Audio recordings of the customer are saved for 24 hours, in case details of the emergency call need to be analysed. After that, the audio recordings are deleted. Audio recordings of the emergency call centre employee are saved for 24 hours for quality assurance purposes.

Disclosure of personal data

The data obtained in the context of an intelligent emergency call is only used to process the emergency call. If legally obliged to do so, the vehicle manufacturer will disclose the data it has processed and, where applicable, still has saved.

Statutory emergency call system

The owner of a vehicle equipped with an intelligent emergency call system and the legal emergency call system is entitled to use the on-board emergency call system instead of the intelligent emergency call feature.

To request deactivation, please contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The legal emergency call system is always on standby in addition to the intelligent emergency call system. The legal emergency call system takes over the emergency call function if the intelligent emergency call system is not

operational for technical reasons, for example if the emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer cannot be reached.

The eCall statutory emergency call system uses the infrastructure of the 112 public emergency call number.

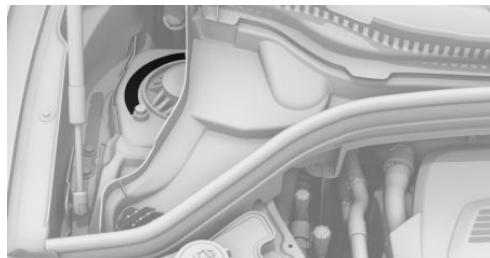
The system can be configured so that emergency calls are always made by the legal emergency call system and not by the intelligent emergency call system. Have the settings carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Vehicle identification number

General

Depending on the national-market equipment, the vehicle identification number is located at different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all the positions that are possible for the model range.

Engine compartment



The vehicle identification number is engraved in the engine compartment, on the right side of vehicle.

Type plate on right-hand side



The vehicle identification number is on the type plate on the right-hand side of vehicle.

Type plate on left-hand side



The vehicle identification number is on the type plate on the left-hand side of vehicle.

Windscreen



The vehicle identification number is additionally located behind the windscreen.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Vehicle key



Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon Meaning



Unlock.



Lock.



Pre-conditioning.



Home lights.

Access to vehicle interior

Unlocking with the vehicle key



Press the button for unlocking on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap have been unlocked because of the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The vehicle is operational after one of the front doors is opened.

Locking with the vehicle key

- Close the driver's door.

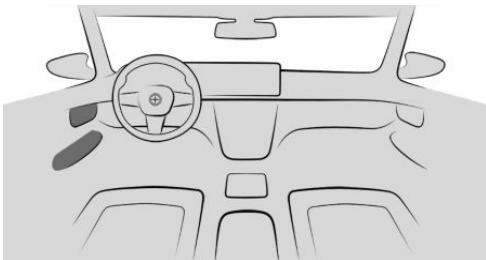


- Press the button for locking on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Central locking buttons

Overview



The central locking system buttons are located in the front door.



The button for locking.



The button for unlocking.

Locking the vehicle



With the front doors closed, press the locking button on the front door.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

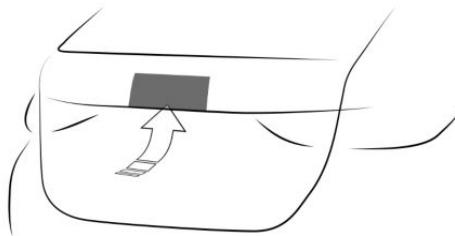


Press the door unlock button in the front door.



Access to the luggage compartment

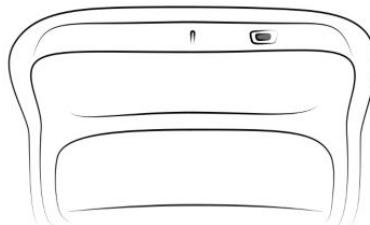
Opening the luggage compartment



- ▷ Unlock the vehicle, then press the button for opening on the outside of the luggage compartment.
- ▷ On the vehicle key, press the button for opening/closing the luggage compartment for approximately 1 second.

The doors are unlocked if applicable.

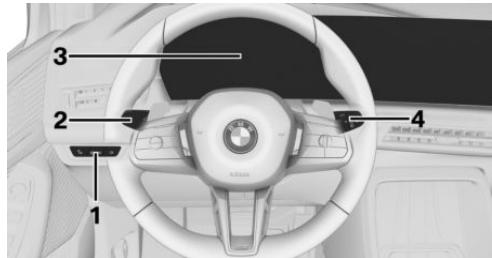
Closing the luggage compartment



- ▷ Press the button for closing the luggage compartment on the inside of the tailgate.
- ▷ Press and hold the button for opening/closing the luggage compartment on the vehicle key until the luggage compartment is closed.

Displays, operating elements

Around the steering wheel



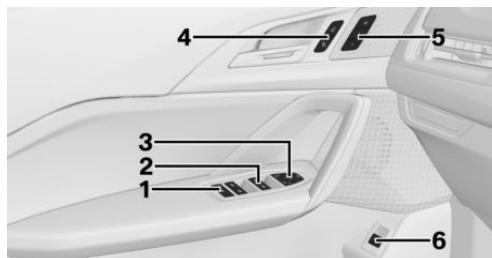
- 1** Light switch
- 2** High-beam headlight, turn indicator
- 3** Instrument cluster
- 4** Windscreen wipers

Indicator and warning lights

Indicator and warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

When switching on drive-ready state, the functionality of some lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

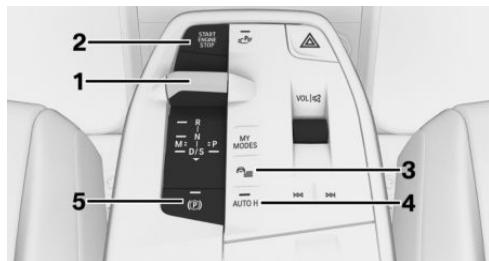
Driver's door



- 1** Safety switch
- 2** Window lifters
- 3** Exterior mirror operation
- 4** Central locking system
- 5**
- 6**

- 5** Seat setting
6 Luggage compartment

Switch cluster



- 1** Selector lever
2 Start/Stop button
3 Drive settings menu
4 Automatic Hold
5 Parking brake

BMW iDrive

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

Buttons on the control display

The button LEDs on the control display illuminate when the control display is operated.

Button Function



Go to previous menu.



Go to Media menu.

Button Function



To go to the Communication menu.



Go to Navigation menu.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice control of various vehicle functions.

Activating voice input



1. Briefly press the voice control button on the steering wheel.
2. Speak the desired command.

Cancelling voice input



- ▷ Press the voice control button on the steering wheel again.
- ▷ Speak the command: >Cancel

Adjustment and operation

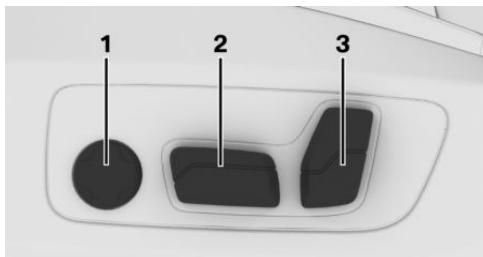
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Manually adjustable seats



- 1** Longitudinal direction
- 2** Thigh support
- 3** Seat angle
- 4** Height
- 5** Lumbar support
- 6** Backrest angle

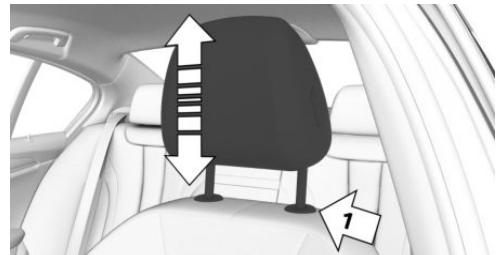
Electrically adjustable seats



- 1** Lumbar support
- 2** Height/longitudinal direction/seat angle
- 3** Backrest angle

Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height



- ▷ Downwards: press the button for the lock on the backrest, arrow 1, and push the head restraint downwards.
 - ▷ Upwards: push the head restraint upwards.
- After adjusting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

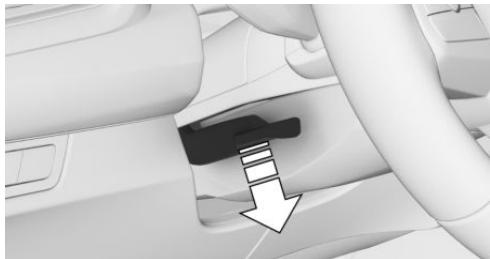
Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirror in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.

Icon	Meaning
	Select left exterior mirror.
	Select right exterior mirror.

Adjusting the steering wheel



1. On the steering column, fold the lever for the locking mechanism all the way down.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and adjust it in the longitudinal direction and height of the seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Lumbar support position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up display.

Overview



The memory buttons are on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. Press the SET button on the front door. The LED is illuminated.
3. Press the desired Memory button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Go to Settings

Press the desired Memory button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Navigation destination entry

Enter a destination

1. Go to the Navigation menu.
2. Select the search field.
3. Enter the desired destination.
4. Start route guidance.

Further information may be displayed.

Entertainment

Depending on the national-market version and equipment, the following buttons are installed in the centre console.



Button	Function
	Turning the knurled wheel: adjusts the volume. Pressing the knurled wheel: turn sound output on/off.
MEDIA	Changing the entertainment source.
	Press once: to change the station/music track.
	Press and hold: to fast forward/rewind the music track.

Using the mobile phone

General

Once the mobile phone has been connected in the vehicle, it can be operated using iDrive and the buttons on the steering wheel.

Activate Bluetooth® on the mobile phone.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Mobile devices" / "Connect new device"
Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.
2. Select the required mobile phone.
3. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone and confirm that they match.
4. If necessary, select the connection mode:
"Continue with BMW iDrive"

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be accepted in different ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:



Press the button for the telephone function on the steering wheel:

- ▷ On the steering wheel, use the knurled wheel to select from the list in the instrument cluster:

Dialling a number

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Telephone" / "Dial"
2. Enter the desired digits.
3. Select the icon for calling. The call is made using the mobile phone to which the telephone function is assigned.

On the move

Driving

Drive-ready state



1. Press the brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button in the centre console.

Switching off drive-ready state

1. Apply brake and engage the parking brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button in the centre console.

The READY display is no longer illuminated and an acoustic signal is heard.

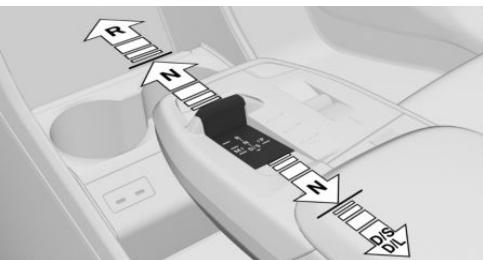
Automatic Start/Stop function

The Automatic Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically when stationary to save fuel. For driving off, the engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- ▶ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▶ With Automatic Hold activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R, S, L



- ▶ D Drive position.
- ▶ N Neutral.
- ▶ R reverse gear.
- ▶ With shift paddles: S Sport programme.
- ▶ Without shift paddles: L LOW mode.

Keep the brake applied until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when drive position or reverse gear is selected.

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

Sport programme: the shift characteristics are designed for sportier drivability.

LOW mode: the braking effect of the engine is increased and acceleration is faster.

Engaging selector lever position P





Press the button for the parking brake in the centre console.

The transmission lock is engaged and the parking brake is engaged.

Parking brake

Applying the parking brake



To apply the parking brake, press the button for the parking brake in the centre console.

The LED on the button and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

The parking brake is applied and transmission lock is engaged.

Release the parking brake



In selector lever position P and with drive-ready state switched on, press the button for the parking brake in the centre console.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

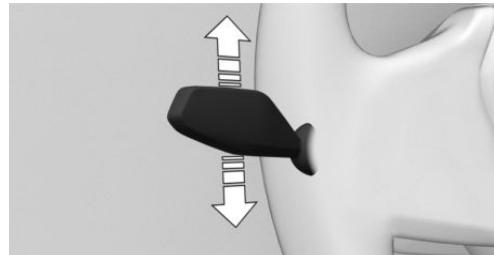
Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

Light and vision

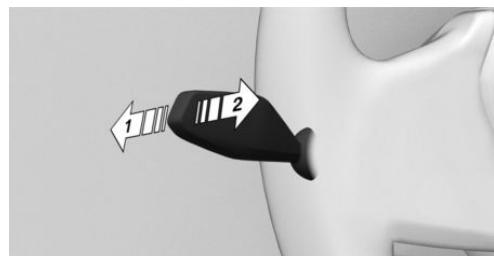
Turn indicator, high-beam headlight, headlight flasher

Turn indicators



- ▷ Flashing: press the turn indicator lever past the resistance point.
- ▷ One-touch signalling: lightly tap the turn indicator lever up or down.
- ▷ To indicate a turn briefly: press the turn indicator lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlight, headlight flasher



Press the turn indicator lever forwards or pull it back.

- ▷ High-beam headlight on, arrow 1.

The high-beam headlight is illuminated when the low-beam headlight is switched on.

- ▶ High-beam headlight off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

Buttons in the vehicle

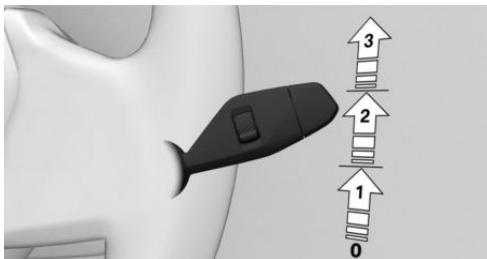
Icon	Function
	Exterior lights menu.
	Automatic driving lights control. Low-beam headlight. Exterior lights off.
	Rear fog light.

Functions via iDrive

Icon	Function
	Automatic driving lights control.
	Low-beam headlight.
	Side lights.
	Exterior lights off.
	Parking light, left.
	Parking light, right.

Wiper system

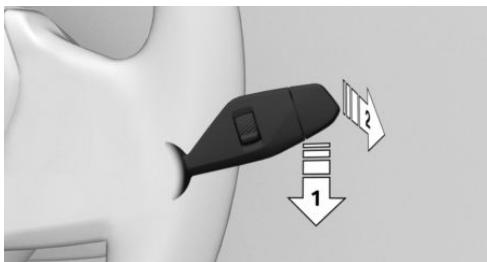
Switching on the wiper system



Press the wiper lever upwards to the desired position.

- ▶ Rest position of the windscreen wipers, position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

Switching off the wiper system and flick wiping



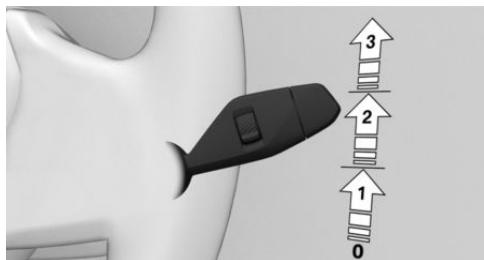
Press the wiper lever downwards or forwards.

- ▶ To switch off: press the wiper lever downwards, arrow 1, until position 0 is reached.
- ▶ To flick wipe: press the wiper lever downwards from position 0, arrow 1, and press the lever forwards from position 0 or position 1, arrow 2.

The wiper lever returns to position 0 when released.



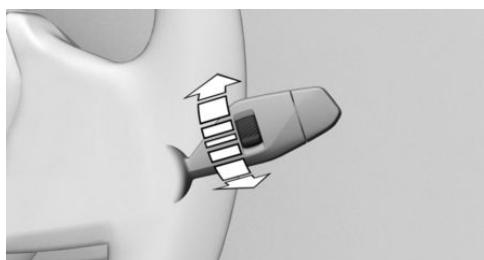
Activating/deactivating the rain sensor



To activate: press the wiper lever upwards once from position 0, arrow 1.

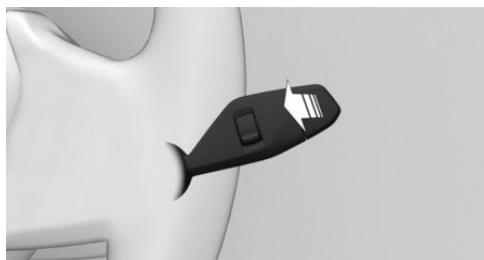
To deactivate: press the wiper lever back to position 0.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel on the wiper lever.

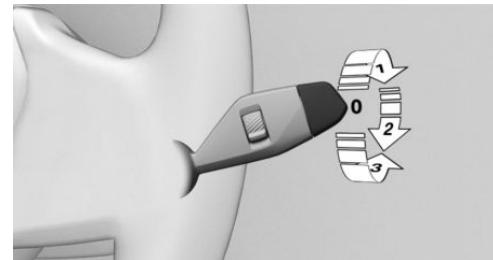
Cleaning the windscreen



Pull the wiper lever.

Rear wiper

Switching on rear wiper



Turn the outer switch on the wiper lever upwards.

- ▷ Rest position of the windscreen wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent operation, arrow 1. Engaging reverse gear activates continuous operation.

Cleaning the rear window

Turn the outer switch on the wiper lever in the desired direction.

- ▷ In rest position: turn the switch downwards, arrow 3. The switch returns to the rest position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent operation: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch returns to the intermittent position when released.

Air conditioning

Air conditioning functions

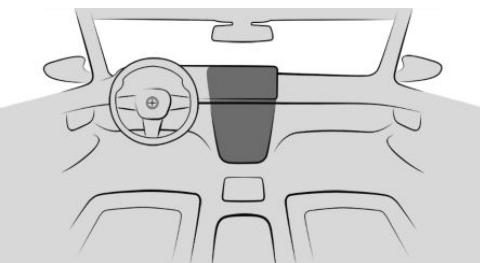
Functions in the air conditioning menu

Icon	Function
	Switching the air conditioning system on/off
	Automatic programme.
	Temperature.
	Amount of air.
	Air distribution.
	Air conditioning function.
	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation function.
	Automatic air recirculation control.
	Fresh air.
	SYNC programme.

Icon	Function
	Seat heating.

Icon	Function
	Steering wheel heating.

Buttons, integrated automatic heating/air conditioning system



Icon	Function
	Defrost function.
	Rear window heating.

Pit stop

Refuelling

Fuel filler cap

- To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



- Turn the fuel filler cap anticlockwise.



- Place the fuel filler cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



Wheels and tyres

Tyre inflation pressure information



The tyre inflation pressure information can be found on the tyre pressure label on the body pillar of the driver's door.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

If equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitor, tyre inflation pressure corrections are applied automatically. Make sure that the tyre settings are correct. For tyres that are not listed in the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

If equipped with a Flat Tyre Monitor, reinitialize the Flat Tyre Monitor.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

Check regularly and adjust as necessary:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before a long journey.

Electronic oil measurement

Operating requirements

A current reading is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving with the internal combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

To display the engine oil level on the control display, select the following menu path

via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

Topping up engine oil

General

Stop the vehicle safely and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Topping up engine oil

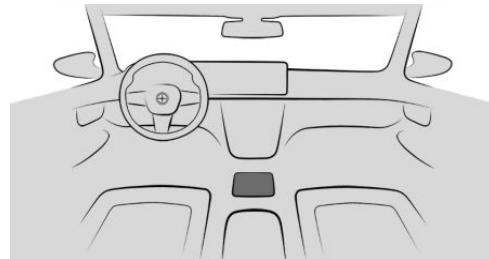
1. Open the bonnet.
2. Turn the cap anticlockwise to open.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Tighten cap.

How to get assistance

Hazard warning lights



The hazard warning lights button is located in the centre console.

ConnectedDrive

BMW Assistance

Contact BMW Assistance for information and support on all aspects of your vehicle.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "BMW Assistance"
2. Select the desired service.

Follow the displays on the control display.
A voice contact is established.

BMW Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to keep the vehicle mobile.

Teleservices may include the following services:

- ▷ BMW Roadside Assistance.
- ▷ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▷ Teleservice Call.
- ▷ Your Service Partner.

Vehicle cockpit

Vehicle equipment

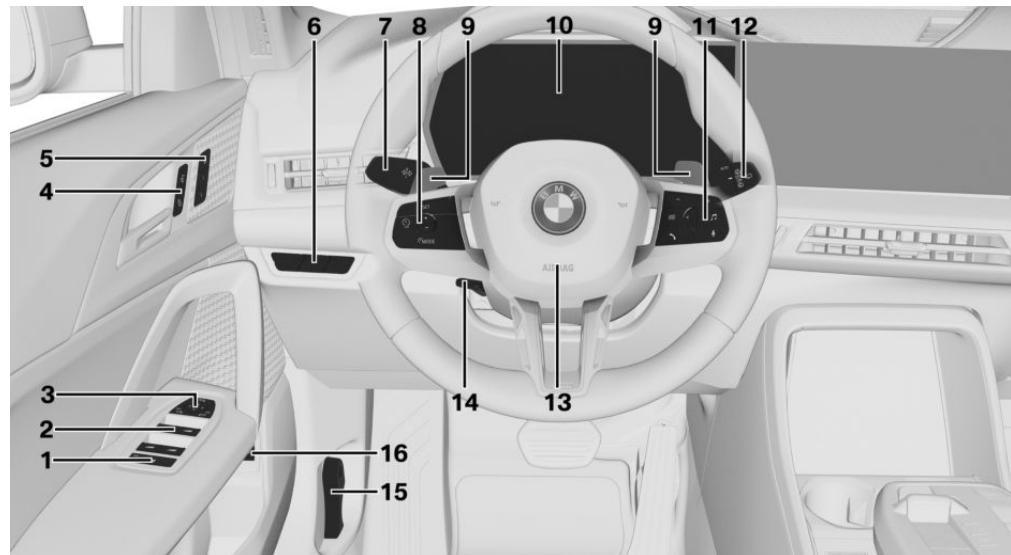
This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even

if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Around the steering wheel



- 1** Safety switch [95](#)

- To unlock

- 2** Window lifters [93](#)

- To lock

- 3** Exterior mirror operation [109](#)

- 5** Seat comfort functions

- 4** Central locking system buttons [88](#)

- Memory function [112](#)

- 6** Lights



Exterior lights menu 165

High-beam Assistant 170



Automatic lights 165

Low-beam headlight 166

Adaptive lighting functions 168



Rear fog light 171



Voice control, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56



Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6



For selecting configuration menus for the instrument cluster and Head-up display 50

Operation of selection lists 154

Accessing and resetting trip data 159

Resetting the G-Meter values 161

7 Turn indicator lever

Turn indicator 140



High-beam headlight, headlight flasher 140

8 Buttons on steering wheel, left

Switch Cruise Control Systems on/off 222



Select Cruise Control System 222



To store a speed 222



To set the speed 222

9 Shift paddle, right and left 132

Sport Boost function 134

10 Instrument cluster 50**11 Buttons on steering wheel, right**

Settings, instrument cluster 50



Settings for Head-up display 145



Volume, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6



Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

12 Wiper lever

Windscreen wipers 140



Rain sensor 141



To clean the windscreen 142



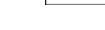
Rear wiper 143



To clean the rear window 143



Horn, entire area



14 To adjust the steering wheel 112

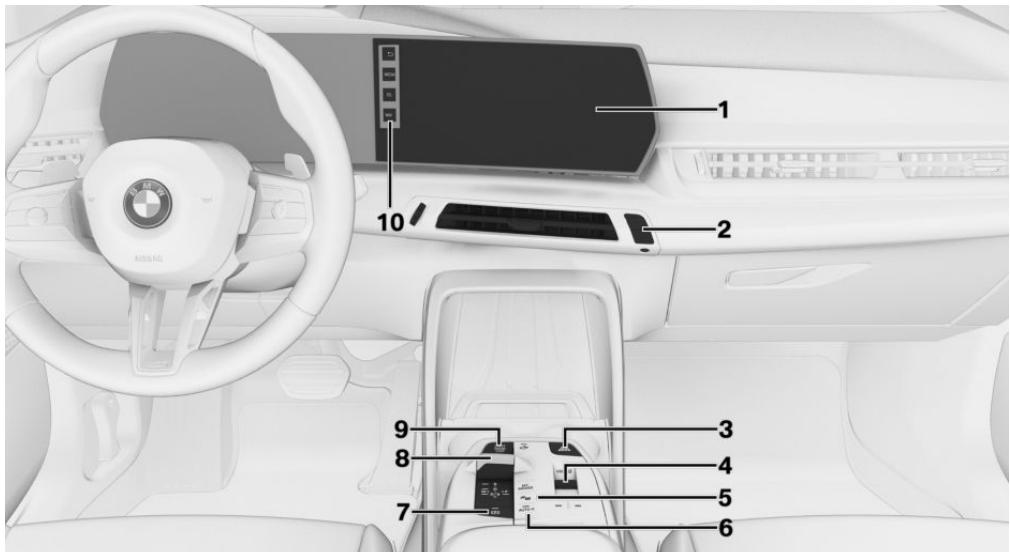


15 To unlock the bonnet



16 Opening and closing luggage compartment 80

Around the centre console



1 Control display 52

2 Climate control 276



Defrost function 281



Rear window heating 282

3 Hazard warning lights 375



Hazard warning lights 375

4 Operating elements for entertainment system, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6



Adjusting the volume



Station/track forward



Station/track back

5 Parking assistance systems 250



Parking assistance systems 250



My Modes 135



Drive settings menu 56

6 Automatic Hold 138



Automatic Hold 138

7 Parking brake 136



Parking brake 136

8 Selector lever



Switching drive-ready state on/off 126

9 Back



Back



Media source

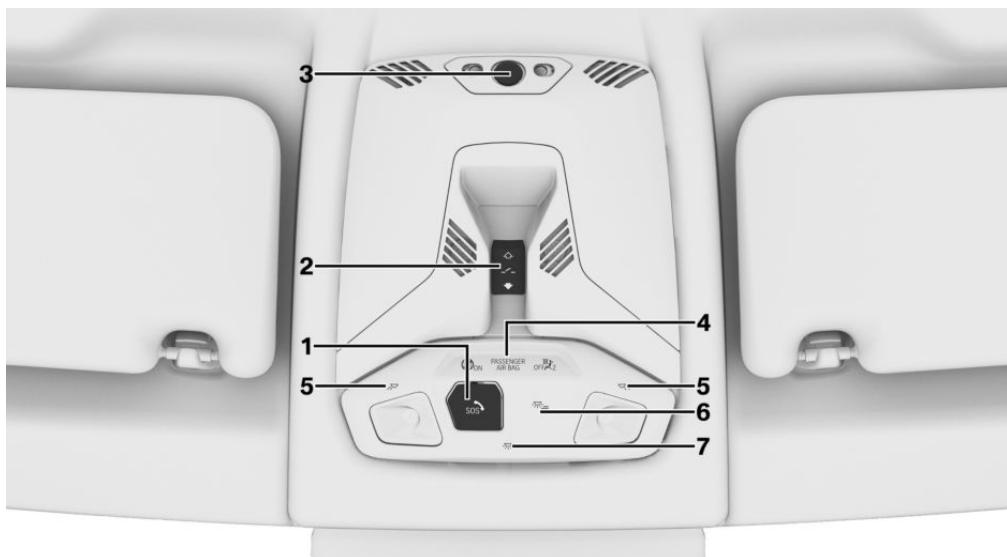


Telephone



Navigation

Around the headliner



- 1 Emergency call, SOS [377](#)

- 5 Reading lights [172](#)

- 2 Glass sunroof [95](#)

- 6 Interior lighting menu [56](#)

- 3 Interior camera [292](#)

- 7 Interior lights [172](#)

- 4 Depending on the national-market version:
Front passenger airbag indicator
light [177](#)

Sensors in the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

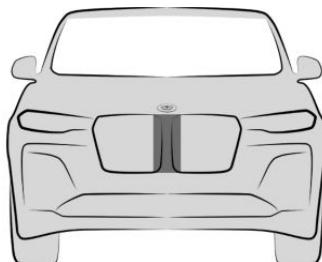
Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Camera behind the windscreens.
- ▷ Exterior mirror cameras.
- ▷ Reversing Assist Camera.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, front.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, rear.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Side ultrasonic sensors.

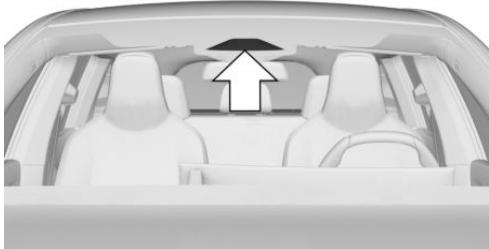
Cameras

Front camera



The front camera is located in the radiator grille.

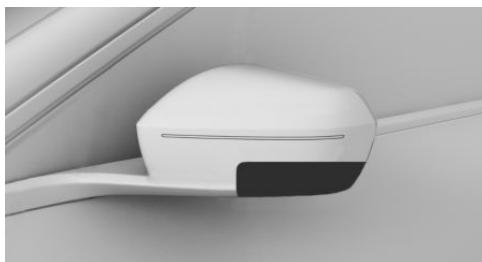
Camera behind the windscreen



The camera behind the windscreen is located in the area of the interior mirror.

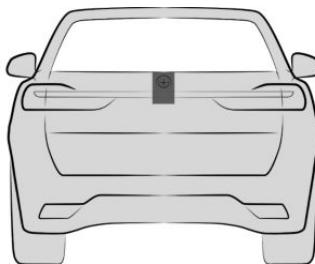


Exterior mirror cameras



An exterior mirror camera is located under each exterior mirror housing.

Reversing Assist Camera



The Reversing Assist Camera is located in the handle strip on the rear.

Functional requirement of the cameras

The areas of the cameras are clean and clear.

For further information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, see page [385](#).
- ▷ Vehicle care, see page [386](#).

System limits of the cameras

The function of the cameras can be restricted or may indicate something wrong, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On steep crests or dips or on tight bends.

- ▷ When the camera field of view is covered, for example by a fogged up windscreen or stickers.
- ▷ If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- ▷ With the exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ With open doors or open luggage compartment.
- ▷ In the case of bright oncoming light or strong reflections, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ In the dark.
- ▷ The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system limits are reached.

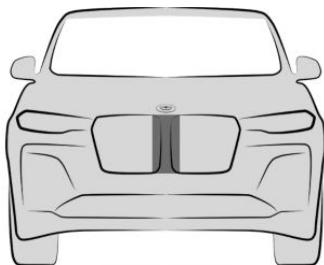
Radar sensors

Safety information

WARNING

Due to external influences, e.g. interference, the radar sensors of the vehicle and thus also the driving assistance systems can be disturbed. There is a risk of accident. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Front radar sensor



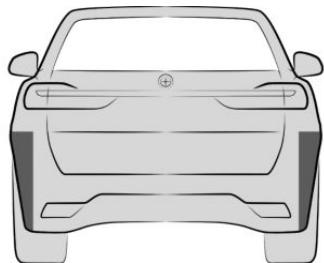
The front radar sensor is located in the radiator grille.

Side radar sensors, front



The radar sensors are located on the side of the front bumper.

Side radar sensors, rear



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Functional requirement of the radar sensors

The areas of the radar sensors are clean and clear.

For further information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, see page [385](#).
- ▷ Vehicle care, see page [386](#).

System limits of the radar sensors

The function of the radar sensors can be restricted or not available, for example in the following situations:

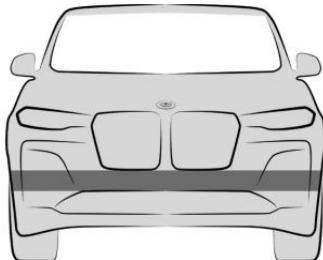
- ▷ If the sensors are contaminated.
- ▷ In case of iced up sensors.
- ▷ If the sensors are obscured, for example by stickers, foils or a number plate carrier.
- ▷ If the sensors are misaligned, for example due to parking damage.
- ▷ If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, for example by protruding loads.
- ▷ When the field of view of the sensors is covered, for example by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- ▷ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the sensors.
- ▷ At steep crests or hollows of hills.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system limits are reached.



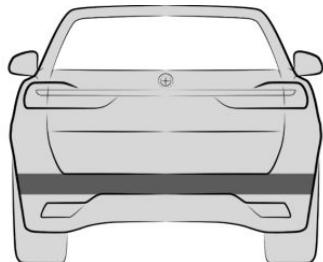
Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors, front



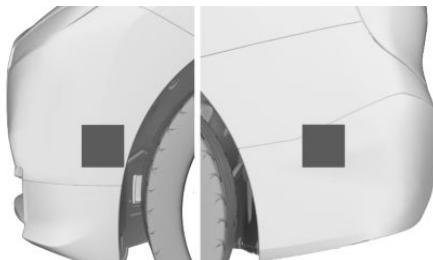
The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the front bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, rear



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the rear bumper.

Side ultrasonic sensors



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located on the side in the front and rear bumpers.

Functional requirement of the ultrasonic sensors

The areas of the ultrasonic sensors are clean and clear.

For further information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, see page [385](#).
- ▷ Vehicle care, see page [386](#).

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The physical limits of ultrasound measurement may be reached when detecting objects in situations involving the following, for example:

- ▷ If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g. by stickers.
- ▷ If the sensors are misaligned, for example due to parking damage.
- ▷ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the sensors.
- ▷ Small children and animals.
- ▷ Persons wearing certain types of clothing, for example a jacket.
- ▷ Obstacles and people at the edge of the driving lane.
- ▷ If there is external interference with the ultrasonic sound, for example by passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- ▷ Certain weather conditions; for example, high air humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ For trailer towbars and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ Thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ Moving objects.
- ▷ Higher protruding objects, for example projecting walls.
- ▷ Objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.

- ▷ For objects with fine surfaces or structures, e.g. wire mesh fences.
- ▷ Objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ Small and low objects such as boxes.
- ▷ Low objects already displayed, for example, kerbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- ▷ Soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- ▷ Plants or shrubs.
- ▷ In washing bays and car washes.
- ▷ In the event of bumps, for example speed bumps.
- ▷ In the presence of dense exhaust fumes.
- ▷ The ultrasonic sensors do not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.
- ▷ If the cover of the trailer tow hitch is incorrectly seated.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system limits are reached.



Vehicle operating condition

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Rest state

Principle

If the vehicle is in rest state, it is switched off.

General

The vehicle is in rest state before you open it from outside and once you have left the vehicle and locked it.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

Establishing the rest state automatically

The rest state is established automatically, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ After a few minutes, if no operation is performed on the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle battery state of charge is low.
- ▷ Depending on the iDrive setting: one or both of the front doors is opened when leaving the vehicle after a journey.

In some situations, for example during a telephone call or when the low-beam headlight is switched on, the vehicle will not switch automatically to rest state.

Establishing rest state on opening the front doors

After a trip, the rest state can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, all passengers must exit the vehicle.

To activate or deactivate the function, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / / /

Establishing the rest state manually

To establish rest state in the vehicle at the end of the journey:



Press the knurled screw on the centre console until the OFF display in the instrument cluster is not longer illuminated.

Deep sleep mode

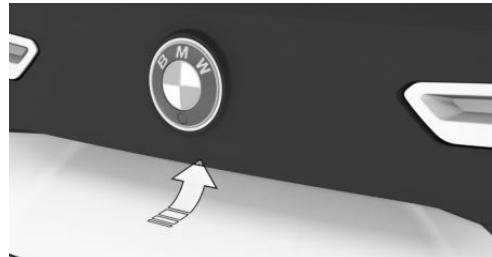
Principle

Use the deep sleep mode to prevent discharging of the vehicle battery if the vehicle is not used for a period of several weeks.

In deep sleep mode, the vehicle functions are reduced to the essentials.

Activating deep sleep mode

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / / /
2. Select the desired setting.



To access the vehicle in deep sleep mode, press the button for opening on the luggage compartment.

Deactivating deep sleep mode

- ▶ Switch off the function on the control display.
- ▶ Drive the vehicle.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is activated, most functions can be operated while the vehicle is still stationary. Any desired settings can be performed.

General

The vehicle switches to standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Manually establishing standby state

General

The standby state can be switched on again after the rest state has been automatically established.

Via the knurled wheel



Press the knurled wheel in the centre console. The control display and instrument cluster illuminate.

danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

With the Start/Stop button



Press the Start/Stop button in the centre console. The control display and instrument cluster illuminate.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

Display in the instrument cluster



OFF is shown in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

NOTICE

Repeated attempts to start the engine or starting it several times in quick succession can cause the starter to overheat. Fuel will also be unburned or insufficiently burned, which could cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General

Some functions can only be operated when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Safety information

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a

Switching on drive-ready state

General



Drive-ready state is switched on or off with the Start/Stop button in the centre console.

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Press the brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button in the centre console.

Starting proceeds automatically for a short time and stops as soon as the engine starts.

The engine is switched off. The vehicle changes to standby state.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate for varying lengths of time.

Petrol engine

Depending on the motorisation, full drive power may not be available until approx. 30 seconds after the engine is started. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate in the usual way.

For further information:

Power display, see page [156](#).

Diesel engine

With the engine cold and at temperatures below 0 °C, 32 °F the starting operation can be delayed slightly due to automatic preheating.

A Check Control message is shown.

After the engine is started, full drive power may not be available until the engine is at operating temperature. Pay attention to the engine temperature display and power display as applicable. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate in the usual way.

For further information:

- ▷ Engine temperature display, see page [157](#).
- ▷ Power display, see page [156](#).

Display in the instrument cluster

The activated drive-ready state is indicated in the instrument cluster, depending on the equipment, by the display of information required for driving or the READY display.

Switching off drive-ready state

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, apply the parking brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button in the centre console.



BMW iDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Display and operating concept

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

Depending on the equipment, the functions can be operated as follows:

- ▷ Via the control display.
- ▷ Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.
- ▷ Using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

For further information:

Instrument cluster, see page [50](#).

Safety information

WARNING

Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the traffic situation. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic situation allows you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the sys-

tems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Digit input and display

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when entering a destination, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered via the control display or voice control.

Icon	Function
abc ABC	To switch between upper and lower case.
□	To enter a space.
EN	To switch between languages.
▀	To use voice input.
OK	To confirm your digit input.
◀ ▶	Move the entry area to the left or right.
☒	Tap icon: to delete a letter or number.
☒	Press and hold the icon: delete all letters or numbers.

Input comparison

When entering data from a database, for example contacts, the selection is gradually narrowed down with each character entered and supplemented if necessary.

Activating/deactivating functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

Icon	Meaning
	Function is activated.
	Function is deactivated.
	Functions can be activated or deactivated using the button on the control display. If the button is highlighted in colour, the function is activated.

BMW Curved Display

Principle

The BMW Curved Display is the one-piece display in the vehicle that is curved towards the driver. The BMW Curved Display comprises the instrument cluster on the driver's side and the control display in the centre console.

General

Follow the instructions on cleaning the BMW Curved Display in the Care chapter.

For further information:

Care of special parts, see page [388](#).

Overview



1 Instrument cluster [50](#)

2 Control display [52](#)

Instrument cluster

Principle

The instrument cluster comprises various digital displays, such as speedometer, time, range, temperature displays or indicator and warning lights.

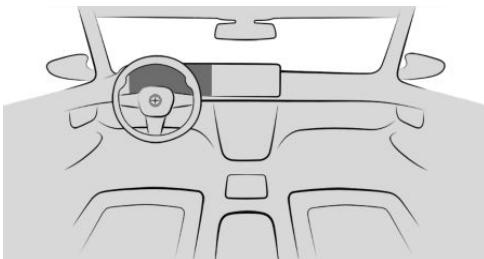
The buttons on the steering wheel can be used to configure the layout of the instrument cluster and the content of the central display area, for example, trip data. Other displays can be set on the control display, for example, a second actual speed.

Safety information

WARNING

If the displays in the instrument cluster fail, the vehicle must not be used. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Immediately park the vehicle safely. If drive-ready state is switched off and on again, the malfunction may rectified and it is possible to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be rectified, have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

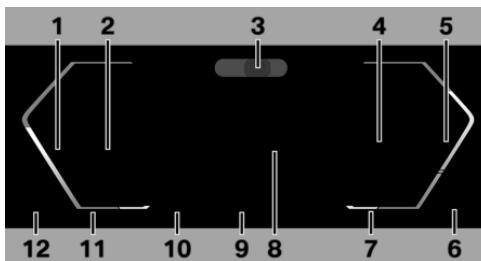
Overview



Instrument cluster



Indication ranges in the instrument cluster



- 1** Speedometer
- 2** Driver assistance systems [219](#)
Parking assistance systems [250](#)
- 3** Driver Attention Camera [213](#)
- 4** Check Control [147](#)
Selector lever indication [128](#)
Optimum shift indicator [155](#)
Selection lists [154](#)
Efficiency Coach [324](#)
- 5** Power display [156](#)
Revolution counter [157](#)
- 6** Engine temperature [157](#)
- 7** Outside temperature [157](#)
- 8** Central display area [158](#)
Shift Lights [158](#)
- 9** My Modes drive mode [135](#)
- 10** Speed Limit Info [219](#)
Speed Limit Assist [243](#)
- 11** Time [161](#)
- 12** Fuel level indicator [161](#)
Range [161](#)

The positions of some displays may vary, e.g. the selector lever indication.

The displays in the instrument cluster can sometimes differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Handbook.

For further information:

Indicator and warning lights, see page [148](#)

Operating elements on the steering wheel

Operating element Function



Display the menu bar in the instrument cluster.



Turn the knurled wheel: scroll the selection up or down.

Tilt the knurled wheel in the corresponding direction: move the selection to the left or right.

Press the knurled wheel: confirm the selection.

Configuring the layout

The layout of the instrument cluster adapts to the respective drive mode.

In Personal Mode, the layout can be individually configured and displayed in the instrument cluster.



1. Press the settings button on the steering wheel.

A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.

2. "LAYOUT"

Select the menu by tilting the knurled wheel on the steering wheel as necessary.

3. Select the required setting using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

Settings

Individual displays can be set individually, e.g. a second actual speed.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Displays" / "Instrument cluster"
2. Select the desired setting.

Control display

Principle

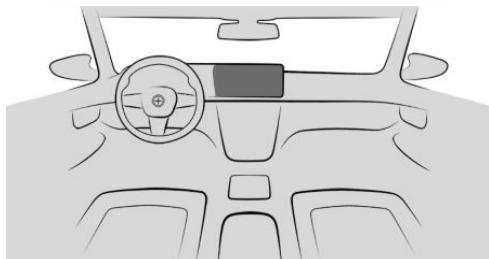
The iDrive functions are shown on the control display.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects located in front of the control display may slip and damage the control display. There is a risk of material damage. Do not place objects in front of the control display.

Overview



Control display

Buttons on the control display

The button LEDs on the control display illuminate when the control display is operated.

Button	Function
	Go to previous menu.
	Go to Media menu.
	To go to the Communication menu.
	Go to Navigation menu.

Switching the control display on/off automatically

The control display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is required for operation.

In certain situations, the control display is switched off automatically, for example if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching the control display on/off manually

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Displays" / "Control display" / "Turn off control display"

Tap the control display to turn it on again.

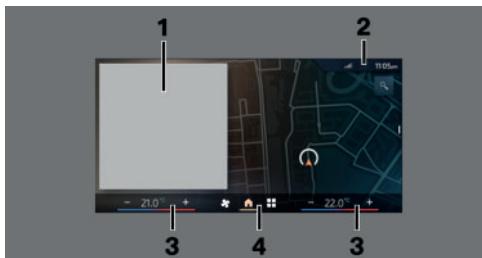
Main menu

General

The main menu is divided into different areas:



Overview



- 1** Widgets
- 2** Status information
- 3** Temperature setting
- 4** Menu bar

Menu bar

Main menu

⌂ The main menu can be accessed from any menu.

Climate menu

❄ The Climate menu provides access to all air conditioning functions.

Apps menu

📱 The Apps menu provides access to all apps and vehicle functions. A filter can be selected to make it easier to find a specific app. The last selected filter is stored. To display the desired app, replace the filter where applicable.

Apple CarPlay®

⌚ The Apple CarPlay menu is displayed in the main menu depending on the national-market version and connected function. Apple CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used securely via iDrive.

Android Auto®

▲ The Android Auto menu is displayed in the main menu, depending on the national-market version and the associated function. Android

Auto enables certain functions of a compatible Android smartphone to be used securely via iDrive.

Widgets

Widgets show real-time information and dynamic content, for example, the map of the navigation system. The widgets also serve as buttons and allow jumping to the respective menu or the most important functions.

Status information

General

The status information is displayed in the upper area of the control display in the form of icons. Various symbols are available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Telephone status information

Icon	Meaning
📞	Active call.
🚫	Data transfer not possible.
📶	Signal strength.
❗	SIM card missing.
(⚡)	Wireless charging active.

Entertainment status information

Icon	Meaning
🔌	USB audio.
🎵	Bluetooth audio.
📱	Smartphone audio.
.spotify	Connected Music with Spotify.
WiFi	WiFi.

Icon	Meaning
⌚	Apple CarPlay.
(Android Auto)	Android Auto.

Status information notifications

Icon	Meaning
1	Number of messages.
⚠	Check Control message.
📍	Traffic information.
🚫	SUPPRESS PRIVATE INFORMATION
🔕	Do not disturb.
✉️	Notification.

For further information:

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication, see page **6**.

Other status information

Icon	Meaning
🔊	Sound output active.
🔇	Sound output deactivated.
🎙	Activation word active.
👤	BMW ID or driver profile.
🧭	Route guidance active.
---	Call up quicklist.
🚧	Park Distance Control: sound deactivated.

Quick access

Certain functions and individual shortcuts can be called up via the quicklist.

Function	Operation
Show quicklist.	Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
Hide quicklist.	Tap the — icon in the status bar.

Shortcuts

General

Shortcuts provide quick access to functions that are frequently used, for example. Shortcuts are accessed via the quicklist and can be defined individually. The following functions can be defined as a shortcut, for example:

- ▷ Radio stations.
- ▷ Navigation destinations.
- ▷ Phone numbers.
- ▷ Jumps to menus.
- ▷ Functions.

Saving shortcuts

Shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

1. Press and hold the desired function.
2. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can also be saved directly via the quicklist.

Selecting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Select the desired shortcut.

The function is carried out immediately. If you have selected a phone number for example, the connection will also be established.



Sorting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut and move it to the desired position.

Deleting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut.
3. Tap the icon for deleting the desired shortcut.

Settings

Adjusting the brightness

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Displays" / "Control display" / "Brightness at night"
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on the lighting conditions, the brightness control may not be immediately apparent.

Activating/deactivating audio confirmation

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "Sound"
2. Select the desired setting.

System limits

If the control display is exposed to very high temperatures, for example because of strong sunlight, the brightness may be reduced and the control display may even switch itself off. Normal functions will be restored when the temperature is reduced, for example by providing shade or using the air conditioning.

Operation via control display

General

The control display is equipped with a touch-screen.

It is possible to tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the control display with fingers and do not use any objects.

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.

1. If necessary, tap the icon for the main menu.
2. Swipe from right to left on the control display.
3. Select the desired display.

Sorting apps

The order of the apps can be adjusted in the Apps menu.

1. Open the Apps menu.
2. Press and hold the desired app icon and move it to the desired position.

Switching between menus

After selecting a menu item, a new menu is displayed.

Swipe from left to right on the Control Display.

The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

Go to context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

To open the context menu, press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, such as:

- ▶ "General help": the Integrated Owner's Manual is called up.
- ▶ "Add to shortcuts": the menu item is defined as a shortcut.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the control display.

Function	Operation
To move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
To zoom in/out on the map.	Pinch together or move apart your fingers.
To display the menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.

To navigate to a desired initial letter in a list of more than 30 entries, tap the letter in the letter bar and scroll up or down.

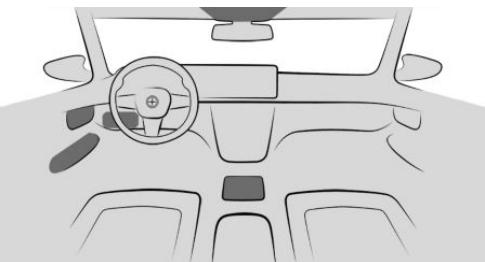
The favourites are displayed at the top of the list. The entries with numbers are displayed at the end of the list.

Direct access buttons

Principle

There are direct access buttons in the vehicle for certain functions, which can be used to call up the respective menu directly on the control display. Then continue operation via iDrive.

Overview



Button	Function
	Call up the Driving settings menu.
	Call up the Exterior lighting menu.
	Call up the Interior lighting menu.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice control of various vehicle functions.

The Personal Assistant makes it easier to operate the vehicle by making proactive suggestions. The Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The scope of functions and detection may vary depending on the national-market version.

The system includes special microphones on the driver's side and the passenger's side.

General

When speaking commands, note the following:

- ▷ Say commands at a normal volume.
Speaking directly into the microphone does not improve speech recognition.
 - ▷ Speak the commands fluently and at normal volume, emphasis and speed.
- >...< The brackets indicate commands that can be spoken.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Personal Assistant:

- ▷ A system language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive.
- ▷ Before using the Personal Assistant for the first time, the appropriate language package must be downloaded where applicable.
- ▷ The commands must always be spoken in the set system language.

For the full range of functions, the following functions should be activated, set or booked:

- ▷ Online speech processing is enabled.
- ▷ All settings under Data privacy are enabled.
- ▷ The activation word is activated.
- ▷ The suggestions are activated.
- ▷ A BMW ID or driver profile is activated.
- ▷ The corresponding ConnectedDrive services have been booked in the ConnectedDrive Store.

For further information:

- ▷ Set system language, see page [58](#).
- ▷ Online speech processing, see page [59](#).
- ▷ Data protection, see page [66](#).
- ▷ Activation word, see page [57](#).
- ▷ Receive suggestions, see page [59](#).

Activating voice input

General

The following options are available for activating voice input:



- ▷ Briefly press the microphone button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Speak the activation word.

Microphone button on steering wheel



1. Briefly press the voice control button on the steering wheel.
The microphone on the driver's side is active.
2. Speak the desired command.

Activation word

General

»Hello BMW: Saying the activation word starts the Personal Assistant. The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

Preset activation word

»Hello BMW: The preset activation word can be activated and deactivated.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "ALL" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "GENERAL" / "Activation with voice control"

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on the national-market version, some third-party providers offer digital voice assistants, e.g. Siri or Amazon Alexa.

In order to use Siri, the smartphone must be connected via Apple CarPlay.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle.

In addition to the BMW preset or personal activation word, the activation word of voice assistants from connected third-party providers can be used.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" /
2. Select the desired setting.

Cancelling voice input

The following options are available to cancel voice input:

- ▶  Press the voice control button on the steering wheel again.
- ▶ Speak the command: >Cancel<

Possible commands

General

Commands can be used to give instructions or ask questions where the Personal Assistant provides support.

It is possible, for example, to call contacts, navigate to an address, make settings or perform vehicle functions, for example, the air conditioning functions, which can be controlled by voice.

The most important contents on the control display, for example, menu items and list entries, can be spoken as commands.

Help for voice control

The following commands can be spoken in order to access help for voice control:

- ▶ >Voice commands:< Possible example commands are announced.
- ▶ >General information on voice control:< Information on the operating principle of voice control is announced.
- ▶ >Help:< Voice control tips and sample commands are announced.

Sample commands

- ▶ >Call John Smith<
- ▶ >Drive me to Heathrow airport<
- ▶ >Louder< or >Quieter<
- ▶ >Activate climate control<
- ▶ >What is my remaining range<
- ▶ >Sport mode<

Menu items

Menu items can be called up directly via the Personal Assistant. Speak the menu items as they are displayed on the Control Display. When speaking the menu items, the order of the menus does not have to be observed.

1. Activate voice input.
2. >Media<
3. >Saved stations<

The saved stations are displayed on the control display.

Settings

Setting the system language

A system language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set. A language pack may be downloaded.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "Language"
2. Select the desired setting.

Managing language packages

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "Language"
2. Select the desired setting.



Suggestions

General

The Personal Assistant provides support with individual suggestions.

Activating/deactivating suggestions

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
Menu Apps / "ALL" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "GB: VORSCHLÄGE" / "Get suggestions"

Adapting suggestions

The suggestions can be adapted, e.g. for which category suggestions are made or whether an audio signal is output.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "ALL" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "GB: VORSCHLÄGE"
2. Select the desired setting.

Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the function, data is sent across an encrypted connection to a service provider where it is deleted stored. Online speech processing is not available in all languages.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
Menu Apps / "ALL" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "GENERAL" / "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the visualisation

The visualisation of the Personal Assistant can be adjusted.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive:
Menu Apps / "ALL" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "GENERAL" / "Visualisation"
2. Select the desired setting.

Voice control from third-party providers

Depending on the equipment, third-party voice control can be activated by pressing the microphone button on the steering wheel.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" /
2. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume control button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is obtained.

The volume setting is retained even if you change the volume of other audio sources.

Using the voice control of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be operated via voice input.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1. Press the voice input button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

The voice control of the smartphone is activated.

If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the control display.

2. Press the voice input button on the steering wheel to cancel the voice control of the smartphone.

Automating habits

General

The Personal Assistant can automate routines, for example, the automatic opening of win-

dows at the same place. This involves creating rules that can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Activating/deactivating routines

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Personal Assistant" / "Overview" / "GB: Entfesseln Sie Ihren BMW"
2. Select the desired setting.

System limits

- ▶ The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.
- ▶ Certain noises may be detected and could cause problems. Keep the doors and windows closed.
- ▶ Noises from the front passenger or other passengers can impair the system. Avoid background noise in the vehicle while you are speaking.
- ▶ Strong dialects may prevent speech recognition from working properly.
- ▶ A poor data connection influences the response time of the Personal Assistant and the Search.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

The vehicle offers various types of connections for using mobile devices. Which connection

type to select depends on the mobile device and the function you wish to use.

General

Detailed information on functions and connection types can be found in the following media from the Owner's Handbook under the specified keyword:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- ▷ Printed Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Communication, and Entertainment.

The following information sources can also be used:

- ▷ Driver's Guide app.
- ▷ Driver's Guide Web.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the traffic situation. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic situation allows you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Overview

The following list shows possible functions and the appropriate connection types for them. The range of functions depends on the vehicle equipment and the connected mobile device.



Function	Connection type	Icon on the control display
Making calls using the hands-free system. Operating telephone functions via iDrive. Keyword: calling via Bluetooth.	Bluetooth. Keyword: Bluetooth connection.	
Play music from a USB. Keyword: audio.	Bluetooth audio. Keyword: Bluetooth connection.	
Data exchange between mobile device and vehicle.	WiFi. Keyword: vehicle WiFi.	
Operate Apple CarPlay via iDrive and by voice commands. Keyword: Apple CarPlay.	Bluetooth and WiFi. Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Operate Android Auto via iDrive and by voice control. Keyword: Android Auto.	Bluetooth and WiFi. Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Play music from a USB stick. Keyword: audio.	USB. Keyword: USB connection. USB port, see page 289 .	
Charge USB device. Keyword: USB connection. USB port, see page 289 .	USB. Keyword: USB connection. USB port, see page 289 .	

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General

BMW recommends carrying out the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

Safety information

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Consent to the transfer of the corresponding data has been given in the settings for the BMW Remote Software Upgrade.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "System settings" / "REMOTE SOFTWARE UPGRADE" / "Settings"

For further information:

Data protection, see page 66.

Search for an upgrade

Operating requirements

The standby state must be turned on to search for a Remote Software Upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

Manual search

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "System settings" / "REMOTE SOFTWARE UPGRADE" / "Search for upgrades"
2. Follow the instructions on the control display.



Download of an upgrade

Automatic download

If available, the data for a Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle. No consent to download is required.

Via BMW app

If an upgrade is available, information about the new software version is displayed in the BMW app.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for example via an existing Wi-Fi connection.

The data can then be transferred from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for example in areas with limited mobile network availability.

1. Download the upgrade in the BMW app to the smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW app.
3. Establish the connection to the vehicle.
 - ▷ iOS: connect Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.
 - ▷ Android: connect Bluetooth® audio and Wi-Fi.

The data transfer of the upgrade from the mobile device to the vehicle occurs in the background only while driving.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

For further information:

For information on connecting mobile devices with the vehicle, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Release notes

General

The release notes describe the updates included in the Remote Software Upgrade. The ver-

sion information can be shown on the control display while downloading and following successful completion of the installation.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "System settings" / "REMOTE SOFTWARE UPGRADE"
2. ▷ Display currently installed version:
"Installed version: \$s"
 - ▷ Display new available version:
"Version info"
3. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Display in the ConnectedDrive customer portal on the Internet:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Installing the upgrade

General

- ▷ Installing the remote software upgrade may cause software modifications not made by the vehicle manufacturer to be deleted, such as increases in performance.
- ▷ Modifications to the on-board power supply of the vehicle, for example to control units that have not been made by the manufacturer of the vehicle, can cause the installation to malfunction.
- ▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.
- ▷ The installation can take around 20 to 30 minutes.
- ▷ Installation cannot be interrupted.

- ▷ The vehicle cannot be used during installation.
- ▷ You may leave the vehicle during installation.

Prerequisites for the installation

- ▷ The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above -10 °C, 14 °F.
- ▷ The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- ▷ The hazard warning lights are switched off.
- ▷ The selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met, for example a sufficient vehicle battery charge state, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Look out for an offer to install, for example after driving for a long period.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- ▷ Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, for example if the installation is terminated.
- ▷ Close the windows.
- ▷ Close the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Closing the luggage compartment
- ▷ Remove devices that consume energy, for example mobile phone.
- ▷ Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
- ▷ The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- ▷ Switch off the exterior lights.
- ▷ Remove the devices connected to the socket for on-board diagnosis.

Install immediately

The upgrade can be installed immediately when all prerequisites have been met.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "System settings" / "REMOTE SOFTWARE UPGRADE" / "Start installation"
2. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Installing with timer

At the end of the journey, a timer can be used to install the upgrade automatically at a configured time, for example, during the night. It may make sense to install later to meet functional requirements, such as a sufficiently cooled engine.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "System settings" / "REMOTE SOFTWARE UPGRADE"
2. Select the desired settings.

The installation starts automatically when:

- ▷ All prerequisites for the installation have been established correctly.
- ▷ All prerequisites continue to be met at the time of installation.

The timer is turned off when the drive-ready state is turned on.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, many of the functions are temporarily unavailable, for example:

- ▷ Hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Central locking system and, if necessary, Comfort Access.
- ▷ Side lights.
- ▷ Horn.
- ▷ Alarm system.
- ▷ Emergency call.
- ▷ Window lifters.

- ▷ Glass sunroof.
- ▷ Fuel filler flap lock.
- ▷ Operating the tailgate or boot lid.
- ▷ Exit warning, if necessary.

In vehicles with frameless doors, the window may no longer close completely.

The driver's door can be unlocked and locked from outside with the integrated key.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Purchased services, e.g. Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services, are automatically reactivated during your next drive.

After an extended stationary period, charge the vehicle battery with an extended drive.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the BMW app.

If the malfunction cannot be rectified, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the contents of the printed Owner's Handbook are up to date.

After a software update in the vehicle

Depending on the national-market version, the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain the latest information after a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade.

Before starting a journey, ensure that the Integrated Owner's Handbook is available and up-to-date.

Personal settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers various services which require data to be transferred to BMW or a service provider.

General

Data transfer can be deactivated for some services. If data transfer has been deactivated for a service, then that service cannot be used.

Settings

Data transfer can be configured individually in various stages or for individual services.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" /
2. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on use, the vehicle stores personal data such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- ▷ BMW IDs or driver profiles.
- ▷ Saved radio stations.
- ▷ Stored shortcuts.
- ▷ Navigation, for example saved destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for example favourites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for example voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.
- ▷ Digital keys.

It may take up to 15 minutes in total to delete data. The vehicle is also removed from the My BMW App and the ConnectedDrive customer portal so that remote functions can no longer be used.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Data can only be deleted with the vehicle at a standstill.
- ▷ The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Deleting data

Personal data in the vehicle is deleted when the vehicle is reset to its factory settings.

For further information:

Reset vehicle data, see page 66.

Resetting vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when drive-ready state is switched off. Data can only be deleted with the



vehicle at a standstill. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / /

If synchronisation of settings has been activated for a BMW ID in the vehicle, the personal settings are retained in the BMW Cloud.

BMW ID

Principle

In BMW ConnectedDrive countries, the BMW ID is the personal login for all relevant offers for the BMW brand. In ConnectedDrive countries, the BMW ID can be used in the vehicle to store and activate personal vehicle settings.

If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can use their own BMW ID in the vehicle. If a BMW ID is activated, the stored settings for this are applied to the vehicle.

General

The BMW ID must be registered once. A BMW ID can be registered via the BMW app, in the ConnectedDrive Portal or at the Service Partner.

The settings made for a BMW ID are saved in the vehicle in a driver profile. Many of the saved settings can be synchronised with the BMW Cloud. This makes these settings available in any vehicle where the same BMW ID is used to log in.

The vehicle can store seven BMW IDs.

Driver recognition enables a BMW ID to be activated as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. For this, a vehicle key or a digital key must be linked to the BMW ID. After unlocking, the BMW ID can be changed.

Additional driver profiles are available for using the vehicle without a BMW ID.

Operating requirements

For a BMW ID to be created, changed, deleted or edited, the vehicle must be at a standstill.

The login in the vehicle with a BMW ID and synchronisation with the BMW Cloud are only possible when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

Welcome window

After unlocking the vehicle, a Welcome window is shown on the control display. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisite:

- ▷ The vehicle does not have a stored BMW ID:
The welcome is neutral. The driver profiles for using the vehicle without a BMW ID are offered. A new BMW ID can be added.
- ▷ The vehicle key or the digital key has not been assigned to a BMW ID:
The welcome is neutral. The saved driver profiles are offered for selection. A new BMW ID can be added.
- ▷ A BMW ID has been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key:
The welcome is personalised, the stored settings are activated. The available driver profiles are offered for selection. A new BMW ID can be added.

Driver profile Driver

Vehicle settings can be saved in the "GB: Fahrer \$s" driver profile if no BMW ID is available.

The "GB: Fahrer \$s" driver profile is subject to the following restrictions, among others:

- ▷ No automatic driver recognition can be assigned.
- ▷ The name and profile picture cannot be changed.

- ▷ There is no synchronisation with the BMW Cloud.
- ▷ Certain functions are not available, for example, navigation functions or saving favourites.

The "GB: Fahrer \$s" driver profile and the settings stored in it can be transferred to a BMW ID. The BMW ID is then displayed instead of the "GB: Fahrer \$s" driver profile.

Driver profile Guest

The "Guest" driver profile can be used to use the vehicle without changing the saved settings of other driver profiles.

Use of the vehicle in the "Guest" driver profile is subject to the following restrictions, among others:

- ▷ The settings made are not saved.
- ▷ No automatic driver recognition or PIN can be assigned.
- ▷ The name and profile picture cannot be changed.
- ▷ There is no synchronisation with the BMW Cloud.

Adding the BMW ID

1.  Tap the icon for the BMW ID or the personal profile picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ The "Guest" driver profile is active:
"Guest" /"Add driver profile"
 - ▷ The "GB: Fahrer \$s" driver profile is active:
3. Scan the displayed QR code with a smartphone.
4. Follow the instructions on the smartphone.
If the My BMW App is installed on the smartphone and the BMW ID is stored, the BMW ID is automatically transferred to the vehicle.

If there is no BMW ID available yet, a new BMW ID can be registered.

5. Select whether further settings should be made, for example, to define the desired driver recognition.

To be able to define driver recognition, the corresponding vehicle key or the corresponding digital key must be detected in the vehicle.

Driver recognition can be defined or changed in the settings at a later point in time.

6. Make further settings if necessary.

Alternatively, the BMW ID can be registered by the Service Partner and added to the vehicle. The BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display of the corresponding vehicle.

The vehicle is added to the user's BMW app.

Synchronisation of settings

If synchronisation is switched on, settings are continuously synchronised from the following areas, for example:

- ▷ BMW ID, e.g. profile picture.
- ▷ Navigation, e.g. last destinations, home address or map settings.
- ▷ Media, e.g. favourites or stored radio stations.
- ▷ iDrive, e.g. main menu configuration, language or units.
- ▷ Personal assistant, e.g. suggestions or activation word.
- ▷ Exterior lights, e.g. one-touch signalling and home lights.

Settings from the following areas are only synchronised when you log in for the first time:

- ▷ Seating and climate comfort, e.g. driver's seat position or temperature setting.
- ▷ Privacy menu.



Confirming the BMW ID

If the BMW ID has been created by the Service Partner and added to the vehicle, the BMW ID must then be confirmed in the vehicle:

1. ▶ Select the desired BMW ID on the welcome screen.
 - ▶ Tap the icon for the BMW ID or the personal profile picture in the status bar.
2. Select the BMW ID to be confirmed.
3. Scan the displayed QR code with the My BMW App.
4. Follow the instructions on the smartphone.

My BMW App

If a BMW ID has been added to a vehicle, the vehicle is automatically added to the My BMW App. This means that functions of the app can be used for this vehicle. This requires the app to be used with the same BMW ID.

Alternatively, a vehicle can be added to the My BMW App by the Service Partner. In this case, the BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display of the corresponding vehicle.

In rare cases, the use of My BMW App functions for this vehicle may be restricted. A further note is shown on the control display.

Main user

The main user is the person who first enters their BMW ID into the vehicle and the vehicle into the My BMW App. Alternatively, the main user can be defined by the Service Partner.

The main user has access to the following settings, for example:

- ▶ Remove BMW IDs stored in the vehicle.
- ▶ Make vehicle-wide privacy settings.
- ▶ Creation of the digital master key.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page 85.

Automatic driver recognition

In order for a BMW ID to be activated when the vehicle is unlocked, a vehicle key or a digital key must be assigned to the BMW ID.

If driver recognition has been defined, automatic activation of the BMW ID is triggered by the following activities:

- ▶ By unlocking the vehicle using the assigned vehicle key button.
- ▶ By unlocking the vehicle using an outside door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried.
- ▶ By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried. Depending on the national-market version, it may not be possible to recognise the digital key.

If there are several vehicle keys or digital keys in the vicinity of the vehicle, the activation of the BMW ID takes place according to the following priority:

- ▶ The key that unlocks the vehicle triggers activation of the assigned BMW ID.
- ▶ If a vehicle key and a digital key are detected at the same time, the digital key triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID.
- ▶ The BMW ID of the key last detected at the driver's door is activated.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key that is assigned to a BMW ID can be used to view or change the stored personal settings.

Before a vehicle key is transferred to other persons, any assigned driver detection should be cancelled. Changes to the driver recognition can be made in the settings of the BMW ID.

The BMW Digital Key provides the option to transfer a digital key to permit other persons the use of your own vehicle.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page 85.

Selecting/changing driver profile

If it was not possible to recognise the BMW ID when unlocking the vehicle, the BMW ID is selected in the welcome window.

The driver profile can be changed at any time via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon for the BMW ID or the personal profile picture in the status bar.
2. "Change driver profile"
3. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
4. If necessary, enter the PIN.

The BMW ID is activated, the saved settings are loaded.

Deleting the BMW ID

1. Tap the icon for the BMW ID or the personal profile picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"
3. "MANAGE PROFILES"
4. Tap the icon for deleting the desired BMW ID.

The following must be observed when deleting BMW IDs:

- ▷ Removing a BMW ID from the vehicle causes the vehicle to be removed from the BMW app. If the BMW ID has been synchronised with the BMW Cloud, the data stored in the BMW Cloud is retained after the BMW ID is deleted. If the currently active BMW ID is removed, a different driver profile must be selected.
- ▷ Deleting the BMW ID of the main user resets the vehicle to the factory settings. The vehicle is removed from all users' BMW Apps and all BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.
- ▷ Removing a vehicle from the BMW app removes the corresponding BMW ID from the vehicle. If the BMW ID was synchronised

with the BMW Cloud, the BMW ID data stored on the BMW Cloud will be retained.

- ▷ If the vehicle is removed from the main user's BMW app, it will also be removed from the other users' BMW apps. The corresponding BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

Settings

The settings made when adding a BMW ID can be changed.

1. Tap the icon for the BMW ID or the personal profile picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"

The following settings are possible:

- ▷ "Driver recognition"
Define or change the driver recognition.
- ▷ "LOCK SCREEN"
Create PIN protection.
- ▷ "MY BMW ID"
Switch synchronisation with the BMW Cloud on/off.
Define the profile picture if it has not been transferred from the BMW App.
- ▷ "MANAGE PROFILES"
Manage the BMW IDs, for example, add or remove BMW IDs.

Setting PIN protection

The stored BMW IDs are offered to every user of the vehicle for selection. PIN protection can be defined if it is wished to prevent the settings from being changed or the data from being viewed for a BMW ID.

1. Tap the icon for the BMW ID or the personal profile picture in the status bar.
2. Select the desired BMW ID.
3. "Settings"
4. "LOCK SCREEN"
5. Enter the desired PIN.



System limits

A clear driver detection via the vehicle key or the digital key may not always be possible, for example in the following cases:

- ▷ If there is a change of driver without the vehicle being locked and unlocked.
- ▷ When multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys with an assigned BMW ID are located in the outer area on the driver's side of the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle was unlocked from the BMW app.

The use of personal settings that are stored for a BMW ID in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, there may be stored settings for a system that is not available in other vehicles, or only in an incompatible version.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Vehicle key

General

The delivery specification includes two vehicle keys, each containing an integrated key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance requirement, the service data is saved in the vehicle key.

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, take it with you whenever you leave the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cells can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and bat-

teries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Overview



Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Pre-conditioning, see page 285.
	Open/close the luggage compartment.
	Home lights, see page 167.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorised Service Partner or an-

other qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If a BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the lost vehicle key, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

Replacing the battery

NOTICE

Unsuitable batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of material damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

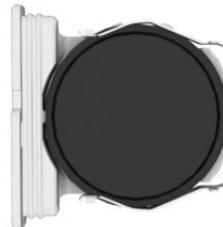
1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1, and push the cover, arrow 2, forward and remove it from the side.



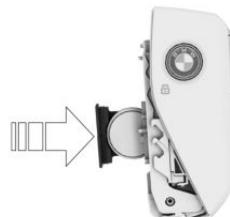
2. Remove the battery housing from the vehicle key to the side.



3. Remove the battery from the battery housing.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 3V battery with the positive terminal facing down.
5. Insert the battery housing into the vehicle key.



6. Insert the cover into the vehicle key.

 Dispose of old batteries with an authorised Service Partner, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, or hand them in to an authorised collection point.

Integrated key

General

The integrated key enables the vehicle to be unlocked without the vehicle key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

WARNING

With some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside requires specific knowledge.

There is a danger of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

Removing the integrated key

1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1, and push the cover, arrow 2, forward and remove it from the side.



2. Slide out the integrated key at the open side of the vehicle key.



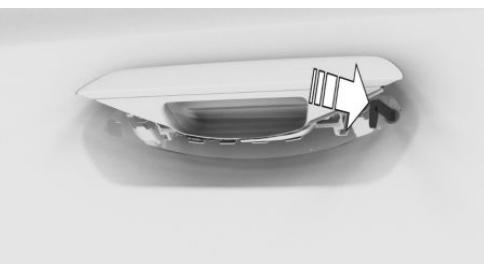
3. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

Unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull the door handle outwards with one hand and hold it.



2. Unlock the door lock by turning it anti-clockwise using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked from the inside.

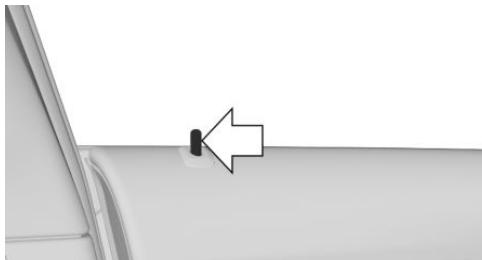
Locking the vehicle from the interior

General

The vehicle can be locked manually from the inside.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key into the vehicle.

Overview



Door pin for manual locking of the driver's door.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the door pin in the driver's door down from the inside.
3. Lock rear doors from the inside.
4. Open the front passenger door and lock it manually.
5. Close the front passenger door from the outside.

Alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock, the activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened.

In this case, use the emergency detection of the vehicle key to switch off the alarm.

If the doors are manually locked from the inside, the alarm system is not activated.

Emergency detection of the vehicle key



Drive-ready state cannot be switched on if the vehicle key is not detected.

If this happens, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the rear side of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. ▷ If the vehicle key is detected:
Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.
- ▷ If the vehicle key is not detected:
Slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the vehicle key in some circumstances, including the following:

- ▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the vehicle key by metallic objects.

Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects.

- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile phones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle key.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference with the radio transmission caused by the charging process of mobile devices, for example a mobile phone.
- ▷ The vehicle key is located in the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging tray.
Place the vehicle key somewhere else.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key. Use the emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on the drive-ready state.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Access to vehicle interior

Safety information

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a danger of injury. Carry the vehicle key with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.

WARNING

With some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside requires specific knowledge.

There is a danger of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

Actions during unlocking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when unlocking the vehicle:

- ▷ Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- ▷ The unlocking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

The following functions are also carried out:

- ▷ If a BMW ID or driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this BMW ID or driver profile will be activated.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on unless they were switched off manually.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, folded exterior mirrors are folded out.

If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button inside the vehicle, they are not folded out when the vehicle is unlocked.



- ▷ The anti-theft security system is switched off.
- ▷ The alarm system is switched off.

For further information:

- ▷ For settings, see page 89.
- ▷ Welcome light, see page 167.
- ▷ BMW ID/driver profiles, see page 67.

Actions during locking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when the vehicle is locked:

- ▷ The locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors can be folded in automatically during locking. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.
- ▷ Home lights can be activated during locking.

The following functions are carried out:

- ▷ All the doors, the tailgate and fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▷ The anti-theft security system is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the locking buttons or the door handles.
- ▷ The alarm system is switched on.

If drive-ready state is still switched on when locking, the vehicle horn sounds twice. If this happens, switch off drive-ready state using Start/Stop button.

For further information:

For settings, see page 89.

With the vehicle key

Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button for unlocking on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap have been unlocked because of the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The vehicle is operational after one of the front doors is opened.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.



2. Press the button for locking on the vehicle key.

All vehicles are locked.

On the door handle

Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to use the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

General

The function is available with Comfort Access. Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked at the door handle with compatible smartphones with a digital key.

For further information:

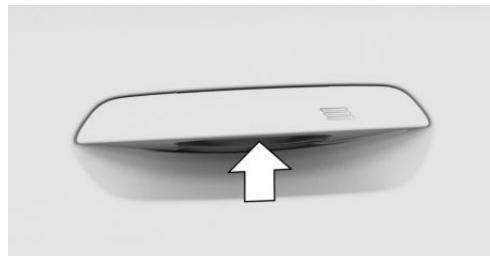
BMW Digital Key, see page 85.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to unlock and lock with the digital key.

- ▶ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be located outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the doors.
- ▶ After locking, approx. 2 seconds must elapse before unlocking is possible.

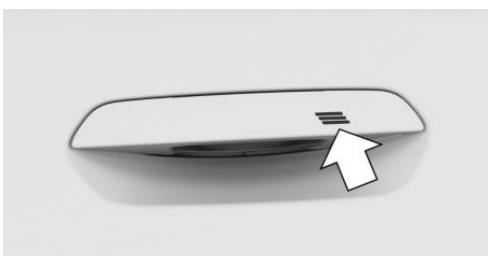
Unlocking the vehicle



Reach into the handle recess of a front door.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Touch the grooved surface on the door handle of a closed front door with a finger for approximately 1 second without reaching into the handle recess.



Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may affect the ability of the door handles to detect a lock request.

If a fault occurs, unlock and lock the vehicle with the buttons on the vehicle key or with the integrated key.

Touchless unlocking/locking of the vehicle

Principle

The vehicle is unlocked when the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key.

If the driver moves away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is locked.

General

The function is available with Comfort Access.

The vehicle is unlocked when an authorised vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft around the side and rear of the vehicle.

The vehicle is locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 3 m, 9 ft around the side and rear of the vehicle.

Depending on the national-market version, touchless unlocking and locking is also possible for compatible smartphones with a digital key. Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to do this.

If the vehicle key remains within the unlocking zone without moving for a prolonged period of time, the vehicle is locked automatically.

If a person is detected on the front passenger seat when locking, and if the front passenger's seat belt is in the seat belt buckle when locking:

If a person is detected on a seat when locking, the following restrictions apply:

- ▶ The vehicle is locked, but not protected against theft.
- ▶ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page 85.



Actions during unlocking

If the settings specify that only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked, note the following:

The driver's door and fuel filler flap will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

For further information:

For settings, see page [89](#).

Operating requirements

- ▷ Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be enabled on the smartphone for contactless unlocking and locking with the digital key.
- ▷ Automatic unlocking and locking must be activated in the settings.
- ▷ Drive-ready state must be switched off.
- ▷ If the vehicle has been in rest state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking is not possible until the vehicle has been driven.

For further information:

For settings, see page [89](#).

With the Key Card

Principle

The Key Card is a chip card on which a digital key is installed. The key card can be used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

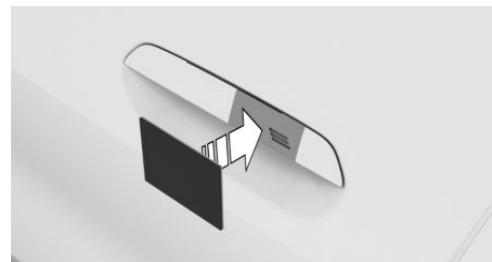
For further information:

Key Card, see page [84](#).

General

The Key Card is available with Comfort Access.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the activated Key Card directly and centrally up against the door handle on the driver's door.

When locking the vehicle with the Key Card, make sure that all doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the process.

With the BMW Digital Key

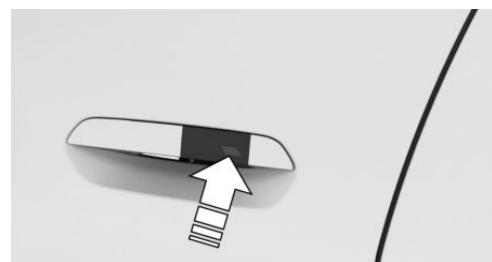
Principle

Depending on the national-market version and equipment, a digital key can be installed on a compatible smartphone and used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page [85](#).

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the NFC aerial of the smartphone directly and centrally up against the door handle on

the driver's door. The position of the NFC antenna will depend on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Frequently Asked Questions

What measures can be taken to enable a vehicle to be opened if the vehicle key has accidentally been locked inside the vehicle?

- ▷ The Remote Services of the My BMW App can be used to lock and unlock a vehicle, for example.

This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW app must be installed on a smartphone.

- ▷ Unlocking of the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive call centre.

This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract.

Access to the luggage compartment

General

The luggage compartment will be opened to the configured opening height.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the tailgate is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the tailgate is kept clear.

⚠ WARNING

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a danger of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the tailgate is kept clear.

⚠ NOTICE

Pointed or angular objects can strike the windows and the heating elements during the journey. There is a risk of material damage. Cover edges and make sure that pointed objects cannot strike the windows.

With the vehicle key

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the luggage compartment.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the following settings are possible:

- ▷ Unlocking the luggage compartment with the vehicle key also unlocks the doors.
- ▷ The vehicle must be unlocked before unlocking the luggage compartment with the vehicle key.

Operating requirements

- ▷ To open the luggage compartment with the vehicle key, the trailer socket must not be occupied.
- ▷ Selector lever position P must be engaged to open the luggage compartment with the vehicle key.
- ▷ Opening with the vehicle key must be activated in the settings.

For further information:

For settings, see page [89](#).



Opening the luggage compartment



On the vehicle key, press the button for opening/closing the luggage compartment for approximately 1 second.

Closing the luggage compartment



Press and hold the button for opening/closing the luggage compartment on the vehicle key until the luggage compartment is closed.

Releasing the button stops the movement.

If the doors were not unlocked, the luggage compartment is locked again as soon as it closes.

On the luggage compartment

General

With Comfort Access, the luggage compartment can be accessed without activating the vehicle key.

The key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Depending on the national-market version, compatible smartphones with a digital key are also detected automatically. In this case, the luggage compartment can be opened with a smartphone.

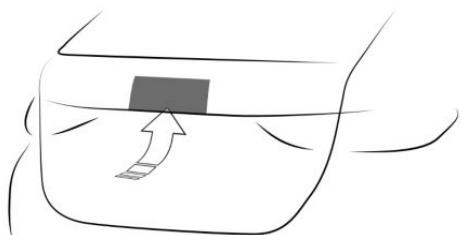
For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page **85**.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to detect the digital key.

Opening the luggage compartment

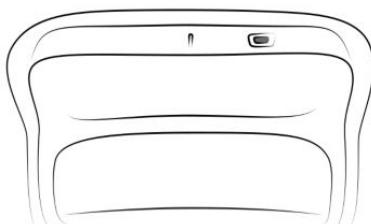


▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the luggage compartment.

▷ With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the luggage compartment.

Locked doors are not unlocked.

Closing the luggage compartment



▷ In the tailgate, press the button for opening/closing.



In the tailgate, press the button for locking.



The vehicle is locked after the luggage compartment has been closed. For this to happen, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the luggage compartment.

In the interior

Functional prerequisites

In order to be able to open the luggage compartment with the button in the vehicle interior, the trailer socket must not be occupied.

In order to be able to close the luggage compartment with the button in the interior, the vehicle key or the digital key must be located in the interior.

Opening the luggage compartment



On the driver's door, press the button for opening/closing the luggage compartment.

Closing the luggage compartment



Pull and hold the button for opening/closing the luggage compartment in the driver's door.

Cancelling the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the vehicle begins to move.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the luggage compartment. Pressing it again closes the luggage compartment again.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the luggage compartment. Pressing it again closes the luggage compartment again.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing the button again continues the opening process.
Pressing and holding the button again closes the luggage compartment again.
- ▷ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again resumes the opening procedure.

Cancelling the closing operation

The closing operation is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When driving off suddenly.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the luggage compartment. Pressing it again opens the luggage compartment again.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the luggage compartment. Pressing it again opens the luggage compartment again.
- ▷ By releasing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing the button again opens the luggage compartment again.
Pressing and holding it again resumes the closing operation.
- ▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling and holding the button again resumes the closing operation.

Touchless opening and closing of the luggage compartment

Principle

Touchless opening and closing of the luggage compartment is possible when carrying the vehicle key on your person.

Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot movement in the central rear area and the luggage compartment is opened and closed.

General

The availability of the function depends on the equipment and national-market version.

If the vehicle key is within the sensor range, the luggage compartment may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor range extends to approximately 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.

If you open the luggage compartment contactlessly, locked doors will not be unlocked.

depending on the national-market version, touchless opening of the luggage compartment is also possible for compatible smartphones with a digital key.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page [85](#).

Safety information

WARNING

When opening/closing contactlessly, there is a risk of touching vehicle parts, for example the hot exhaust system. There is a danger of injury. Make sure you are standing securely as you move your foot, and do not touch the vehicle.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the tailgate is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the tailgate is kept clear.

WARNING

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a danger of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the tailgate is kept clear.

NOTICE

Pointed or angular objects can strike the windows and the heating elements during the journey. There is a risk of material damage. Cover edges and make sure that pointed objects cannot strike the windows.

Operating requirements

- ▷ To enable the touchless opening of the luggage compartment, the trailer socket must not be occupied.
- ▷ Selector lever position P must be engaged for touchless opening of the luggage compartment.
- ▷ Contactless opening and closing of the luggage compartment must be activated in the settings.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to enable the touchless opening and closing of the luggage compartment using the digital key.

For further information:

For settings, see page [89](#).

Opening the luggage compartment

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Kick your foot as far as possible underneath the vehicle and immediately pull it back. Your leg must move across the ranges of both sensors.



Before the luggage compartment opens, the hazard warning lights will flash.

Moving the foot again will stop the opening procedure. The subsequent foot movement will close the luggage compartment again.

Closing the luggage compartment

Perform the foot movement for opening the luggage compartment.

The hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving the foot again will stop the closing operation. The subsequent foot movement will open the luggage compartment again.

System limits

Detection of foot movement may be restricted by the following external circumstances:

- ▶ Ice, snow or slush on the rear of the vehicle.
- ▶ Dirt or road salt on the rear of the vehicle.

Movement in the vicinity of the sensors may cause the luggage compartment to open unintentionally, for example if water flows underneath the vehicle during cleaning or in heavy rain. To prevent the luggage compartment from opening unintentionally, make sure that the vehicle key is far enough away from the rear of the vehicle.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical fault, operate the unlocked luggage compartment manually with a slow and smooth motion.

Key Card

Principle

The Key Card can be used to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

General

The availability of the Key Card depends on the equipment and national-market version.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

When you exit the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you, as it can be used to start the vehicle when activated. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card may be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Do not place the Key Card in the wireless charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Activating/deactivating the Key Card in the vehicle

General

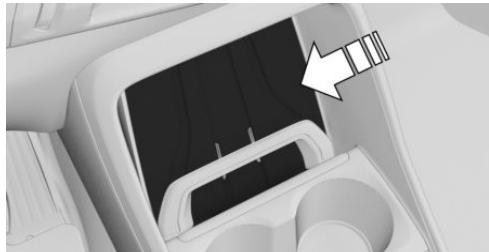
If BMW Digital Key is enabled for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card will remain in the list of registered digital keys.

Operating requirements

To activate and deactivate the Key Card, there must be a vehicle key in the vehicle.

Activating the Key Card





1. Place the Key Card in the middle of the tray and push it down behind the holding clip.
2. Follow instructions on the control display.

Deactivating the Key Card

To deactivate the Key Card, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows" / "Vehicle key" / "Key Card" / "Deactivate Key Card".

A deactivated Key Card will remain in the list of registered digital keys.

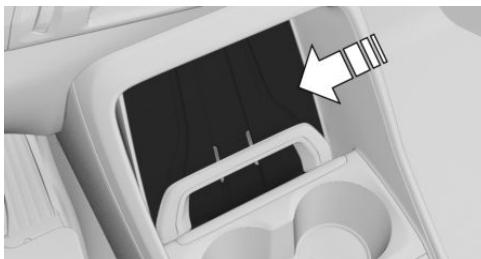
Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked with the activated Key Card.

For further information:

Access to the vehicle interior, see page [76](#).

Switching on drive-ready state



1. Place the activated Key Card in the middle of the tray and push it down behind the holding clip.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

After turning on the drive-ready state, the Key Card can be taken out of the storage tray.

Malfunction

Objects between the sensors and the Key Card, for example a purse/wallet or smartphone case, may prevent the vehicle from detecting the Key Card.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key allows you to use a compatible smartphone to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

General

The availability and scope of functions of BMW Digital Key depend on the equipment and national-market version.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible end devices.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The BMW app provides a check to determine if the smartphone and the vehicle are compatible and which functions are supported.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, it is helpful to carry the deactivated Key Card in the vehicle. In situations where the vehicle has to be handed over to another person, the Key Card can be handed over instead of the smartphone. For this, the Key Card must be activated via iDrive.

Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

For further information:

- ▷ BMW ID/driver profiles, see page [67](#).
- ▷ Key Card, see page [84](#).

Additional information is available on the Internet:

www.bmw.com/digitalkey.

Operating requirements

- ▶ The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key.
- ▶ The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the registered keeper.
- ▶ The smartphone battery is sufficiently charged. The minimum battery charge required depends on the smartphone in question.

Enabling the main digital key

The registered keeper's smartphone is enabled as the main digital key in the vehicle. To do so, the registered keeper must provide proof of authorisation for their vehicle.

Proof of authorisation can be started via the BMW app or via the activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, for example in the Wallet app. Both vehicle keys must be in the vehicle during activation.

Follow the enabling instructions in the Digital Key menu within the BMW app or on the control display.

Sharing digital keys

General

Digital Key enables digital keys to be shared with other people. This option is provided via the smartphone enabled as the main digital key. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Passing on authorisation

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for example in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with a person, this person receives an invitation. If the invitation is accepted, the digital key is activated on the recipient's smartphone.

Limiting the range of functions

Certain functions of the digital key can be limited before handing it over. For example, restrictions on driving stability control systems can be suppressed and engine performance can be reduced before the digital key is given to a beginner driver. For more information, refer to the ConnectedDrive portal and the BMW app.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, authentication may be required for security reasons.

An authorised vehicle key, the main digital key or another method can be used to perform the authentication. Corresponding information is displayed for your attention on the smartphone or control display.

Deleting digital keys

General

Deleted digital keys are removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deleting the digital master key

The digital master key can be deleted from the smartphone or via iDrive.

The deletion of the digital master key is completed immediately.

Deleting a shared key

Shared keys can be deleted via the smartphone associated with the main digital key, via the smartphone associated with a shared key or in iDrive.

A shared key will only be deleted via the smartphone associated with the main digital key if the vehicle is being used with a key other than the one that is to be deleted.

If the smartphone associated with a shared key or iDrive is used to delete a shared key, it will be deleted immediately.

Deletion in iDrive

To enable a digital key to be deleted via iDrive, there must be an authorised vehicle key in the vehicle or the digital main key must be in the smartphone tray.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows" / "Vehicle key" / "Digital Key" /
2. Select a digital key as necessary.
3. "Delete key"

Resetting the function

To reset BMW Digital Key function, there must be an authorised vehicle key in the vehicle.

All digital keys, including the main key, are deleted when the BMW Digital Key function is reset. The digital key of the Key Card is not deleted.

Following the reset, it will no longer be possible to lock, unlock or start the vehicle with a digital key.

The main digital key must be enabled again in order to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

To activate the digital main key again, select the following menu path: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows" / "Vehicle key" / "Digital Key" / "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked as follows:

- ▷ Via the outside door handle.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: depending on the national-market version, the vehicle can be locked and unlocked with no-touch activation.

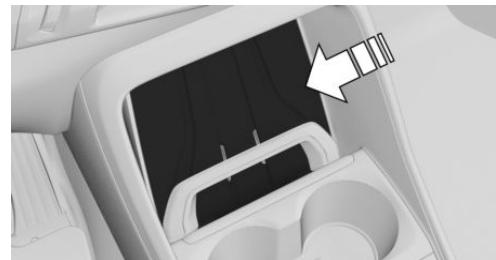
Bluetooth must be enabled on the smartphone for contactless unlocking and locking with the digital key.

For further information:

Access to the vehicle interior, see page 76.

Switching on drive-ready state

Using the smartphone tray



1. Place the smartphone in the centre of the tray and push it down behind the holding clip.
Make sure that the display is pointing upwards.
2. Press the Start/Stop button to turn on the drive-ready state.

Depending on the thickness of the mobile phone, it may be necessary to open the holding clip during insertion and removal.

In the interior

With Comfort Access, it is sufficient, depending on the national-market version, for the smartphone with activated Bluetooth to be located in the interior. Press the Start/Stop button to turn on the drive-ready state.

Selling the smartphone

Delete all digital keys from the smartphone before selling it. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Changing smartphones

In order to be able to use a new smartphone as a digital main key, the new smartphone must be activated in accordance with the description for the digital main key. The previous main key is deleted when the new smartphone is activated.

Selling the vehicle

Before selling a vehicle, reset the digital key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current registered keeper.

If the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle are deleted. The digital key of the Key Card is not deleted.

System limits

With a digital key, it is not possible to switch off the interior movement sensor and the tilt alarm sensor of the alarm system.

For further information:

Alarm system, see page 91.

Malfunction

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the digital key in some circumstances, including the following:

- ▷ The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by an unsuitable smartphone cover.
- ▷ There are objects between the smartphone and its cover, for example a card with a chip or the Key Card.
- ▷ Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the smartphone due to buildings or metal objects.

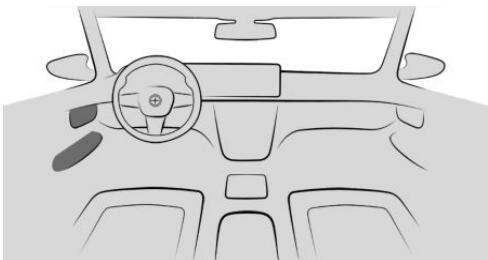
Central locking buttons

General

The vehicle is automatically locked when moving off.

If an accident of appropriate severity occurs, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning lights and the interior lights illuminate.

Overview



The central locking system buttons are located in the front door.

Locking the vehicle



With the front doors closed, press the locking button on the front door.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Locking does not activate the vehicle's anti-theft protection system.

Unlocking the vehicle



Press the door unlock button in the front door.

To open the door



▷ Press the door unlock switch in the front door to unlock the doors together.



- Pull the door handle above the armrest.
- ▷ Pull the door handle on the door being opened. The other doors remain locked.

Valet parking mode

Principle

The control display is disabled in valet parking mode.

This mode can be used, for example, if the vehicle is to be handed over to a parking service.

General

Depending on the national-market version, the valet parking mode may not be available.

Valet parking mode includes the following restrictions:

- ▷ Changes to the vehicle settings via iDrive are not possible.
- ▷ Settings stored in a BMW ID or a guest profile cannot be changed.
- ▷ Personal data cannot be displayed.
- ▷ The volume of the audio system is limited.
- ▷ The Dynamic Stability Control cannot be deactivated.
- ▷ The availability of certain settings of the drive modes is restricted.

For further information:

BMW ID/driver profiles, see page 67.

Operating requirements

The driver has registered in the vehicle with a BMW ID.

Activating valet parking mode

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "GB: Parkservice-Modus aktivieren"
2. Set PIN if necessary

If the active BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN, create a PIN. The PIN is needed to deactivate the valet parking mode. The PIN set here will be assigned to the active BMW ID for the screen lock.

3. If necessary, enter the PIN.
4. "Activate valet parking mode"

Deactivating valet parking mode

1. Select the desired BMW ID on the lock screen.
2. ▷ Enter the assigned PIN for the BMW ID.
If the PIN was forgotten: enter access data for the BMW ID.
- ▷ If the selected BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN: enter access data for the BMW ID.

Settings

General

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for opening and closing.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows" / "GB: Verriegeln und Sicherheit" / "GB: VERRIEGELN UND SICHERHEIT" / "Unlock"
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Driver's door only"
Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
 - ▷ "All doors"
The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Touchless unlocking/locking

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows"/"GB: Verriegeln und Sicherheit" / "GB: VERRIEGELN UND SICHERHEIT"
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Unlock when approaching"
 - ▷ "Lock when walking away"

Automatic unlocking

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows"/"GB: Verriegeln und Sicherheit" / "GB: VERRIEGELN UND SICHERHEIT"
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Unlock doors at end of trip"
 - ▷ "Doors will unlock automatically when in P."

After drive-ready state has been switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button or by engaging the selector lever position P, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Vehicle acknowledgement signals

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows"/"GB: Verriegeln und Sicherheit" / "GB: VERRIEGELN UND SICHERHEIT"
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Flash when unlocking"
Unlocking is confirmed by two flashes.
 - ▷ "Flash when locking"
Locking is confirmed by flashing once.
 - ▷ With alarm system:
"Sound on lock/unlock"
Unlocking is acknowledged by two acoustic signals, locking by one acoustic signal.

Automatic folding of the mirrors

Automatic folding-in of the side mirrors can be set via iDrive.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows"/"GB: Verriegeln und Sicherheit" / "GB: VERRIEGELN UND SICHERHEIT" / "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock"

Luggage compartment

Luggage compartment button on the vehicle key

The assignment of the luggage compartment button on the vehicle key can be selected.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows" / "Tailgate" / "VEHICLE KEY" / "Tailgate button"
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Tailgate"
Depending on vehicle equipment, the luggage compartment will be unlocked or opened.
 - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"
Depending on the equipment, the luggage compartment will be unlocked or opened and the doors are unlocked.
 - ▷ "Tailgate will only open if vehicle is already unlocked"
The vehicle must be unlocked before the luggage compartment can be operated with the vehicle key.
 - ▷ "Lock tailgate button"
Operation of the luggage compartment with the vehicle key is disabled.

Adjusting the opening height

It is possible to specify how far the tailgate should open.

When setting the opening height, make sure that there is a clearance of at least 10 cm, 4 in above the tailgate.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows" / "Tailgate" / "Opening height"
2. Watch the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Opening/closing the luggage compartment with no-touch activation

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows" / "Tailgate"
2. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Open with foot movement"
 - ▷ "Close with foot movement"

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system visually and acoustically signals when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle.

General

The alarm system responds to the following changes in a locked vehicle:

- ▷ Opening a door, the bonnet or the luggage compartment.
- ▷ Movements inside the vehicle interior.
- ▷ A change in the vehicle's angle of inclination, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- ▷ An interruption in the battery voltage.
- ▷ Improper use of the diagnostic socket.
- ▷ Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the on-board diagnostic socket.

The alarm system indicates these changes visually and audibly:

- ▷ Acoustic alarm:
Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ Optical alarm:
By flashing of the hazard warning lights and, if applicable, the headlights.

To safeguard operation of the alarm system, do not modify the system.

Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system is switched on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

If the vehicle is locked remotely with the BMW app, the alarm system is not switched on.

Opening the doors when the alarm system is switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if it has been unlocked via the door lock using the integrated key.

Opening the luggage compartment with the alarm system turned on

The luggage compartment can be opened even when the alarm system is turned on.

After closing the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning lights flash once during closing.

Indicator light on the interior mirror



- ▷ The indicator light flashes every 2 seconds:
The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes for approximately 10 seconds then switches to flashing every 2 seconds:
The interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are not active because the doors, bonnet or tailgate are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.
Once the remaining open access points have been closed, the interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are switched on.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes even though all accesses have been closed:
Error in the alarm system.
- ▷ The indicator light extinguishes after the vehicle has been unlocked:
This means that the vehicle is not being tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but for no longer than approximately 5 minutes:
The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The vehicle's angle of inclination is monitored. The alarm system responds, for example when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle away.

Interior movement detector

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system responds when movement is detected in the vehicle interior.

To ensure perfect functioning, the windows must be closed.

Avoiding false warnings

General

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector may trigger an alarm even though no unauthorised activity is taking place.

Situations where false warnings may occur:

- ▷ In washing bays or car washes.
- ▷ In two-level garages.
- ▷ When transporting the vehicle via motorail, car ferry or trailer.
- ▷ When there are pets in the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked after starting to refuel.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector can be switched off for such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

- ▷  Press the button for locking on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light illuminates for approximately 2 seconds and then flashes again.

- ▷ After turning off the standby state, an option to turn off the interior movement detector and the tilt alarm sensor will be displayed on the control display.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Ending the alarm

Unlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, drive-ready state must then be turned on via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key remains pressed.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

Window

General

If a window is often opened in the same location, this task can be carried out by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. Useful, for example, if the same multi-storey car park is frequently used.

For further information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, see page [56](#).

On the door handle

Principle

The windows can be closed via the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

General

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Depending on the national-market version, the windows can also be closed at the door handle with compatible smartphones with digital key.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page [85](#).

Safety information

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the windows are operated. There is a danger of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the windows is kept clear.

With the vehicle key

Opening windows

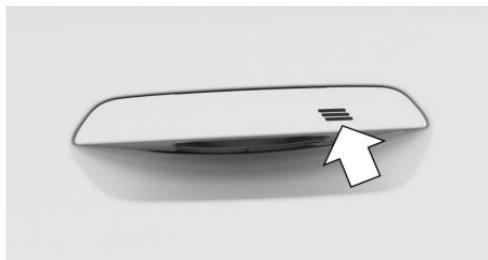
 Press and hold the button for unlocking on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key remains pressed.

Close windows

 press and hold the button for locking on the vehicle key after locking.

Close windows



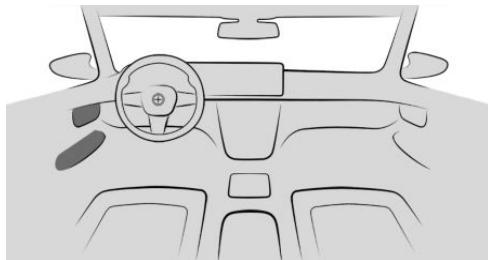
Touch the grooved surface on the door handle of a closed front door with a finger and hold it there without grasping the handle recess.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

In the interior

Overview



 The switches for the window lifters are located on the doors.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ For a short while after rest state has been established.

The vehicle key or a digital key must be inside the vehicle.

Opening windows

- ▷  On the door, press the window lifter switch to the resistance point.
The window opens for as long as the switch is held.
- ▷  On the door, press the switch for the window lifter past the resistance point.
The window is opened automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Close windows

- ▷  Inside the door, pull the window lifter switch to the resistance point.
The window closes for as long as the switch is held.
- ▷  Inside the door, pull the window lifter switch past the resistance point.
The window closes automatically. Pulling the switch again stops the movement.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General

If resistance or an obstruction is detected while a window is being closed, the closing process is interrupted.



Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

Accessories on the windows, for example aerials, can impair the anti-trap mechanism. There is a danger of injury. Do not attach any accessories within the movement range of the windows.

Closing with no anti-trap mechanism

If an external hazard or ice prevents normal closure, proceed as follows:

1.  On the door, pull the window lifter switch past the resistance point and hold it. The window is closed but with restricted anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.

2.  On the door, press the window lifter switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold. The window is closed with no anti-trap mechanism.

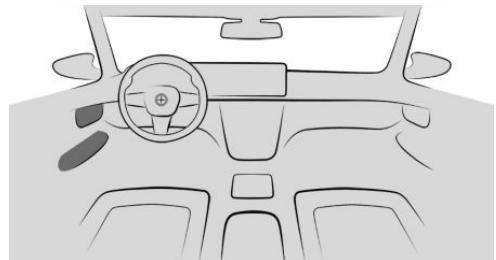
Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows with the switches in the rear, for example.

If an accident of appropriate severity occurs, the safety function is automatically switched off.

Overview



 The safety switch is located in the driver's door.

Turning the safety functions on/off

 Press the safety switch in the driver's door.

The LED is illuminated when the safety function is switched on.

Glass sunroof

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

Parts of the body may become trapped when the glass sunroof is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the glass sunroof is kept clear.

With the vehicle key

Opening the glass sunroof

 Press and hold the button for unlocking on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The electric glass sunroof with sun protection is opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing the glass sunroof

 Press and hold the button for locking on the vehicle key after locking.

The electric glass sunroof with sun protection is closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

On the door handle

Principle

The glass sunroof can be closed with the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

General

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Depending on the national-market version, the glass sunroof can also be closed at the door handle with compatible smartphones with a digital key.

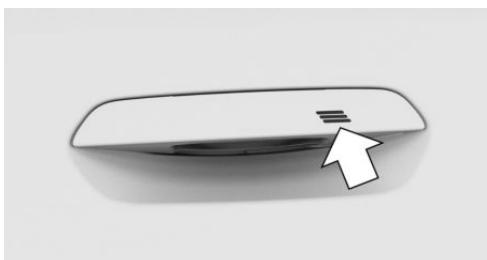
For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page [85](#).

Operating requirements

- ▶ Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.
- ▶ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to close the glass sunroof with the digital key.

Closing the glass sunroof



Touch the grooved surface on the door handle of a closed front door with a finger and hold it there without grasping the handle recess.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

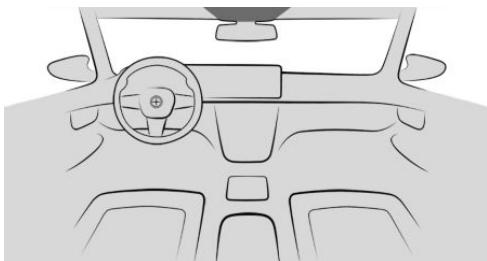
In the interior

General

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

Overview

Button in the vehicle





The switch for the glass sunroof/sun protection is located in the headliner.

Operating requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions:

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ For a short while after rest state has been established.

The vehicle key must be in the vehicle interior.

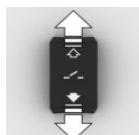
Raising/closing the glass sunroof



In the headliner, briefly press the switch for the glass sunroof and sun protection upwards.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof is raised and the sun protection opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes to the raised position. The sun protection does not move.
- ▷ The raised glass sunroof is closed.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- ▷ In the headliner, push the switch for the glass sunroof and sun protection back to the resistance point and hold it.

The sun protection opens for as long as the switch is pressed. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof is opened.

- ▷ Slide the switch forwards as far as the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes for as long as the switch is held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun protection is closed.

- ▷ Slide the switch backwards beyond the resistance point.

The sun protection is opened automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof is opened automatically.

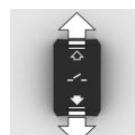
Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

- ▷ Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point.

The glass sunroof is closed automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun protection is closed automatically.

Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



- ▷ In the headliner, push the switch for the glass sunroof and sun protection back past the resistance point twice in quick succession.

The glass sunroof and the sun protection open together.

Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

- ▷ Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point twice in quick succession.

The glass sunroof and the sun protection close together.

Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Comfort position

In some models, wind noise levels inside the vehicle are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. On these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof as far as this comfort position.

Pressing the switch for the glass sunroof and sun protection in the headliner opens the glass sunroof fully.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

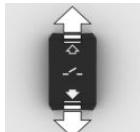
The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is being closed.

General

If resistance or an obstruction is detected while the glass sunroof is being closed, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position or when closing from the raised position.

Closing with no anti-trap mechanism from an open position

If an external hazard or ice prevents normal closure, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Establish drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. In the headliner, push the switch for the glass sunroof and sun protection forward past the resistance point and hold it.

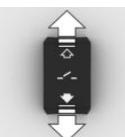
The glass sunroof is closed with restricted anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force

exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.

4. Slide the switch forwards once again beyond the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes with no anti-trap mechanism. Ensure that the closing range is clear.

Closing with no anti-trap mechanism from a raised position

If an external hazard or ice prevents normal closure, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Establish drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. In the headliner, push the switch for the glass sunroof and sun protection forward past the resistance point and hold it.

Initialising after an open circuit

General

If an open circuit occurs while the glass sunroof is opening or closing, it may only have restricted functionality afterwards. In this case, initialising the system can help.

The system can be initialised if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- ▷ The vehicle does not move until initialisation is complete.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is activated.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above 5 °C/41 °F.

During initialisation, the glass sunroof closes with no anti-trap mechanism.

Ensure that the closing range is clear.

Initialising the system



In the headliner, press and hold the glass sunroof and sun protection switch up until initialisation is completed:

Initialisation begins within 15 seconds.

- ▷ If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens, then closes again.
- ▷ If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.
- ▷ In the closed position, the sun protection is initialized.

Initialisation is complete once the glass sunroof and sun visor have opened, then closed again.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Safe seating position

A seat position that suitably meets the needs of the occupants is essential for relaxed driving with minimum fatigue.

In an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Pay attention to the notes in the following chapters.

For further information:

- ▶ Seats, see page 100.
- ▶ Seat belts, see page 104.
- ▶ Head restraints, see page 107.
- ▶ Airbags, see page 175.

Seats, front

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Setting the seat during a journey could cause the seat to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when at a standstill.

⚠ WARNING

If the backrest is angled too far back, the protective effect of the seat belt will no longer be guaranteed. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in the event of an accident. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Adjust the seat before starting the journey. Adjust the backrest to the most upright position possible, and do not change it during the journey.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the movement range of the seat is clear.

Manually adjustable seats

Overview



The levers for the seat settings are located at the front seats.

Adjusting the forward/back position

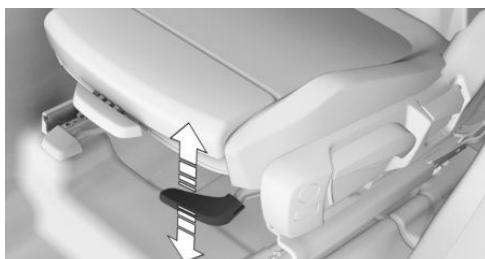
WARNING

If the seat is not locked, it could move unexpectedly during a journey. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. After making an adjustment, move the seat forwards and backwards slightly to ensure that it is properly engaged.



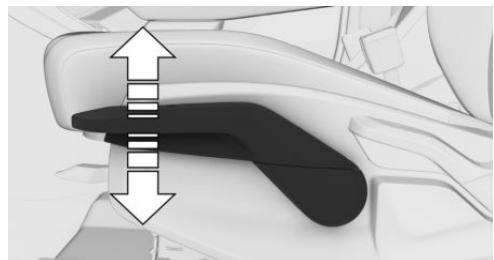
At the front of the seat, pull the lever for the longitudinal direction and push the seat in the desired direction.

Adjusting the seat angle



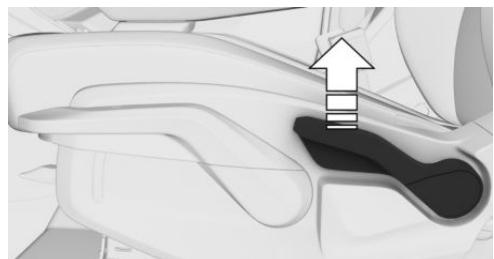
At the front of the seat, pull the lever up or press the lever down repeatedly until the seat reaches the desired angle.

Adjusting the height



At the side of the seat, pull the lever up or press the lever down repeatedly until the seat reaches the desired height.

Adjusting the backrest angle



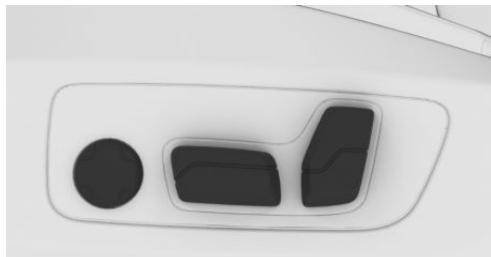
At the side of the seat, pull the lever for the backrest angle and load or relieve the backrest as required.

Electrically adjustable seats

General

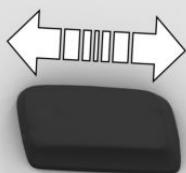
The current seat position can be saved using the memory function.

Overview



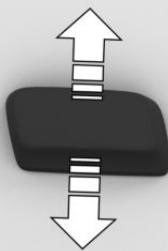
The switches for the seat settings are located at the front seats.

Adjusting the forward/back position



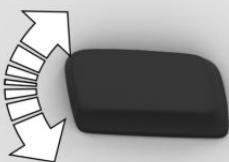
On the seat, push the longitudinal direction switch forwards or backwards.

Adjusting the height



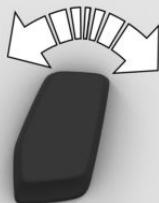
On the seat, press the seat height switch up or down.

Adjusting the seat angle



On the seat, tilt the seat angle switch up or down.

Adjusting the backrest angle



On the seat, tilt the backrest angle switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the seat position automatically

General

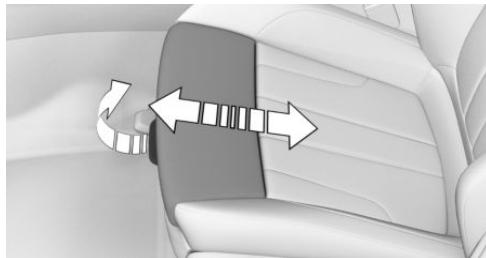
The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is loaded automatically.

Activating/deactivating the function

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Seat comfort" / "Driver" / "Autom. use seat position"
2. Select the desired setting.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever for the thigh support at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forwards or backwards.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the backrest can be changed to provide support for the lumbar region, or lordosis. The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported to encourage an upright sitting posture.

Adjusting the lumbar support



- ▷ On the seat, press the lumbar support button at the front/rear:
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the button at the top/bottom:
The curvature is shifted upwards/downwards.

Seat massage

Principle

The seat massage ensures relaxed muscles and better blood circulation in the lumbar region and can prevent signs of fatigue.

Seat massage menu



Press the seat massage button on the seat to open the seat massage menu directly on the control display.

The function can be deactivated via a check box.

Turning the seat massage on/off

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Seat comfort"
2. Select the desired seat.
3. "Seat massage"
4. If necessary, select the desired setting.

The seat massage is interrupted when the lumbar support is operated.

Calibrating the front seats

General

As soon as the electric seat adjustment no longer functions precisely, a Check Control message is displayed on the control display.

To restore the accuracy of the electric seat setting, the front seats must be calibrated.

Safety information

WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the movement range of the seat is clear.

Calibrating the front seat

1. Push the switch forward again in a longitudinal direction until the seat stops.
2. Push the switch forward again until the seat stops.
3. Reset the desired seat position.

As soon as the message on the control display disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If the message is not hidden after repeated calibration, have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Rear seats

Second-row seating

General

The backrest angle can be adjusted for the seats in the second-row seating.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the movement range of the seat is clear.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when folding down the centre armrest in the rear. There is a danger of injury. When folding down, make sure that the movement range of the centre armrest is kept clear.

⚠ WARNING

In the folded down state, the seats of the second-row seating are not locked and can move. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Fold the seats of the second-row seating only down with load. When driving

without load, fold back and lock the seats of the second-row seating prior to departure.

Longitudinal direction

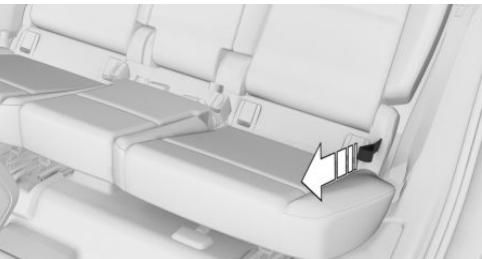


At the front of the seat, pull the lever for the longitudinal direction and push the seat in the desired direction.

After adjusting the longitudinal direction, make sure that the seat engages properly.

Backrest angle

1. Pull the loop on the side of the seat to unlock the backrest.



2. Add or remove pressure on the backrest as required.

After adjusting the backrest angle, make sure that the backrest engages correctly.

Seat belts

General

For the safety of the vehicle occupants, the vehicle is equipped with five seat belts. However,



they can only provide a protective effect when applied correctly.

Before each journey, always make sure that all occupants have fastened their seat belts. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for the seat belts.

All belt anchorages are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect of the seat belts with proper use of the seat belts and correct seat setting.

The two outer seat belt buckles on the rear seats are intended for those sitting on the left and right.

The inner seat belt buckle on the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

For further information:

Notes on sitting safely, see page [100](#).

Safety information

WARNING

If a seat belt is used by more than one person at the same time, the protective effect of the seat belt is no longer guaranteed. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Only one person should use each seat belt at any one time. Do not allow infants and children to travel on the lap of another occupant. Instead, secure the infant or child in child restraint systems intended for this purpose.

WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts may be restricted or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make

sure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts correctly.

WARNING

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not ensured. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Lock the wider rear seat backrest when using the middle seat belt.

WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts may be restricted or may even fail completely in the following situations:

- ▷ If the seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, dirty or have been modified in another way.
- ▷ The seat belt tensioners or belt retractors have been modified.

Seat belts can be damaged in an accident without the damage necessarily being apparent. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not modify seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, belt retractors and belt anchor points and ensure that they are kept clean. After an accident, have the seat belts inspected at an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

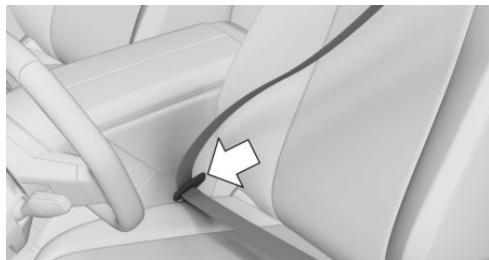
Correct seat belt use

- ▷ Place the seat belt tightly over the pelvis and shoulder, close to the body and without twisting.
- ▷ Make sure that the seat belt is positioned low at the hips in the area of the pelvis. The seat belt must not press on the abdomen.
- ▷ The seat belt must not be allowed to rub against sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be trapped.

- ▷ Avoid wearing bulky clothing.
- ▷ Keep the seat belt taut by occasionally pulling upwards on the upper body area.

Fastening the seat belt

1. When fastening the seat belt, guide it slowly over the shoulder and pelvis.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue in the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.

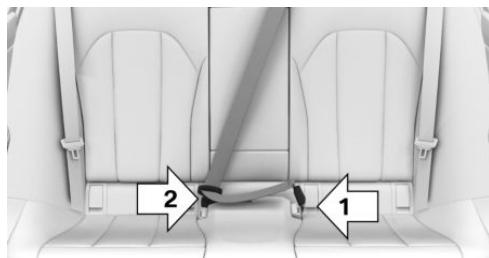


Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the seat belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back up to the automatic reel.

Middle seat belt in the rear

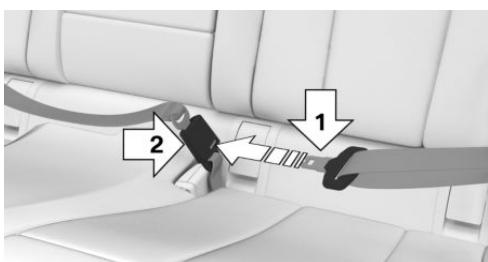
Fastening the seat belt



1. Pull the seat belt tongues out of the holder in the roof.
 2. Insert the lower seat belt tongue in the belt lock, arrow 1.
 3. Insert the upper seat belt tongue in the seat belt buckle, arrow 2.
- The seat belt buckles must be heard to engage.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the seat belt buckle.
3. Use the seat belt tongue, arrow 1, to open the belt lock, arrow 2.



4. Guide the seat belt to the holder in the roof.

Seat belt warning

General

Check whether the seat belts are fastened correctly.

The seat belt warning becomes active in the following situations:

- ▷ When the seat belt on the driver's side or on the passenger's side is not fastened.
- ▷ In some national-market versions, the seat belt warning is also active if the seat belt on the rear seat bench is not fastened.
- ▷ When the seat belt is unfastened while driving.
- ▷ When objects are lying on a seat.



Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after turning on the drive-ready state and the seat belt warning is active.

A Check Control message is shown where applicable. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and national-market version.

Icon	Meaning
	Seat belt is not buckled.
	Seat belt is only buckled on the corresponding seat.
	Seat belt on the corresponding seat is not buckled.
	Depending on the national-market version: Corresponding seat is not occupied.
	Depending on the national-market version: The seat belt warning is deactivated for the corresponding seat.

Enabling/disabling the seat belt warning

Depending on the national-market version: the seat belt warning can be deactivated for transporting objects on a second row of seats.

If a seat belt is unbuckled while driving, a warning will continue to be issued.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Seat comfort" / "Seat belt warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

Front head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protective effect as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.

WARNING

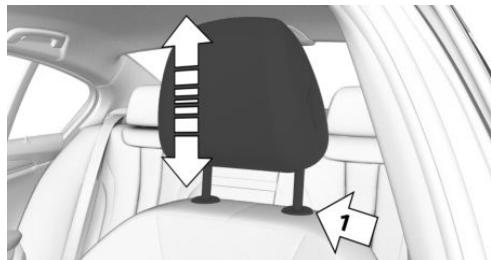
Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraint is moved. There is a danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the movement range is kept clear.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint impair the protective effect of the head restraint in the head and neck area. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

Adjusting the height



- ▷ Downwards: press the button for the lock on the backrest, arrow 1, and push the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push the head restraint upwards.

After adjusting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

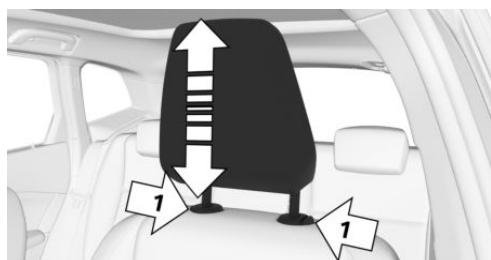
Adjusting the distance

The distance from the back of the head is adjusted by the seat backrest angle.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing the head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.



1. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
2. Press the buttons for the lock on the backrest, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing head restraints

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protective effect as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraint is moved. There is a danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the movement range is kept clear.

⚠ WARNING

Objects on the head restraint impair the protective effect of the head restraint in the head and neck area. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.

- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

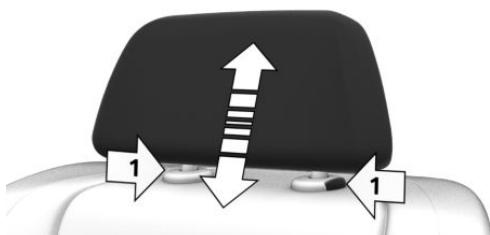
Adjusting the height of the outer head restraints



- ▷ Downwards: press the button for the lock on the backrest, arrow 1, and push the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push the head restraint upwards.

After adjusting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height of the centre head restraint



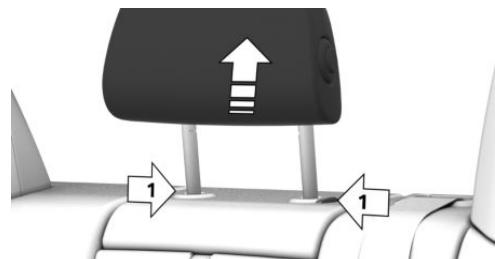
- ▷ Down: press the buttons, arrows 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push the head restraint upwards.

After adjusting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing the head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the respective rear seat backrest.
- To fold down the rear seat backrest, proceed as for enlarging the luggage compartment.
2. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
 3. Press the buttons for the lock on the backrest, arrows 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.



For further information:

To enlarge the luggage compartment, see page [301](#).

Installing head restraints

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Exterior mirrors

General

The exterior mirror adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is loaded automatically.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance from road users behind the vehicle could be incorrectly estimated, for example when changing driving lane. There is a risk of accident. Look over your shoulder to estimate the distance from following traffic.

Overview



Icon Meaning



Fold the exterior mirror in and out.



Adjust the exterior mirrors.



Select left exterior mirror, automatic parking function.



Select right exterior mirror.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

 In the driver's door, press the button for adjusting the exterior mirrors.

The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting the exterior mirror

►  Press the corresponding button in the driver's door to select the left exterior mirror. The LED is illuminated.

►  Press the corresponding button in the driver's door to select the right exterior mirror. The LED is illuminated.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical failure, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in/folding out the exterior mirror

NOTICE

Because of its width, the vehicle could sustain damage in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Before washing, fold the mirrors in manually or with the button.



In the driver's door, press the button for folding the exterior mirrors in and out.

The mirrors can be folded in at vehicle speeds up to approx. 20 km/h/15 mph.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- In narrow streets.

Mirrors which are folded in automatically fold out when the vehicle reaches a speed of approximately 40 km/h/25 mph.

Automatic heating

When required, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is dimmed automatically. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this function.

Automatic parking function

Principle

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downwards. When parking, for example, this gives the driver a better view of the kerb or other objects near the ground.

Activating the automatic parking function

-  Press the button for the exterior mirror on the driver's side on the door. The LED is illuminated.

- Engage selector lever position R.

The automatic parking function is deactivated when the trailer socket is occupied.

Deactivating the automatic parking function

-  On the door, press the button for the exterior mirror on the passenger's side. The LED is illuminated. and the LED of the driver's exterior mirror turns off.

Interior mirror, manual dim



Reduce dazzling effect from the interior mirror by tilting the lever on the interior mirror forward.

Rear-view mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function

General

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

The function is controlled by photocells:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Operating requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not obstruct the zone between the interior mirror and the windscreens.

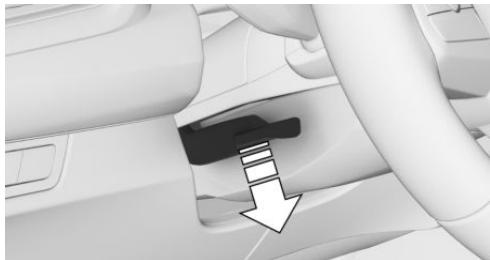
Steering wheel

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel while driving may cause the steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. On the steering column, fold the lever for the locking mechanism all the way down.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and adjust it in the longitudinal direction and height of the seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror adjustment.
- ▷ Lumbar support position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up display.

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

Using the memory function while driving may cause the seat or steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the memory function when the vehicle is at standstill.

⚠️ WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the movement range of the seat is clear.

Overview



The memory buttons are on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.

SET

Press the SET button on the front door. The LED is illuminated.

2. Press the desired Memory button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.



Go to Settings

Press the desired Memory button 1 or 2.

The saved position is retrieved.

The operation is halted when a seat setting switch or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Seat climate control

Various air conditioning functions are available for the seats.

For further information:

Air conditioning control, see page [276](#).

Carrying children safely

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Important considerations

Safety information

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

WARNING

Hot vehicle can have fatal consequences, in particular for children or pets. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not leave anyone unsupervised in the vehicle, especially children or pets.

WARNING

Child restraint systems and their parts can get very hot when exposed to direct sunlight. Contact with hot parts can cause burns. There is a danger of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight; cover the child restraint system if necessary. If required, allow the child restraint system to cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.

Children on the rear seat

General

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Wherever possible, children younger than 12 years old or shorter than 150 cm, 5 ft should be transported only on the rear seats in child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and stature. Children aged 12 years and older must be secured with a seat belt once a suitable child restraint system is no longer an option due to their age, weight or stature.

Safety information

WARNING

Children shorter than 150 cm, 5 ft cannot wear the seat belt correctly without using additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of the seat belts may be restricted or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Children shorter



than 150 cm, 5 ft must be secured in suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General

When using a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

If it is not possible to deactivate the front passenger airbag, do not carry children in rearward-facing child restraint systems on the front passenger seat.

For further information:

Deactivating the front passenger airbag, see page [177](#).

Safety information

DANGER

If triggered, an active front passenger airbag can fatally injure a child in a child restraint system which is mounted facing backwards. There is a danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Fitting child restraint systems

General

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

WARNING

If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, their protective effect may be restricted or may fail completely. A child might not be adequately restrained, for example in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury or danger to life.

Do not continue to use child restraint systems which are damaged or have been subjected to stresses in an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the seat is not set properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have restricted or no stability at all. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the seat backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible and if necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Before installation

Make sure rear seat backrests are locked in place before fitting child restraint systems.

Move rear seats to rearmost position to make it easier to fit child restraint system.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbag

DANGER

If triggered, an active front passenger airbag can fatally injure a child in a child restraint system which is mounted facing backwards. There is a danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Before installing a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated. If the airbag cannot be deactivated, do not install a rearward-facing child restraint system.

For further information:

Deactivating the front passenger airbag, see page [177](#).

Rearward-facing child restraint systems

DANGER

If triggered, an active front passenger airbag can fatally injure a child in a child restraint system which is mounted facing backwards. There is a danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.



Follow the note on the sun visor on the passenger's side.

Never use rearward facing child restraint systems on a seat with an activated front airbag. Use may result in death or serious injury to children.

Seat position and height

After installing a universal child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the highest position. This seat position and height provides the best possible belt routing and protection in the event of an accident.

After installing a universal child restraint system, adjust the inclination of the seat backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is in front of the child seat's seat belt guide, carefully move the front passenger seat forwards until the best possible seat belt guide is achieved.

ISOFIX or i-Size child safety seat fasteners

General

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems.

Suitable ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems

For further information:

Suitable seats for child restraint systems, see page 121.

i-Size child restraint systems

General

i-Size is a legal regulation for child restraint systems which is used for the approval of child restraint systems.

The system represents a further development of the ISOFIX child safety seat fasteners.

ISOFIX child restraint systems can also be attached to anchors with i-Size markings.

Icon	Meaning
	If this icon is seen in the vehicle, the vehicle has also been approved in accordance with i-Size. The icon shows the mounts for the system's lower anchors. The lower anchors meet the European i-Size requirements.
	The corresponding icon shows the top tether eyelet.

ISOFIX child restraint systems

General

ISOFIX is a legal regulation for child restraint systems which is used for the approval of child restraint systems.

ISOFIX child restraint systems can be attached to mountings marked with ISOFIX.

Only certain ISOFIX child restraint systems are permitted for use on the designated seats. The

associated size class and size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

Icon	Meaning
	If this icon is seen in the vehicle, the vehicle has been approved in accordance with the ISOFIX standard. The icon shows the mounts for the system's lower anchors. The lower mountings comply with ISOFIX requirements.
	With universal approval: the corresponding icon shows the top tether attachment point.

Fixtures for lower anchors

General

Note the following when fitting child restraint systems with integrated safety belt to the mounts for the lower anchors:

The total weight of the child and child restraint system must not exceed 33 kg, 73 lbs.

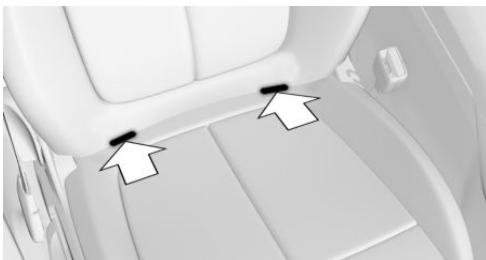
Safety information

WARNING

If the child restraint system lower anchors are not engaged correctly, the protective effect of the child restraint system will be restricted. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure the lower anchor points have engaged correctly and the child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest.

⚠️ WARNING

The mounts for the lower anchors and the attachment points for child restraint systems are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Only attach child restraint systems to the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or the attachment points.

Front passenger seat**Rear seat: position**

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the fixtures for the lower ISO-FIX anchors or i-Size mounting.



The fixtures for the lower anchors are located behind the marked covers. To expose the anchorage points, open the flaps upwards.

Depending on the national-market version, there are mounts for the lower anchors. The mounts are located in the gap between the seat and backrest. Depending on the equipment, the position is marked with an icon.

Use the following child restraint systems:

- ▷ Mounting without symbol: ISOFIX child restraint systems.
- ▷ Mounting and icon: i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Before fitting child restraint systems

Pull the seat belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

Fitting child restraint systems

1. Install child restraint system, see the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system attachment correctly engages in the lower anchor on both sides.

Child restraint systems with upper restraint strap**General**

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the information, operating and safety instructions of the child restraint system manufacturer.



Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly on the child restraint system, the protective effect will be reduced. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper attachment point over sharp edges.

⚠️ WARNING

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system will be restricted or lost. The rear seat backrest may fold forward in certain situations, for example in the event of braking manoeuvre or an accident. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

⚠️ WARNING

The mounts for the lower anchors and the attachment points for child restraint systems are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Only attach child restraint systems to the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or the attachment points.

Rear seat



Depending on the national-market version, there are two or three attachment points for the upper retaining strap of child restraint systems.

Front passenger seat



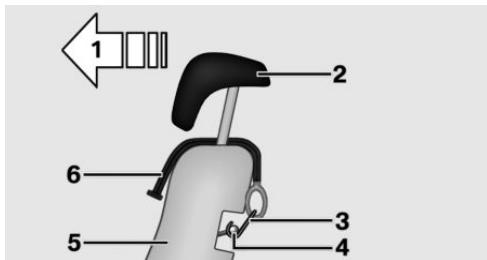
Depending on the national-market version, there is an attachment point and an icon for the upper restraint strap on the rear of the front passenger seat.

Attachment points for upper retaining strap

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the top tether eyelet.

Routing the retaining strap

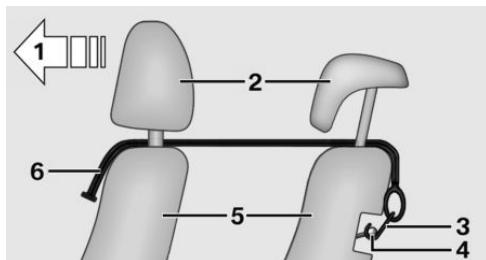
Rear seat



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook of the upper retaining strap
- 4 Attachment point
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

Attachment point on the rear seat

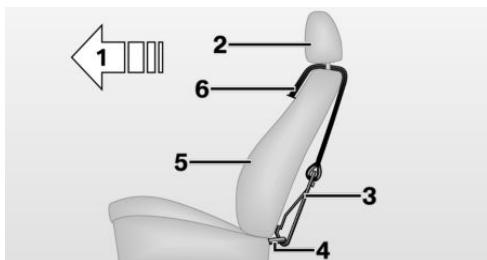


- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook of the upper retaining strap
- 4 Attachment point
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

Front passenger seat

Depending on the equipment, when fitting a child restraint system to the front passenger seat, the upper restraint strap can be attached to the front passenger seat or rear seat.

Attachment point on the front passenger seat



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook of the upper retaining strap
- 4 Attachment point

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

Rear seat

- 1 Raise head restraint if necessary.
- 2 Guide the upper retaining strap between or along both sides of the head restraint mounts to the attachment point.
- 3 Guide the retaining strap between the seat backrest and the luggage compartment cover.
- 4 Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
- 5 Pull the retaining strap taut.

Passenger seat with attachment point

- 1 Raise head restraint if necessary.
- 2 Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint mounts to the attachment point.



3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
4. Pull the retaining strap taut.

When equipped with an integrated head restraint: guide the upper retaining strap over the head restraint.

Passenger seat without attachment point

WARNING

In the event of an accident, persons sitting in the rear can come in contact with the tensioned retaining strap of the child restraint system on the front passenger seat. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not transport persons on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is mounted.

1. Raise head restraint if necessary.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint mounts on the front passenger seat and the rear seat on the passenger's side.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
4. Pull the retaining strap taut.

When equipped with an integrated head restraint: guide the upper retaining strap over the passenger seat head restraint.

Suitable seats for child restraint systems

General

The legal provisions determining which child seat is permitted for which age and body size may vary from country to country. Please comply with the relevant national legal provisions.

Detailed information on the use of child restraint systems can be found in the under Seats for child restraint systems.

Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

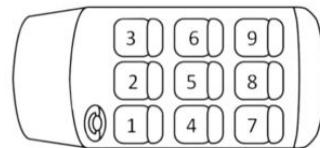
For further information:

Seats for child restraint systems, see page 397.

Seats and child restraint systems

The following section provides information on which child restraint system is suitable for which seat in the vehicle.

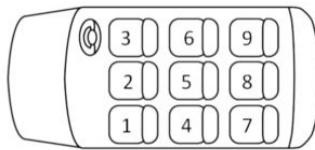
Left-hand drive vehicles, seats:



Seat	Airbag, front passenger	Mounting					
1							
3	ON only forward-facing child restraint system						
	OFF only rearward facing child restraint system	a)					
4, 6 – b)							
5 – c, d)							

- a) Move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the highest position. Then adjust the angle of the backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing.
- b) When using child restraint systems on the rear seats, adjust the longitudinal direction of the front seat if necessary and, if possible and necessary, adjust or remove the head restraint of the rear seat. If necessary, adjust the angle of the rear seat backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing.
- c) Only use the outer seats if the seat belt buckles are easily accessible.
- d) The seat is not suitable for child restraint systems with a support stand.
- e) Depending on the equipment or national-market version.
- f) Move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the lowest position. Then adjust the angle of the backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing. If possible and if necessary, adjust the height of the head restraint or remove it.

Right-hand drive vehicle, seats:



Seat	Airbag, front pas- senger	Mounting				
1	ON only for- ward-facing child re- straint sys- tem		a)		a)	
	OFF only rearward facing child restraint sys- tem		a)		a)	
3						
4, 6 – b)						
					e)	

Seat	Airbag, front passenger	Mounting
-------------	--------------------------------	-----------------

5 – c, d)



- a) Move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the highest position. Then adjust the angle of the backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing.
- b) When using child restraint systems on the rear seats, adjust the longitudinal direction of the front seat if necessary and, if possible and necessary, adjust or remove the head restraint of the rear seat. If necessary, adjust the angle of the rear seat backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing.
- c) Only use the outer seats if the seat belt buckles are easily accessible.
- d) The seat is not suitable for child restraint systems with a support stand.
- e) Depending on the equipment or national-market version.
- f) Move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the lowest position. Then adjust the angle of the backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing. If possible and if necessary, adjust the height of the head restraint or remove it.

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Not suitable for child restraint systems.		Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.
	Suitable for belted child restraint systems in the Universal category.		Suitable for ISOFIX and i-Size child restraint systems.
	Suitable for child restraint systems in the semi-universal category if the vehicle and seat are given in the list of vehicle types from the manufacturer of the child restraint system.		Suitable for child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap.

Recommended child seats

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the following child restraint systems:

- ▷ Maxi-Cosi CabrioFix.
- ▷ Maxi-Cosi EasyFix Base.

- ▷ With i-Size: Römer TRIFIX 2.
- ▷ With ISOFIX: Römer Duo Plus.
- ▷ Römer KIDFIX series.
- ▷ Cybex Solution Z i-Fix.

Securing doors and windows in the rear

General

In certain situations, for example when carrying children, it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows.

Doors

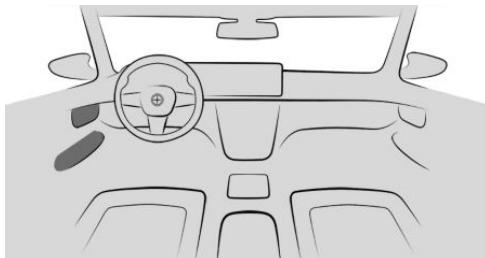


Unlock or lock the safety switches on the rear doors with the integrated key.

Icon	Function
	Child locks are unlocked.
	Child locks are locked.

The respective door can now only be opened from the outside.

Rear safety switch



Press the safety switch for the rear in the driver's door.

Different functions are locked and cannot be operated in the rear, for example the window lifters.

Driving

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Start/Stop button

Principle

Drive-ready state is switched on and off by pressing the Start/Stop button in the centre console.

General

Drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button with the brake applied.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches drive-ready state off again and standby state is switched on.

For further information:

- ▷ Drive-ready state, see page 47.
- ▷ Standby state, see page 46.

Driving off

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Select the drive position.
3. Drive off.

When stopping

Selector lever position D, S, L or R

On uphill gradients, the system prevents the vehicle from rolling against the selected direc-

tion of travel and provides assistance when driving off.

Driving off

To drive off, press the accelerator pedal.

The parking brake is automatically released. Depending on the vehicle load and driving situation or in trailer operation, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

Automatic Start/Stop function

Principle

The Automatic Start/Stop function helps you to save fuel. It does this by switching off the engine when the vehicle stops, for example in congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. For driving off, the engine starts automatically.

General

Each time the engine is started via the Start/Stop button, the Automatic Start/Stop function is switched to standby.

The function is activated at low speeds.

Engine shutdown

Operating requirements

The engine is automatically shut down when stationary when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Without mild hybrid technology:



Brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or the vehicle is kept stationary by Automatic Hold.

- ▷ Driver's seat belt fastened or driver's door closed.

Manual engine shutdown

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle came to a stop, it can be switched off manually:

- ▷ Rapidly press the brake pedal from the current position.
- ▷ Engage selector lever in position P.

If all the operating requirements have been met, the engine is stopped.

Air conditioning when the vehicle is parked

The amount of air of the air conditioning is reduced when the engine is not running.

Display in the instrument cluster



The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Automatic Start/Stop function is ready for automatic engine start.

Functional limitations

The engine is not shut down automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ On a steep downhill gradient.
- ▷ The brake pedal has not been pressed hard enough.
- ▷ When the outside temperature is high and the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- ▷ Interior is not heated or cooled to the desired temperature.
- ▷ Where there is a risk of condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.

- ▷ Engine or other parts are not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Engine cooling is required.
- ▷ Sharp steering wheel angle or steering operation.
- ▷ Vehicle battery charge state very low.
- ▷ At high altitudes.
- ▷ The bonnet is unlocked.
- ▷ Hill Descent Control is activated.
- ▷ Park Assist is activated.
- ▷ For stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever position is in N, S, L or R.
- ▷ After reversing.
- ▷ When using fuel with high ethanol content.

Engine start

Operating requirements

For driving off, the engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ With Automatic Hold activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

Accelerate as usual after starting the engine.

Safety function

After an automatic shut down, the engine will not restart automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ Driver's seat belt unfastened and driver's door open.

- ▷ Bonnet has been unlocked.

Several indicator lights illuminate for various lengths of time.

The engine can only be started using the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if you do not want to drive off, the engine restarts automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of excessive warming of the interior when the air conditioning function is turned on.
- ▷ In case of excessive cooling of the interior when the heating is turned on.
- ▷ Where there is a risk of condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- ▷ Without mild hybrid technology:
In case of a steering operation.
- ▷ When changing the selector lever position from D or P.
- ▷ In case of seriously discharged vehicle battery.
- ▷ When starting an oil level measurement.

Manually deactivating the system

Principle

The engine is not switched off automatically.

During an automatic engine shutdown, the engine is started.

Without mild hybrid technology: via iDrive

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / / /
2. Select the desired setting.

Via selector lever position or drive mode

The Automatic Start/Stop function is deactivated by the following:

- ▷ if the selector lever is in position S.
- ▷ if the selector lever is in position L.
- ▷ In drive mode "SPORT".

Parking the vehicle during automatic engine shutdown

During an automatic engine shutdown, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example in order to exit it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
 - ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
 - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
 - ▷ Selector lever position P is automatically engaged.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations the Automatic Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for example if the absence of the driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Automatic Start/Stop function no longer shuts down the engine automatically. A Check Control message is shown. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Steptronic transmission

Principle

The Steptronic transmission is the vehicle's automatic transmission. With the shift paddle, there is the option of changing gear manually if required.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away by, for example, applying the parking brake.

the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the driver's door is opened and the brake is not depressed.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is engaged and the parking brake is engaged. The vehicle could otherwise start to move.

For further information:

Parking brake, see page [136](#).

Selector lever positions

D Drive position

In selector lever position D, all gears for forward travel are shifted automatically.

R reverse gear

Engage selector lever position R for reversing. Engage reverse gear only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle can be pushed or can roll without drivetrain, for example in car washes.

P Park

General

In selector lever position P, the drive is blocked by the transmission, for example when parking the vehicle.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged in situations such as the following:

- ▷ After switching off the drive-ready state when selector lever position R, D, S or L is engaged.
- ▷ After switching off the standby state when selector lever position N is engaged.
- ▷ While the vehicle is at a standstill and selector lever position D, S, L or R is engaged,

Engaging selector lever positions

General

Apply the brake until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when drive position or reverse gear is selected.

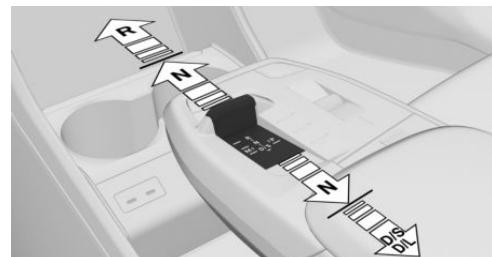
Operating requirements

The selector lever will only move from position P to another selector lever position if drive-ready state is switched on and the brake is pressed.

It may not be possible to move out of selector lever position P until all technical conditions are met.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

1. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
2. To select a selector lever position, tap or pull the selector lever into the desired direction, past a resistance point if necessary. The selector lever returns to the centre position when released.



Engaging selector lever position P



(P) To engage selector lever position P, press the button for the parking brake in the centre console.

The transmission lock is engaged and the parking brake is engaged.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General

In some situations, the vehicle may need to roll a short distance without drivetrain, for example in a conveyor car wash, or when being pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

⚠ NOTICE

The selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are locked. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state if the vehicle is to roll, e.g. in conveyor car washes.

To engage selector lever position N, observe the following steps:

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing the brake.
2. Apply the brake.
3. Engage selector lever position N.
4. Switch off the drive-ready state.

Standby state then remains switched on and a Check Control message is shown.

The vehicle can now roll.

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a fault, it may not be possible to change the selector lever position.

Unlock the parking lock electronically if necessary.

For further information:

Unlocking the parking lock electronically, see page [131](#).

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum performance.

Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the regular full-throttle position; some resistance will be felt.

Without shift paddles: LOW mode

Principle

LOW mode is recommended if you wish to increase the engine's braking effect, for example on a steep downhill gradient.

General

In the LOW mode, the transmission continues to change gear automatically, but generally in lower drive positions than in selector lever position D.

The LOW mode can therefore also be used to accelerate faster.



Activate LOW mode



To activate LOW mode, pull the selector lever from selector lever position D to D/L.

The gear selected is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example L1.

The LOW mode of the transmission is activated.

Activating the Sport programme



To activate the Sport programme, pull the selector lever from selector lever position D to D/S.

The gear selected is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example S1.

The Sport programme of the transmission is activated.

End LOW mode

Pull the selector lever to D/L to exit the LOW mode.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

With shift paddles: Sport programme S

Principle

In the Sport programme, the gear shift points and gear shift times are configured for more sporty driving. For example, the transmission shifts up later and the gearshift times are shorter.

Ending Sport programme

To end the Sport programme, move the selector lever to D/S.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Unlocking the parking lock electronically

General

Unlock the transmission lock electronically, e.g. to manoeuvre the vehicle out of a danger area in the event of a fault.

Before unlocking the parking lock, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, for example with a chock.

Engaging selector lever position N

To engage selector lever position N, observe the following steps:

1. Press the Start/Stop button three times quickly without pressing the brake.
2. Apply the brake.
3. Press the selector lever to position N after 30 seconds.
A corresponding Check Control message is shown.
Position N is displayed on the selector lever.
4. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of danger and then secure it against rolling away.

Shift paddles

Principle

The shift paddles on the steering wheel enable the gears to be changed manually.

General

Gearshift

Gear shifting is only carried out at the appropriate rotational speed and vehicle speed.

Even in manual mode, the transmission switches automatically in certain situations, e.g. when speed limits are reached.

Temporary manual mode

In selector lever position D, pulling a shift paddle causes the system to switch to manual mode temporarily.

The gear selected is also displayed in the instrument cluster, for example D1.

The transmission reverts to automatic mode from manual mode after a certain period of time of moderate driving without acceleration or gear shifts using the shift paddles.

It is possible to change to automatic mode:

- ▶ Pull and hold the right shift paddle until D is shown in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ While pulling and holding the right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Permanent manual mode

In Sport programme S, pulling a shift paddle causes the system to switch permanently to manual mode M.

The gear selected is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example M1.

It is possible to change to automatic mode:

- ▶ Pull and hold the right shift paddle until S is shown in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ While pulling and holding the right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.
- ▶ Pull the selector lever to D/S.

If M2 is set manually while the vehicle is stationary, the transmission will no longer shift back to M1. These shift characteristics are retained until M1 is engaged manually or manual mode M is exited.

Shifting gears



- ▶ To shift up: pull the right shift paddle.
- ▶ To shift down: pull the left shift paddle.

The gear selected appears briefly in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear currently in use.



Advanced mode

General

Depending on the equipment, the Steptronic transmission offers an advanced mode with adapted shift characteristics.

- ▷ Automatic downshift to the lowest possible gear.
If the left shift paddle is pulled and held, the Steptronic transmission automatically shifts down to the lowest possible gear.
- ▷ Avoid automatic upshifting in manual mode.
The Steptronic transmission does not shift up automatically in manual mode when speed limits are reached.
- ▷ There is no downshift for kickdown.

Activating advanced mode

Advanced mode is active in the following situation, for example:

- ▷ Transmission in manual mode.
- ▷ "SPORT PLUS": Setting under Drive in Sport Mode in My Modes.

Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

Principle

When the ambient conditions are dry, Launch Control permits optimised acceleration on a road surface that offers plenty of grip.

General

Using Launch Control causes premature component wear, as this feature subjects the vehicle to very high stresses and loads.

When driving off with Launch Control, do not turn the steering wheel.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

For further information:

Running in, see page 306.

Operating requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted journey of at least 10 km, 6 miles.

Start up with Launch Control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
 2. To activate drive mode: "SPORT".
 3. "SPORT PLUS": Activating the setting for driving dynamics:
 4. Press the brake firmly with the left foot.
 5. Engage the drive position for driving forwards.
 6. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance at the full-throttle position and hold, kickdown.
- A destination flag is shown in the instrument cluster.
7. The engine speed for pulling away is adjusted. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
 8. Release the brake within 3 seconds of the destination flag illuminating.

The vehicle accelerates.

Upshifts are automatic as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Using again during a journey

Once Launch Control has been used, the transmission requires a short time to cool down before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adapts to the ambient conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, re-activate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

Sport Boost function

Principle

The Sport Boost function can be used for an impending acceleration process, for example.

The function is operated with the shift paddles on the steering wheel.

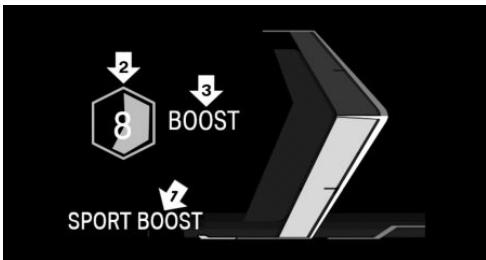
The system prepares the vehicle.

Overview



The shift paddles are located on the steering wheel.

Display in the instrument cluster



- ▷ Arrow 1: the SPORT BOOST function is active.
- ▷ Arrow 2: countdown, the SPORT BOOST function is active.
- ▷ Arrow 3: the SPORT BOOST function is used for maximum acceleration.

Using the function

1. SPORT BOOST: Pull and hold the left shift paddle until this display appears, arrow 1.
 - ▷ The function is active.
 - ▷ A countdown is displayed in the instrument cluster, arrow 2.
2. Before the countdown changes to 0, press the accelerator pedal.
 - ▷ The vehicle accelerates.
 - ▷ BOOST: This display is shown in the instrument cluster, arrow 3.

The countdown can be restarted, e.g. if the function cannot be used immediately.

To restart the countdown, pull and hold the left shift paddle again until the countdown is reset.

Stopping the function

The SPORT BOOST function is automatically interrupted if the countdown to 0 has elapsed or the function was used in acceleration.

Deactivating the function

SPORT BOOST: pull and hold the right shift paddle until this display goes out.



My Modes

Principle

My Modes influence the handling of the vehicle and the customisation of the overall experience in the interior.

The vehicle can be adapted depending on the situation using the various My Modes.

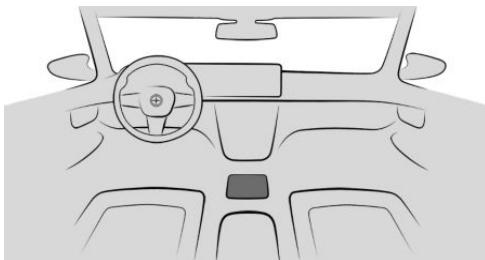
General

Depending on the equipment, the following systems are affected, for example:

- ▷ Drivetrain.
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Suspension.
- ▷ Cruise Control.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Comfort functions in the vehicle interior.
- ▷ Drive sound.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



The button for My Modes is located in the centre console.

Displays in the instrument cluster



If applicable, the selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

My Modes in detail

General

Different My Modes are available depending on the equipment.

My Modes that influence the driving characteristics are also referred to as drive mode.

Personal Mode

Drive mode for comfort oriented settings.

Sport Mode

Drive mode for increased agility of the vehicle.

Individual settings can be entered, for example, for driving dynamics, suspension and drivetrain.

"SPORT PLUS": with this setting under driving dynamics, the Dynamic Stability Control and thereby the driving stability will be restricted.

For further information:

- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control, see page [214](#).
- ▷ Setting for increased driving dynamics, see page [215](#).

Efficient mode

Drive mode for a consumption optimised setting with predictive display.

Expressive Mode

Mode for impressive visualisation and vibrant lighting in the vehicle interior.

Driving characteristics are set in a comfort-orientated manner.

Relax Mode

Mode for relaxed driving in a pleasant environment.

Driving characteristics are set in a comfort-orientated manner.

Selecting My Mode



1. Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.
- 2.
3. Select the desired mode.

Setting My Modes

Some modes can be set individually.



1. Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.
2. Select mode.
- 3.
4. Select the desired settings.

Changing start mode

Some modes can be set as start mode.

The set start mode is active when drive-ready state is switched on.



1. Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.
2. Select mode.
- 3.
- 4.

My Modes Design

The specific illustrations of a mode can be displayed in the control display under My Modes Design.



1. Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.

2.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.



- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

 To brake the vehicle, press and hold the button for the parking brake in the centre console. The vehicle brakes hard as long as the button is pressed.

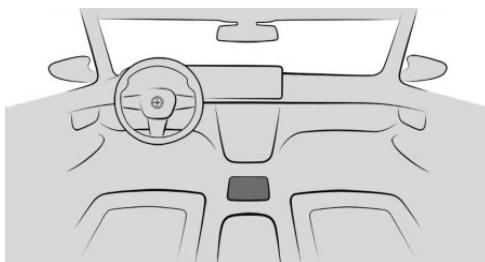
 The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated red, a signal sounds and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is shown.

The parking brake is engaged and the transmission lock is set when the vehicle is stationary.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 The button for the parking brake is located in the centre console.

Applying the parking brake

When the vehicle is stationary

 To apply the parking brake, press the button for the parking brake in the centre console.

The LED is illuminated.

 The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated red.

The parking brake is applied and transmission lock is engaged.

While driving

The parking brake can be used as an emergency braking function while driving:

Engaging the parking brake automatically

In some situations, the parking brake is engaged automatically, for example, by Automatic Hold.

Additionally, the system can be set to automatically engaging the parking brake when the drive-ready state is switched off.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / / /
2. Select the desired setting.

In selector lever position N, the parking brake will not be engaged automatically.

Release the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

Follow these steps to manually release the parking brake:

1. Switch on the drive-ready state.
2.  In the centre console, press the button for the parking brake while pressing the brake pedal.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

The transmission lock remains engaged until a drive position is selected.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically released on when you drive off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

Using the parking brake via iDrive

The parking brake can also be engaged or disengaged via iDrive. Additionally, further information is displayed.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / / /
2. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

If a parking brake has failed or malfunctioned, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away before leaving the vehicle.

A Check Control message is shown.

After getting out, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, for example with a chock.

After an open circuit

To restore the operability of the parking brake after a power failure, an initialisation may be required.

1. Switch on standby state.



2. Press the button for the parking brake in the centre console.



3. Press the parking brake button again after 2 seconds.

The Check Control messages for the parking brake go out.

Possible functional noises are normal.



The indicator light indicates that the parking brake is operational again.

Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, for example in stop-and-go traffic.

When a drive position is engaged, the vehicle is automatically held in place at standstill.

On upward gradients, it prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

General

The parking brake is released automatically when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ If the driver's door is open for more than one second and no pedal is pressed during this time.
- ▷ If the moving vehicle is brought to a standstill with the parking brake.

In selector lever position N, Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.



WARNING

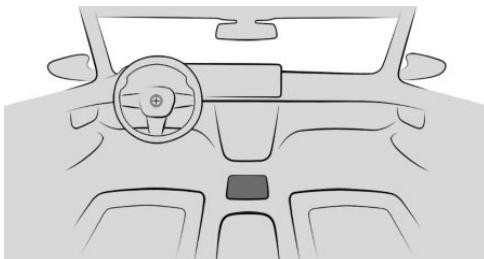
Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



The button for Automatic Hold is located in the centre console.

Activate Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.

2.  Press the button for Automatic Hold in the centre console.

The LED is illuminated.

 The indicator light illuminates green.
Automatic Hold is activated.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last selected setting is retained.

Automatic Hold holds the vehicle

Automatic Hold is activated and the driver's door is closed.



Once the vehicle has stopped, it is automatically secured from rolling away once the indicator light lights up green.

Driving off

To drive off, press the accelerator pedal.

The brake is released automatically and the parking brake indicator light is extinguished.

Automatic parking brake application

The parking brake is applied automatically if drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited while Automatic Hold is holding the vehicle.



The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not applied automatically if drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was rolling to a stop. Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated in this case.

Deactivate Automatic Hold

 Press the button for Automatic Hold in the centre console.

The LED is extinguished.

 The indicator light extinguishes.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

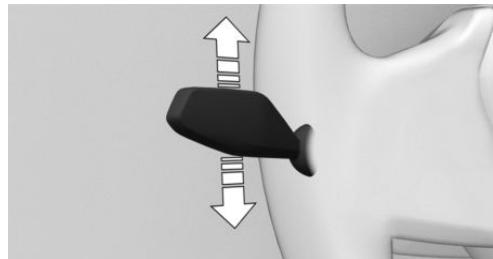
If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also depress the brake when deactivating.

Turn indicators

Turn indicator in exterior mirror

To ensure that the indicator lamps in the exterior mirrors can be seen, do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving and while the turn indicators or hazard warning lights are operating.

Indicating



Press the turn indicator lever beyond the resistance point.

One-touch signalling

Briefly tap the turn indicator lever up or down.

The duration of the one-touch signalling can be set.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / If applicable "Additional settings" / "One-touch indicator"
2. Select the desired setting.

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the turn indicator lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlight, headlight flasher

Press the turn indicator lever forwards or pull it back.



- ▷ High-beam headlight on, arrow 1.
The high-beam headlight is illuminated when the low-beam headlight is switched on.
- ▷ High-beam headlight off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the high-beam headlight is switched on.

Wiper system

Safety information

WARNING

If the windscreen wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the windscreen wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.



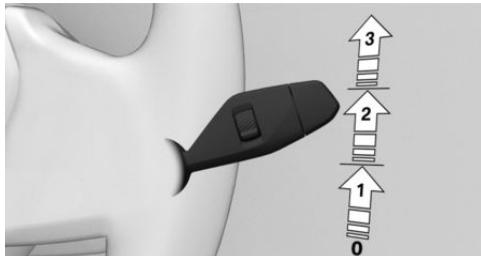
⚠ NOTICE

The wiper blades can wear out or become damaged prematurely when wiping on dry glass for longer periods of time. The wiper motor may overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the wipers when the glass is dry.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreens, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreens before switching on the windscreens wipers.

Switching on the wiper system



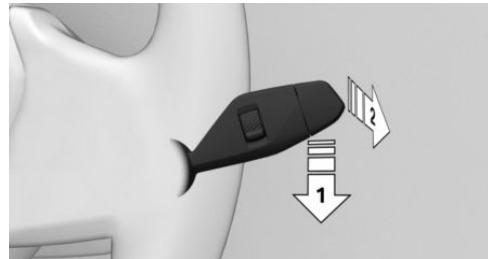
Press the wiper lever upwards to the desired position.

- ▷ Rest position of the windscreens wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to intermittent operation.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.
- When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.

If a journey is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when the journey is resumed,

the windscreens wipers continue operating at the previous level.

Switching off the wiper system and flick wiping



Press the wiper lever downwards or forwards.

- ▷ To switch off: press the wiper lever downwards, arrow 1, until position 0 is reached.
- ▷ To flick wipe: press the wiper lever downwards from position 0, arrow 1, and press the lever forwards from position 0 or position 1, arrow 2.

The wiper lever returns to position 0 when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the rain intensity.

General

The sensor is mounted on the windscreens, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

In car washes, the wipers may inadvertently start moving if the rain sensor is activated. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating the rain sensor



Press the wiper lever upwards once from position 0, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

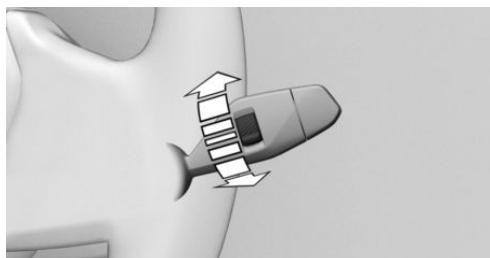
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

If there is frost, wiping may not start.

Deactivating the rain sensor

Press the wiper lever back to position 0.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

- ▶ Upwards: high sensitivity of the rain sensor.
- ▶ Downwards: low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Window washer system

Safety information

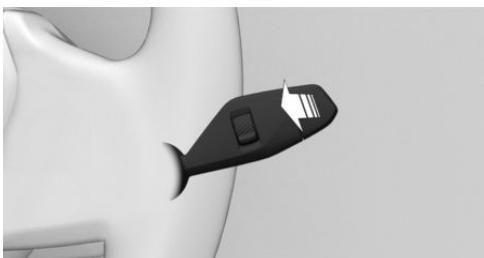
⚠ WARNING

At low temperatures, the washer fluid can freeze onto the windscreens and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems if there is no possibility of the washer fluid freezing. Use antifreeze additive if required.

⚠ NOTICE

If the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot operate as intended. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the washer system with the washer fluid reservoir empty.

Cleaning the windscreens



Pull the wiper lever.

The washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the windscreens wipers are turned on briefly.

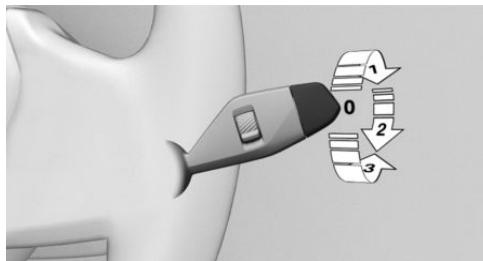


Windscreen washer jets

The windscreen washer jets are automatically heated when standby state is switched on.

Rear wiper

Switching on rear wiper



Turn the outer switch on the wiper lever upwards.

- ▷ Rest position of the windscreen wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent operation, arrow 1. Engaging reverse gear activates continuous operation.

Cleaning the rear window

Turn the outer switch on the wiper lever in the desired direction.

- ▷ In rest position: turn the switch downwards, arrow 3. The switch returns to the rest position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent operation: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch returns to the intermittent position when released.

The function is deactivated if the washer fluid filling level in the reservoir is low.

Windscreen wipers fold-out position

Principle

The wipers can be folded out from the windscreen in the fold-out position. This is necessary for example when replacing the wiper

blades or to keep them away from the windscreen when there is frost.

Safety information

WARNING

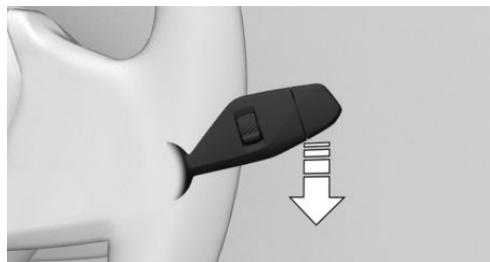
If the windscreen wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the windscreen wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the windscreen wipers.

Folding out the windscreen wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press the wiper lever down and hold until the windscreen wipers stop in an approximately vertical position.



3. Lift the windscreen wipers completely away from the windscreen.



Folding down the windscreen wipers

1. Fold the windscreen wipers fully down onto the windscreen.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

The windscreen wipers move back to the rest position and are operational once again.



Displays

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

- ▷ Vehicle status.
- ▷ Trip data.

Configuring the display

In the Live Vehicle menu, it is possible to choose between an adaptive display and static content.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Content"
2. Select the desired setting.

Live Vehicle

Principle

Live Vehicle is a virtual representation of your own vehicle with different information, e.g. vehicle status or energy flow indicators.

General

Depending on the driving situation, suitable information is shown on the control display. Fault statuses are not taken into account.

Adaptive content

The following is displayed in alternating order and, if applicable, depending on the selected drive mode:

- ▷ Vehicle status, see page [162](#).
- ▷ Current driving condition, see page [162](#).
- ▷ Sport displays, see page [163](#).
- ▷ Efficiency Coach, see page [324](#).
- ▷ Trip data, see page [159](#).

Static content

The following content can be displayed continuously on the control display regardless of the driving situation and set drive mode.

BMW Head-up display

Principle

The Head-up display projects important information on the windscreen in the driver's field of view, for example, the speed. Information can be perceived without looking away from the road.

The buttons on the steering wheel can be used to configure various views for the Head-up display. Further settings are possible on the control display, for example, brightness or height.

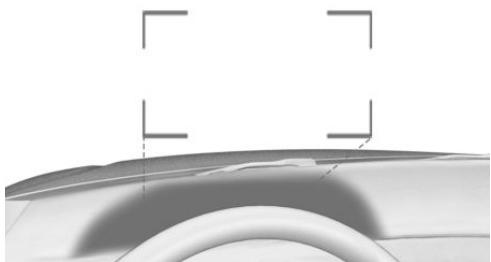
General

Follow the instructions on cleaning the head-up display in the Care chapter.

For further information:

Care of special parts, see page [388](#).

Overview



The head-up display displays are projected onto the windscreens by a protective glass. The protective glass is located between the steering wheel and the windscreens.

Displayable information

The following information is displayed in the Head-up display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: sport displays.
- ▷ Shift Lights.
- ▷ Efficiency Coach.
- ▷ Lists and messages.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only shown briefly when needed.

Configuring a view

The views for the Head-up display can be set independently of the display in the instrument cluster, for example, for a reduced view.

-  1. Press the settings button on the steering wheel.

A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.

2. "HEAD-UP"

Select the menu by tilting the knurled wheel on the steering wheel as necessary.

3. Select the required setting using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

Turning the Head-up display on/off

To switch the Head-up Display on or off via iDrive, select the following menu path: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Displays" / "Head-up display" / "Head-up display"

Settings

Individual settings can be entered for the Head-up display, for example for the height, brightness or illustration. In addition, individual displays in the Head-up display can be set up separately, for instance information on driver assistance.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Displays" / "Head-up display"
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on the equipment: the height of the Head-up display can be saved with the memory function.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the information shown on the Head-up display can be affected by the following:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Objects on the protective glass of the head-up display.
- ▷ Dust or dirt on the protective glass of the head-up display.
- ▷ Dirt on the inside or outside of the windscreen.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Adverse lighting conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the default settings checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Special windscreen

The windscreen is an integral part of the system.

The shape and coating of the special windscreen enable the system to function.

In the event of damage, have the special windscreen replaced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Check Control

Principle

Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up display. An acoustic signal may also be output and a text message shown on the control display.

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approximately 20 seconds and remain stored. The stored Check Control messages can be displayed on the control display. Urgent Check Control messages are continuously displayed and can be temporarily hidden.

Hiding Check Control messages

Permanently displayed Check Control messages may be temporarily hidden. After approx. 8 seconds, these messages are automatically displayed again.

An arrow symbol next to the Check Control message indicates whether the Check Control message can be hidden.



To hide Check Control messages, tilt the knurled wheel on the steering wheel to the left.

Displaying saved Check Control messages

Additional information, for example the cause of the fault and any action required, can be called up via Check Control.

It is possible to select additional assistance depending on the Check Control message.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Check Control"
2. Select the required text message.
3. Select the desired setting.

Display

Text messages and an icon in the instrument cluster explain what a Check Control message means and what the indicator and warning lights signify.

With urgent text messages, an additional instruction will be automatically displayed on the control display.



At least one Check Control message is displayed or saved.

If a number of malfunctions have occurred at the same time, the messages are displayed in succession.

Certain messages displayed when driving are displayed again when drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Principle

Indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster show the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate any malfunctions in monitored systems.

Indicator and warning lights can illuminate in various combinations and colours.

When switching on drive-ready state, the functionality of some indicator lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

Red lights

Seat belt warning



Seat belt is not buckled.

For further information:

Seat belt warning, see page [106](#).

Airbag system



Warning light is illuminated briefly: this indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when the vehicle is switched on.

The warning light is illuminated continuously: there is a malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Airbags, see page [175](#).

Parking brake



The parking brake is engaged.

For further information:

Parking brake, see page [136](#).

Brake system



The brake linings are worn or there is a fault in the brake system.

The braking force assistance may be faulty. A higher pedal force may be required during braking.

Have the system checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Emergency Stop Assistant



The Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered.

For further information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, see page [204](#).

Risk of collision



The warning light is illuminated or flashes in conjunction with an acoustic signal if a collision is imminent.

For further information:

Front-collision warning, see page [180](#).

Pedestrian warning



The warning light is illuminated: risk of collision with a person has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: collision with a person is imminent. Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

For further information:

Warning function for pedestrians, see page [186](#).

Collision Warning



Warning light is illuminated: risk of collision, for example with a vehicle. Increased awareness is required.



Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: collision with a vehicle is imminent. Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

For further information:

Warning function in the rear-end collision situation, see page [184](#).

Crossroads Warning: vehicle detected from the right



The warning light is illuminated: risk of collision with a crossing vehicle from the right has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

The warning light flashes and a signal sounds: collision with a crossing vehicle is imminent. Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

For further information:

Warning function at road junctions, see page [187](#).

Crossroads Warning: vehicle detected from left



The warning light is illuminated: risk of collision with a crossing vehicle from the left has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

The warning light flashes and a signal sounds: collision with a crossing vehicle is imminent. Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

For further information:

Warning function at road junctions, see page [187](#).

Distance control



Warning light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: brake and perform avoidance manoeuvre, if necessary.

For further information:

Distance control, see page [229](#).

Assisted Driving Mode



The warning light flashes and a signal sounds:

The system is switching off or an interruption of the system is imminent.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Assisted Driving Mode: hands not on the steering wheel



The warning light is illuminated and a signal sounds:

Hands are not holding the steering wheel. A system interruption is imminent.

The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable.

The system may possibly not perform any supporting steering wheel movements.

Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Braking System



There is a malfunction or the system is faulty. The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is not available.

Ease of steering may be restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS), see page [214](#).

Brake system

 The brake linings are worn or there is a fault in the brake system.

Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Assisted Driving Mode

 The warning light is illuminated and a signal sounds: a system interruption is imminent.

The warning light flashes: a lane boundary has been crossed.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Assisted Driving Mode: hands not on the steering wheel

 Steering wheel icon is illuminated yellow:

Hands are not holding the steering wheel. System remains active.

Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Front-collision warning restricted or failed

 Depending on the equipment and national-market version: functional limitation detected, e.g. due to system limitations of the camera or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.

For further information:

Front-collision warning, see page [180](#).

Dynamic Stability Control

 Warning light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is being stabilised. Reduce speed and adjust the driving style to the road conditions.

Warning light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is initialising. The driving stabilisation is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light is continuously illuminated, have the system checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Dynamic Stability Control, see page [214](#).

Dynamic Stability Control deactivated or increased driving dynamics activated



Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or increased driving dynamics is activated.

For further information:

- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control, see page [214](#).
- ▷ Setting for increased driving dynamics, see page [215](#).

Flat tyre monitor



The warning light is illuminated: the flat tyre monitor reports a flat tyre or a tyre pressure loss.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.

For further information:

Flat Tyre Monitor, see page [346](#).

Tyre Pressure Monitor



The warning light is illuminated: the Tyre Pressure Monitor reports a flat



tyre or a tyre pressure loss. Note the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: the system is unable to detect flat tyres or tyre pressure losses.

- ▷ Fault due to systems or devices with the same radio frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▷ For tyres with special approval: the Tyre Pressure Monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Wheel without wheel electronics is fitted: if necessary have it checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page [340](#).

Steering system



The steering system may be faulty.

Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Engine warning light



Engine malfunction.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Socket for on-board diagnosis, see page [368](#).

Lane Departure Warning



Depending on equipment and national-market version:

The warning light is illuminated: functional limitation detected, for example, due to low sun or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.

The warning light flashes: a warning is issued actively. The system does not carry out any steering interventions.

For further information:

Lane Departure Warning, see page [191](#).

Lane change warning restricted or failed



Depending on equipment and national-market version:

Functional limitation detected, e.g. due to dirty radar sensors or the system has failed. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.

For further information:

Lane Change Warning, see page [195](#).

Rear fog light



Rear fog light is switched on.

For further information:

Rear fog light, see page [171](#).

Green lights

Turn indicators



The turn indicator is switched on.

If the indicator light flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn indicator bulb has failed.

For further information:

Turn indicators, see page [140](#).

Side lights

 The side lights are switched on.

For further information:

Side light, low-beam headlight, see page 166.

Low-beam headlight

 The low-beam headlight is switched on.

For further information:

Side light, low-beam headlight, see page 166.

High-beam Assistant

 Low-beam headlight is switched on and the High-beam Assistant is activated.

The high-beam headlight is switched on and off automatically according to traffic situation.

For further information:

High-beam Assistant, see page 170.

Lane Departure Warning

 Depending on equipment and national-market version:

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is activated. A lane marking has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle. The system is ready to intervene and issue warnings.

The system can perform steering interventions.

Indicator light flashes: the system actively issues a warning. If necessary, the system performs a steering intervention.

For further information:

Lane Departure Warning, see page 191.

Lane Change Warning



Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: the system is switched on. Warnings are issued within the system limits and, if necessary, steering interventions are carried out.

For further information:

Lane Change Warning, see page 195.

Automatic Hold: vehicle is held automatically



Automatic Hold is ready to operate. The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

For further information:

Automatic Hold, see page 138.

Automatic Hold: vehicle secured against rolling away



The vehicle is automatically secured against rolling away after stopping.

For further information:

Automatic Hold, see page 138.

Manual Speed Limiter



Indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on.

Indicator light flashes: set speed limit is exceeded.

For further information:

Manual Speed Limiter, see page 224.

Cruise Control



The system is active.

For further information:

Cruise Control, see page 226.



Distance control



Indicator light illuminates: system has detected a vehicle ahead. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected.

Indicator light flashing: vehicle in front has driven off.

For further information:

Distance control, see page [229](#).

Speed Limit Assist



The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been adopted, a green tick is displayed.

For further information:

Speed Limit Assist, see page [243](#).

Assisted Driving Mode



The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in driving lane.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Lane Change Assistant: lane change in progress



Green arrow symbol for lane-changing: the system is carrying out a lane change.

For further information:

Lane Change Assistant, see page [240](#).

Lane Change Assistant Lane: lane change not possible



Grey line for lane boundary on the appropriate side: the system has detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

For further information:

Lane Change Assistant, see page [240](#).

Assisted Driving Mode Plus



The system is active.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see page [241](#).

Blue lights

High-beam headlight



The high-beam headlight has been switched on.

For further information:

High-beam headlight, see page [140](#).

High-beam Assistant



High-beam headlight was switched on by High-beam Assistant.

For further information:

High-beam Assistant, see page [170](#).

Grey lights

Manual Speed Limiter



The system is interrupted.

For further information:

Manual Speed Limiter, see page [224](#).

Distance control



Indicator light flashes: the requirements for operation of the system are no longer being met. The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

For further information:

Distance control, see page [229](#).

Assisted Driving Mode

 System is on standby and does not make any steering wheel movement.
The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.
For further information:
Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Front-collision warning deactivated

 Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: the system is deactivated.
For further information:
Front-collision warning, see page [180](#).

Lane Departure Warning

 Depending on equipment and national-market version:
The warning light is illuminated: the system is automatically deactivated, for example, because DSC OFF is activated.
The warning light flashes: a warning is issued actively. The system does not carry out any steering interventions.
For further information:
Lane Departure Warning, see page [191](#).

Lane change warning restricted

 Depending on equipment and national-market version:
The system is activated. No warnings are issued temporarily. At least one functional requirement has not been met, for example the minimum speed has not been reached.
For further information:
Lane Change Warning, see page [195](#).

Lane Change Warning deactivated

 Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: the system is deactivated.
For further information:
Lane Change Warning, see page [195](#).

White lights

Cruise Control with distance control

 No display of distance control as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
For further information:
Distance control, see page [229](#).

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

 The system can be activated.
For further information:
Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see page [241](#).

Selection lists

Principle

The instrument cluster or the Head-up display can show lists for certain functions and can be used for operation where applicable.

- ▷ Entertainment source.
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Recent calls list.

If applicable, the relevant menu is opened on the control display.

Displaying and using the list

The selection lists can be displayed and operated using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Operating Function elements



Changing the entertainment source.

Press the button again to close the list currently displayed.



To display the last calls list.



Turn the knurled wheel: display the list of the currently selected entertainment source or scroll up or down in the list.

Tilt the knurled wheel in the corresponding direction: move the selection to the left or right.

Press the knurled wheel: confirm the selection.

3. Turn the knurled wheel to select a radio station.
4. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the selected radio station.

Example: changing the entertainment source



1. Press the button for entertainment sources.



2. Turn the knurled wheel to select an entertainment source.

3. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the selected entertainment source.

Optimum shift indicator

Principle

The optimum shift indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. The use of the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General

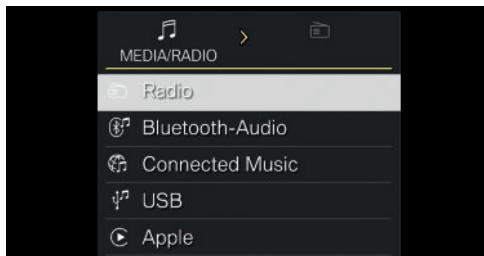
Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the optimum shift indicator is active in manual mode M.

Displays

Information on upshifting, downshifting or the engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster.

For vehicles without optimum shift indicator, the gear engaged is shown.

Display



The selection lists, for example, entertainment sources, are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Example: selecting a radio station

1. Press the button for entertainment sources.



2. To switch to the list of radio stations, tilt the knurled wheel to the right.

Example Description**M3**

In permanent manual mode M:
Optimal gear is engaged.

D3

With shift paddles: temporary
manual mode.

S3

With shift paddles: Sport pro-
gramme.

L3

Without shift paddles: LOW mode.

2•3

Switching instruction.

For further information:

Shift paddles, see page [132](#)

Power display

Principle

The power display indicates the currently drawn drive power as a percentage.

Activating/deactivating power display

Depending on the selected drive mode or the individually configured layout, the power display or revolution counter is displayed.

Display



Needle in the arrow 1 area: display of the energy recuperation achieved, for example during deceleration, CHARGE.

Needle in the area of arrow 2: drive power as a percentage, POWER.

Reduced drive power

The available drive power may be reduced due to certain factors. The power display is automatically adjusted as necessary.

In addition, icons on the power display and in the revolution counter indicate if the drive power has been reduced.

Icon	Description
	Blue icon: cold drive system.
	White icon: increased drive system temperature, for example due to long-lasting or high power requirements when driving uphill.
	Depending on equipment and national-market version: Restriction of drive power set by BMW Digital Key.
	System-related functional limitation. A Check Control message will be shown as necessary.



Revolution counter

General

It is vital to avoid rotational speeds in the red warning zone. In this zone, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Activating/deactivating the revolution counter

The revolution counter is displayed depending on the selected drive mode or the individually configured layout.

The display of the revolution counter is variable and depends on the selected drive mode.

Reduced speed range

The available speed range may be reduced due certain factors, example a cold drivetrain. The revolution counter display is automatically adjusted depending on the available speed range.

In addition, symbols in the revolution counter indicate a reduced engine speed range.

Standby state and drive-ready state



OFF is shown in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.



READY is shown in the instrument cluster. The Automatic Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

For further information:

- ▷ Vehicle operating condition, see page [45](#).
- ▷ Automatic Start/Stop function, see page [126](#).

Engine temperature

Display



- ▷ Cold engine: the needle is in the blue temperature range, close to the limit position of the temperature display and WARM-UP is displayed.
Drive at moderate rotational speed and vehicle speed.
- ▷ Normal operating temperature: the needle is located in the centre or left half of the temperature display.
- ▷ Hot engine: the needle is in the red temperature range. A Check Control message is also displayed.

For further information:

Coolant level, see page [364](#).

Outside temperature

General

If the display drops to +3 °C, 37 °F or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is shown.

There is an increased risk of black ice.

Safety information

WARNING

Even at temperatures above +3 °C, 37 °F there may be an increased risk of black ice, for example on bridges or on shaded sections of road. There is a risk of accident. At low temperatures, adjust driving style to the weather conditions.

Shift Lights

Principle

Shift Lights are temporarily displayed in the instrument cluster and indicate the appropriate time for upshifting, with which rapid acceleration values are achieved.

General

The Shift Lights are active in manual mode M and can be displayed in the instrument cluster or in the Head-up display in combination with the revolution counter.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Manual mode M must be activated.
- ▷ Advanced mode must be enabled.

For further information:

Advanced mode, see page [133](#).

Display



Yellow fields illuminate successively to indicate when a gearshift is due.

- ▷ Shift gear at the latest when all fields light up red.
- ▷ When the maximum engine speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the fuel supply is limited to protect the engine.

Central display area

General

The following settings can be selected:

- ▷ Reduced view.
- ▷ Trip data, see page [159](#).
- ▷ Assisted View, see page [160](#).
- ▷ With navigation system: route preview.
- ▷ With navigation system: map view.
- ▷ G-Meter, see page [161](#).
- ▷ Entertainment.
- ▷ Android Auto®.

Some contents for the central display area can also be configured as a view in the Head-up display.

For further information:

Head-up display, see page [145](#).

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication, see page [6](#).

Configuring the central display area

The contents for the central indication range in the instrument cluster can be individually configured, for example, the display of trip data.

1. Press the settings button on the steering wheel.
A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "CONTENT"
Select the menu by tilting the knurled wheel on the steering wheel as necessary.
3. Select the required setting using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

Android Auto®

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, selected functions of a com-



patible smartphone can also be displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g. Map views.

Trip data

Principle

The display of trip data provides various information about the trip, e.g. the average consumption or the trip distance.

General

The trip data can be shown on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the setting in the Live Vehicle menu, the trip data is shown dynamically or continuously on the control display.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Display on the control display

General

The following trip data is shown on the control display:

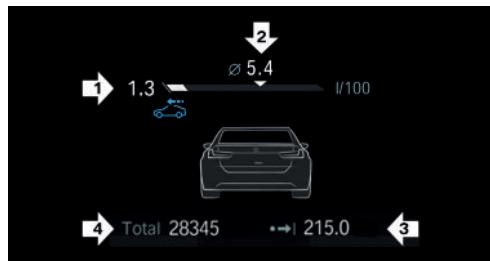
- ▷ Set interval for displaying the trip data.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption as a function of the set interval.
- ▷ Driving time depending on the set interval.
- ▷ Distance covered, depending on the set interval.
- ▷ The distance covered in the coasting drive state.

Displaying trip data continuously

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Content" / "Journey data"

Display in the instrument cluster

Information on consumption and distance covered can be displayed on the instrument cluster.



- ▷ Current consumption, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average consumption, arrow 2.
- ▷ Distance covered depending on the configured interval, arrow 3.
- ▷ In coasting mode, an icon is displayed.
- ▷ Total kilometres, arrow 4.

Current consumption

The display of the current consumption allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g. for driving economically and in an environmentally friendly manner.

Average consumption

The average fuel consumption is displayed depending on the setting of the intervals for displaying the trip data.

Configuring the trip data display

The intervals for displaying the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the control display can be configured.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "Time period for journey data" / "Values"
2. Select the desired setting:

- ▶ "for this journey": the values are reset automatically if the vehicle is at a standstill for approximately four hours.
- ▶ "since last refuel": the values are reset automatically after refuelling with a significant amount of fuel.
- ▶ "Since factory": the values since leaving the factory are displayed.
- ▶ "Since Individual (\$s)": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time:

"since Individual"

Using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel:

1. Display trip data in the instrument cluster.
2. Press and hold the knurled wheel



on the steering wheel until the values are reset.

To reset the average values via iDrive, select the following menu path: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "Time period for journey data" / "Reset Individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically activated:

"since Individual"

Assisted View

Principle

With Assisted View, information on driver assistance systems can be displayed on the instrument cluster with a vehicle animation.

Information on parking and manoeuvring is displayed in Assisted View whenever Park Assist is enabled.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

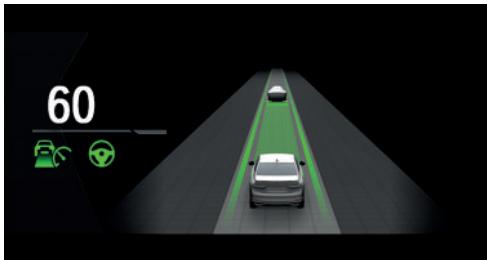
General

The Assisted View display can be configured in the central indication range and displayed.

For further information:

Central display area, see page 158.

Display



An example when driver assistance is active: the indicator and warning lights for Distance Control and Assisted Driving Mode are displayed. At the same time, distance control is animated in the Assisted View.

System limits

The detection capability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.



For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page [40](#).
- ▷ Radar sensors, see page [41](#).

G-Meter

General

The G-Meter shows the longitudinal and lateral forces acting on the vehicle occupants during a journey.

The display can be configured in the central indication range of the instrument cluster.

The values are automatically reset after each start of the journey.

For further information:

[Central display area, see page 158](#).

Manually resetting G-Meter values

1. Display G-Meter in the instrument cluster.
2. Press and hold the knurled wheel



on the steering wheel until the values are reset.

Date and time

Various settings can be configured for the display of date and time, for example the date format.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set and the automatic time zone setting can be activated. The automatic time zone setting automatically updates the time, date and, if necessary, the time zone.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "Time"
2. Select the desired settings.

Fuel level indicator

Principle

The current filling level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General

The vehicle inclination may cause the display to fluctuate.

For further information:

[Refuelling, see page 328](#).

Display



An arrow next to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.

The current range is displayed as a numerical value.

Range

Principle

The range shows what distance can be covered with the amount of fuel currently in the tank.

General

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed briefly if the remaining range is low. A small remaining range means that the engine functions are not always ensured if a sporty driving style is employed, e.g. when cornering fast.

If the range drops below approximately 50 km, 30 miles the Check Control message is displayed continuously.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the range drops below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. The engine functions are no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

Display



The current range is displayed as a numerical value on the fuel level indicator.

Selecting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to select the units of measurement for various values, for example, consumption, distances and temperature.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "Units"
2. Select the desired setting.

Vehicle status

General

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems, such as for Check Control.

Displaying the vehicle status

To display the vehicle status, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status"

Overview

Icon	Description
(!)	"Flat Tyre Monitor": Status of the Flat Tyre Monitor, see page 346 .
(!)	"Tyre Pressure Monitor": status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 340 .
机油	"Engine oil level": Electronic oil measurement, see page 361 .
尿素	"AdBlue": BMW Diesel with BluePerformance, see page 358 .
⚠	"Check Control": to display saved Check Control messages, see page 147 .
汽车	"Service requirements": to display service requirements, see page 163 .

Current driving condition

General

The current driving condition is displayed dynamically while driving in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following states can be displayed:

- ▷ Driving.
 - ▷ Coasting driving condition: "EFFICIENT COASTING".
 - ▷ "CHARGING BATTERY"
- With mild hybrid technology:
- ▷ Adaptive recuperation.
- Depending on the situation, additional information on adaptive recuperation may be displayed.
- ▷ Efficient coasting with the engine switched off.



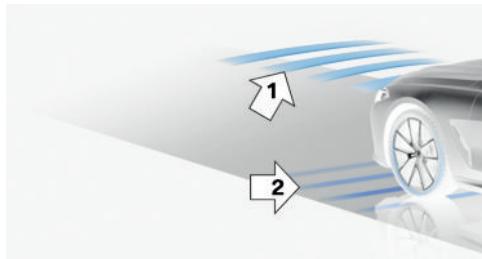
For further information:

- ▷ Adaptive recuperation, see page 321.
- ▷ Coasting, see page 322.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The Personal or Efficient drive mode must be selected.
- ▷ The following settings must be selected for Live Vehicle: "Adaptive content"

Display



An example:

The adaptive recuperation is active, arrow 1.

The vehicle battery is charged when the vehicle is decelerating, arrow 2.

Sport displays

Principle

The sport displays primarily assist a sporty driving style.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Sport mode must be selected.
- ▷ The following settings must be selected for Live Vehicle: "Adaptive content"

Display

The sport displays are displayed in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Torque.
- ▷ Power.
- ▷ Charging pressure.
- ▷ Engine oil temperature.

Service requirements

Principle

The function shows the current service requirements and related maintenance jobs.

General

After switching on, the next service appointment or the distance remaining until your next servicing is displayed briefly on the instrument cluster if necessary.

The current service requirements can be read out from the vehicle key by a service advisor.

Display

More detailed information on the maintenance work required can be displayed on the control display.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Service requirements"
Maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.
2. Select the desired entry to display more detailed information.

Entering deadlines

Dates for mandatory vehicle inspections can be entered.

Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle

- status" / "Service requirements" / "Vehicle inspection" /
2. Select the desired setting.

Service history

Principle

Completed maintenance work can be displayed on the control display.

General

Have maintenance work carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. The maintenance work carried out is entered in the vehicle data. The function is available as soon as a maintenance visit has been logged in the vehicle data.

Displays

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" /
"Service requirements"

Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.

2. "Service history"
3. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Icons

Icon	Description
	Maintenance has been carried out on time.
	Maintenance has been carried out later than scheduled.
	Maintenance has not been carried out.



Lights

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

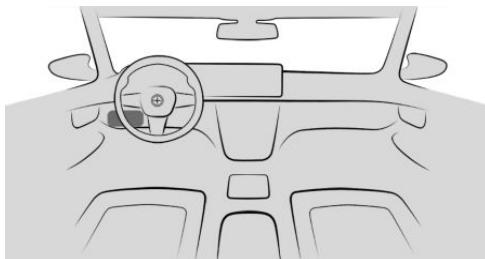
For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Lights and lighting

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Icon	Function
	Exterior lights menu.
	Automatic driving lights control. Low-beam headlight. Exterior lights off.
	Rear fog light.

Functions via iDrive

Icon	Function
	Automatic driving lights control.
	Low-beam headlight.
	Side lights.
	Exterior lights off.
	Parking light, left.
	Parking light, right.

Buttons on the vehicle key

Icon	Function
	Interior lighting. Parts of the exterior lights.
	Home lights.

Automatic driving lights control

Principle

Depending on ambient brightness, the system switches the low-beam headlight on or off au-

tomatically, for example in a tunnel, at twilight and in rain or snow.

General

The headlights may also be switched on when the sun is low against a blue sky.

If the low-beam headlight is switched on manually, the automatic driving lights control is deactivated.

Activating the automatic driving lights control



Press the button for the automatic driving lights and low-beam headlights on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlight is switched on.

System limits

The automatic driving lights control is no substitute for using your own judgement to assess the light conditions.

The sensors are unable to recognise fog or hazy weather, for example. In such situations, switch on the lights manually.

Side lights, low-beam headlights, and parking lights

General

If the driver's door is opened when drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lights are switched off automatically after a given time.

Side lights

General

The side lights can only be switched on in the low speed range.

Switching on the side lights

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / "Parking lights"
2. Tap the icon for the side light.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

The vehicle is illuminated all round.

Do not leave the side lights on for extended periods of time, as this could drain the vehicle battery and it may no longer be possible to switch on drive-ready state.

Switching off the side lights

The side lights can be switched off as follows:

- ▶ Press and hold the button for the automatic driving lights and low-beam headlights on the light switch.
 - ▶ Switch off the lights via iDrive.
 - ▶ Switch on drive-ready state.
- After switching on drive-ready state, the automatic driving lights control is activated.

Low-beam headlight

Switching on the low-beam headlight



Press the button for the automatic driving lights and low-beam headlights on the light switch.

The low-beam headlight illuminates if drive-ready state is switched on.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

To switch on the low-beam headlight as soon as the standby state is switched on, press the button again.

Switching off the low-beam headlight

Depending on the national-market version, the low-beam headlight may be switched off in the low speed range:

- ▷ Press and hold the button for the automatic driving lights and low-beam headlights on the light switch.
- ▷ Switch off the lights via iDrive.

Parking light

When parking the vehicle, it is possible to switch on a parking light on one side.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / "Parking lights"
2. Tap the parking light icon for the desired side of the vehicle.

Welcome light

Principle

With the welcome light, the exterior lights are automatically turned on for a limited time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

General

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lights of the vehicle can be individually adjusted.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / "Additional settings"
2. Depending on the equipment, select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"
When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are turned on.

Turning on the welcome light

- ▷ Automatically on approach.
- ▷ During unlocking.



- ▷ With the vehicle locked, press the button for locking on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

Home lights

Principle

With the home lights, the exterior lights are automatically turned on for a limited time after leaving the vehicle in order to illuminate the area around the vehicle.

Switching on the home lights

- ▷ After switching off drive-ready state, press the turn indicator lever forwards briefly.
- ▷ On the vehicle key, press the button for the home lights for approx. 1 second.

Activate the home lights function for the button of the vehicle key:

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Doors and windows" / "Vehicle key" / "Home lights"

Setting the duration

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / "Additional settings" / "Home lights"
2. Select the desired setting.

Daytime driving lights

General

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

-  The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the rear daytime driving lights are switched on.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are compulsory, in which case the daytime driving lights cannot be deactivated at the front.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / "Additional settings"
2. Depending on equipment or national-market version:
 - ▷ "Daytime driving lights"
 - ▷ "Rear daytime driving lights"

Dynamic ECO light function

General

In the low speed range, the brightness of the low-beam headlights is reduced.

Activating the dynamic ECO light function

1.  If necessary, press the button for the automatic driving lights and low-beam headlights on the light switch to activate the automatic driving lights.
The LED in the button illuminates.
2.  Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.
3. "EFFICIENT"

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

Adaptive lighting functions makes it possible to illuminate the road responsively.

General

The adaptive lighting functions consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment:

- ▷ Adaptive Headlights.
- ▷ Variable light distribution.
- ▷ Cornering light.
- ▷ Roundabout light.

Activating the adaptive light functions

-  Press the button for the automatic driving lights and low-beam headlights on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when drive-ready state is switched on.



Adaptive Headlights

General

The high-beam headlight follows the road ahead in response to the steering wheel angle and other parameters.

Anticipatory Adaptive Headlights

The high-beam headlight is adapted to the direction of travel ahead even before entering or leaving a bend.

S-bend lights

The high-beam headlight is kept as straight as possible when driving around S-bends.

Variable light distribution

Principle

The variable light distribution enables better illumination of the road.

General

The light distribution is adjusted automatically depending on speed and navigation data, if necessary.

Urban lights

The light beam from the low-beam headlight is extended at the sides.

Motorway beam pattern

The range of the low-beam headlight is increased.

Cornering light

Principle

When turning off or on tight bends, for example hairpin bends, up to a certain speed, a corner-

ing light is added to illuminate the inside area of the bend.

General

The cornering light is switched on automatically depending on the steering wheel angle or activation of the turn indicators.

When reversing, the cornering light is activated automatically irrespective of the steering wheel angle.

Hairpin lights

The cornering light is also switched on before entering hairpin bends.

Roundabout light

Shortly before driving onto a roundabout, the cornering light is activated on both sides. The edge of the road is illuminated more effectively. Shortly before leaving a roundabout, the cornering light is switched off again on both sides.

Manual headlight range control

General

Depending on the equipment, adjust the range of the low-beam headlight manually depending on vehicle load. This will prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled.

Adjusting the settings

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / "Headlight range control"
2. Select the desired setting.

Values after / are applicable in trailer operation.

- ▶ 0/1 = 1 to 2 persons without luggage.
- ▶ 1/1 = 4 or 5 persons without luggage.
- ▶ 1/2 = 4 or 5 persons with luggage.
- ▶ 2/2 = 1 person, luggage compartment fully loaded.

Adaptive headlight range control

Adaptive headlight range control compensates for acceleration and braking manoeuvres and vehicle load conditions to prevent oncoming vehicles from being dazzled.

High-beam Assistant

Principle

High-beam Assistant detects other road users in good time and activates or deactivates the high-beam according to traffic situation.

General

High-beam Assistant ensures that the high-beam headlight is switched on when the traffic situation allows. The system does not switch on the high-beam headlight at low speed range.

The system responds to the lights of oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for example in built-up areas.

The high-beam headlight can be switched on and off manually at any time.

If equipped with Selective Beam, the high-beam headlight is not switched off for oncoming vehicles or vehicles driving ahead of you. Instead, the system masks only those areas of the beam which would otherwise dazzle oncoming traffic or traffic driving ahead. In this case, the blue indicator light continues to illuminate.

Depending on the equipment: if the headlights have been converted, High-beam Assistant may only function to a restricted extent.

For further information:

Left-hand/right-hand traffic, see page 171.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Automatic driving lights control is activated.
- ▶ The low-beam headlight is switched on.

Activating High-beam Assistant

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / "Driving lights"
2. Tap the icon for the High-beam Assistant.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlight is switched on.

The system will switch automatically between low-beam headlight and high-beam headlight.



The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates if the high-beam headlight is switched on by the system.

If a journey is interrupted with High-beam Assistant activated: when the journey is resumed, High-beam Assistant remains activated.

The High-beam Assistant is deactivated by switching the high-beams on and off manually.



To reactivate High-beam Assistant, press the turn indicator lever forwards, arrow 1.



Deactivating High-beam Assistant



Press the turn indicator lever forwards, arrow 1, or pull the turn indicator lever backwards if the high-beam headlight is switched on, arrow 2.

If the High-beam Assistant is deactivated via iDrive, operation via the turn indicator lever is not possible.

System limits

High-beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's own judgement as to when to use the high-beam headlight. Therefore activate the dipped headlights manually if the situation requires it.

In the following situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be restricted and your intervention may be required:

- ▷ In extremely adverse weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horse riders or carriages and when trains or ships are close to the road, or when animals are crossing the road.
- ▷ On tight bends, on steep brows or hollows of hills, when there is crossing traffic or if the view of oncoming vehicles on a motorway is partly obstructed.
- ▷ In poorly lit towns or where there are highly reflective signs.
- ▷ If the area of windscreen in front of the interior mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.

Fog light

Rear fog light

Operating requirements

The low-beam headlight must be switched on before the rear fog light can be activated.

Switching the rear fog light on/off



Press the key.



The yellow indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the rear fog light is switched on.

If automatic driving lights control has been activated, the low-beam headlight switches on automatically when the rear fog light is switched on.

Bad weather light

Principle

The bad weather light provides optimised illumination of the road when visibility conditions are poor, for example in fog or rain. The light distribution from the low-beam headlight is adapted to the visibility conditions.

Activating/deactivating the bad weather light

The bad weather light is activated when the automatic driving light system or the rear fog light is switched on.

Left-hand/right-hand traffic

General

When driving in countries where vehicles drive on the opposite side of the road to your vehicle,

cle's country of registration, you will need to prevent the dazzling effect of your headlights.

Converting the headlights

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Exterior lighting" / "Additional settings" / "Right/left-hand traffic"
2. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The availability of the High-beam Assistant might be restricted.

The availability of the adaptive lighting functions might be restricted.

Instrument lighting

Operating requirements

The brightness can only be adjusted in darkness and with turned on side light or low-beam headlight.

Adjusting the brightness

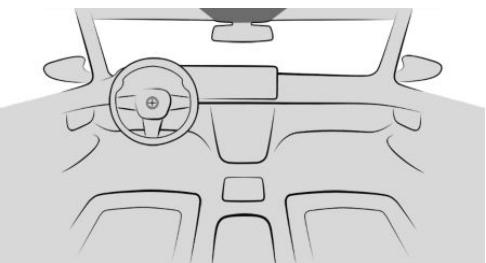
1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Vehicle cockpit brightness"
2. Select the desired setting.

Interior lighting

General

Depending on the equipment, the interior lights, the footwell lights, door entry lighting, ambient lighting and loudspeaker lighting are controlled automatically.

Overview



The button for the interior lighting menu is located in the headliner.



The buttons for the reading lights are located in the headliner.



The button for the interior lights is located in the headliner.

Switching interior lights on/off

Using the button:



Press the button for the interior lights in the headliner.

To switch off permanently: press and hold the button for approximately 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear can be switched on and off independently. The button is located on the headliner in the rear.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Reading light"
2. Tap the icon for the interior lights.

Switching reading lights on/off

Using the button:



Press the button for the reading light in the headliner.



Depending on the equipment, there are reading lights located at the front and in the rear beside the interior lights.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Reading light"
2. Tap the desired seat.

The brightness can be adjusted when the reading lights are active.

Adjusting the settings

Depending on the equipment, the brightness can be individually adjusted for individual seats.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Reading light"
2. Tap the desired seat.
3. Select the desired settings.

Ambient lighting

General

Depending on the equipment, the lighting for some of the interior lights can be adjusted.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting" / "Ambient lighting"

Turning ambient lighting on/off

The ambient lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient lighting was deactivated using iDrive, it is not switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the colour

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting" / "Colour"
2. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the brightness

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting"
2. "Background light" or "Accent lighting"
3. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or detected obstacles when doors are open, are indicated by light effects. If the ambient light is deactivated, the light effects are still displayed.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting" / "Lighting events"
2. Select the desired setting.

Reduced for journey at night

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting" / "Reduced for night driving"

Loudspeaker lighting

Principle

Some loudspeakers in the vehicle are illuminated.

General

When the loudspeakers are muted, the loudspeaker lighting turns off. When the ambient

lighting effects are activated, the loudspeakers light up white.

Turning loudspeaker lighting on/off

The loudspeaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off when the vehicle is locked.



Safety

Vehicle equipment

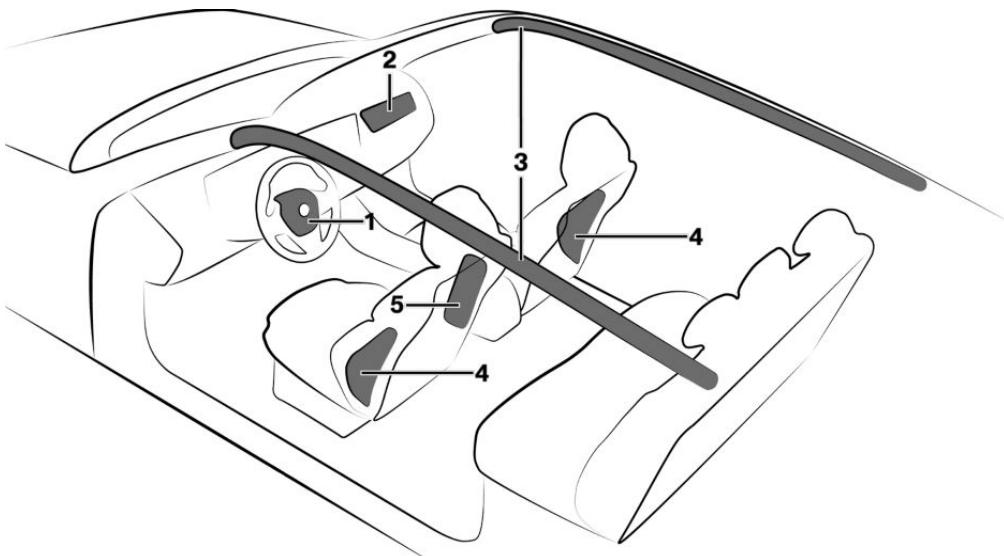
This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even

if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver

4 Side airbag

2 Front airbag, front passenger

5 Centre airbag

3 Head airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision where the protection of the seat belts alone would no longer be sufficient.

Side airbag

In a side-on crash, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and pelvic area.

Head airbag

The head airbag protects the head in the event of a side-on crash.

Centre airbag

Depending on the national-market version:
In case of a side collision, the centre airbag between the driver and front passenger additionally protects the head area.

Protective effect

General

Airbags are not activated in every collision situation, for example, in minor accidents.

Information for optimum airbag protective effect

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbag is restricted, the airbag system cannot provide the intended level of protection or may cause additional injuries when it deploys. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Observe the following for optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- ▷ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Always grip the steering wheel at the steering wheel rim. Place your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injury to hands or arms when the airbag deploys.
- ▷ Adjust the seat and steering wheel so the driver can reach over the steering wheel diagonally. Select the settings so that, when reaching over, the shoulders stay in contact with the backrest and the upper body stays as far away from the steering wheel as possible.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e. with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- ▷ Make sure that vehicle occupants keep their head away from the side airbag.

- ▷ Do not place any other persons, pets or objects between the airbags and occupants.
- ▷ Keep the dashboard and windscreen area on the passenger's side clear, for example do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for navigation devices or mobile phones, for example.
- ▷ Do not glue the airbag covers and do not cover or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Do not use the front airbag cover on the passenger's side as a tray.
- ▷ Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front seats that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated airbag versions.
- ▷ Do not hang items of clothing, for example coats or jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Do not modify individual components or wiring. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and seats.
- ▷ Do not dismantle the airbag system.

Even if all this information is observed, injuries resulting from contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out in every situation.

The noise caused by the deployment of an airbag may lead to temporary hearing loss in vehicle occupants sensitive to noise.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components of the airbag system may be hot after airbag deployment. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.



WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can cause the airbag system to fail, malfunction or deploy accidentally. If there is a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Have the airbag system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Display in the instrument cluster



When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners are operational.

Malfunction



- ▷ The warning light does not illuminate after drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The warning light is permanently illuminated.

Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Adjusting the front seat position

To maintain the accuracy of the seat position, calibrate the electric front seats as soon as a corresponding message is displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Seats, see page [100](#).

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Principle

When using a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag can be deactivated via iDrive.

General

The availability of the function depends on the vehicle equipment and country.

The front passenger airbag can be deactivated and reactivated via iDrive on the control display. An indicator light shows the operating status.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle key is in the vehicle.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "GB: Beifahrer-Airbag" / "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF"
2. Check the operation of the front passenger airbag using the indicator light and confirm.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The driver airbag remains active.

If a rearward-facing child restraint system is removed from the front passenger seat, reactivate the front passenger airbag so that it can deploy as intended in the event of an accident.

Activating the front passenger airbag

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "GB: Beifahrer-Airbag" / "PASSENGER AIR BAG ON"
2. Check the operation of the front passenger airbag using the indicator light and confirm.

The front passenger airbag is reactivated and deploys in appropriate situations.

Front passenger airbag indicator light

The indicator light for the front passenger airbag in the headliner shows the operating status of the front passenger airbag.

After switching on standby state, the light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

Display	Function
	When the front passenger airbag is activated, the indicator light illuminates for approx. 1 minute and then goes out.
	When the front passenger airbag is deactivated, the indicator light remains illuminated.

Check the status of the indicator light before and also while driving when the front passenger seat is occupied.

Active pedestrian protection

Principle

The active pedestrian protection raises the bonnet if the front of the vehicle collides with a pedestrian. When triggered, the pedestrian protection creates deformation space under-

neath the bonnet in readiness for the subsequent head impact.

General

Sensors underneath the bumper are used for detection.

The system's gas pressure springs are only approved for a certain period of time. Check the gas pressure springs during maintenance and replace them as necessary.

Safety information

WARNING

The system may trigger inadvertently if contact is made with individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Do not touch individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks.

WARNING

Modifications to the pedestrian protection can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the pedestrian protection system. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not modify the pedestrian protection, its individual components or its wiring. Do not dismantle the system.

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, malfunction or accidental triggering of the system. If there is a malfunction, the system might not trigger as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Have the system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by an authorised



Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the system has been triggered or is damaged, its functionality will be restricted or it may no longer work at all. There is a danger of injury or danger to life.

If the system has been triggered or is damaged, have it checked and replaced at an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTICE

Opening the bonnet when the pedestrian protection has triggered may damage the bonnet or the pedestrian protection. There is a risk of material damage. Do not open the bonnet after the Check Control message is displayed. Have it checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

The active pedestrian protection is only triggered at speeds between approximately 30 km/h, 18 mph and 55 km/h, 34 mph.

For safety reasons, the system may also trigger in rare instances where impact with a pedestrian cannot be excluded beyond all doubt, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ Collision with objects such as a skip or a boundary post.
- ▷ Collision with animals.
- ▷ Stone impact.
- ▷ Driving into a snow drift.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the active pedestrian protection, different messages are displayed.



A warning light is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is shown on the control display.

The system has been triggered or is faulty.

Immediately drive at moderate speed to an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the system checked and repaired.

Collision warning systems

Principle

The Intelligent Safety Systems can help to prevent an impending collision.

Depending on the equipment, various safety and warning systems are available:

- ▷ Front-collision warning, see page 180.
- ▷ Exit warning, see page 189.
- ▷ Lane Departure Warning, see page 191.
- ▷ Lane Change Warning, see page 195.
- ▷ Side collision warning, see page 198.
- ▷ Road Priority Warning, see page 201.
- ▷ Wrong-way Warning, see page 203.
- ▷ Rear Collision Prevention, see page 200.
- ▷ Emergency Stop Assistant, see page 204.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of acci-

dent. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Activating/deactivating Intelligent Safety Systems

The Intelligent Safety Systems can be activated or deactivated.

Depending on the national-market version, some of the Intelligent Safety Systems are automatically active each time upon driving off.

Some of the functions are adjustable.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings"
2. Select the desired settings.

Resetting settings

The settings of the collision warning systems can be reset to the default settings for vehicle delivery.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Reset to recommended settings"

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limitations, the system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection capability

The detection capability of the Intelligent Safety System is limited.

The system only takes into account objects within the detection range of the installed sensors and that are detected by the system.

Depending on the equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

System limits of the sensors

The system may be limited by the system limits of the sensors.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 40.

Front-collision warning

Principle

The front-collision warning can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system may help reduce the severity of the accident. The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and may activate the brakes independently.

Depending on the equipment, the front-collision warning includes the following functions:



- ▷ The warning function in rear-end collision situations, see page 184.
- ▷ The warning function for oncoming traffic, see page 184.
- ▷ The warning function for turning with oncoming traffic, see page 185.
- ▷ The warning function for pedestrians, see page 186.
- ▷ The warning function at road junctions, see page 187.
- ▷ The Evasion Assistant, see page 188.

off the front-collision warning and Cruise Control before tow-starting or towing away.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windscreen.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, front.

Speed range

The front-collision warning issues a warning of a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 5 km/h, approx. 3 mph.

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph.

Some functions are deactivated earlier.

As soon as the speed drops below these values again, the system is activated.

Activating/deactivating the front-collision warning

Automatically activating the system

Depending on the national-market version, front-collision warning is automatically active each time upon driving off.

Manually activating the system

The front-collision warning is activated when the warning time is set.

For further information:

Setting the warning time of the front-collision warning, see page 182.

Manually deactivating the system

Depending on the national-market version, the speed must be greatly reduced or the vehicle must be stopped in order to deactivate the front-collision warning. The front-collision warning is deactivated via iDrive.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Individual functions may malfunction when tow-starting or towing away with activated front-collision warning or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Turn

If necessary, the deactivation must be confirmed successively on the control display.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Front collision warning" / "Off"

Setting the warning time of the front-collision warning

The warning time from which the front-collision warning should issue a warning can be set.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Front collision warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

The higher the sensitivity of the warning time settings the more warnings are displayed. The system may therefore also issue more early or unfounded warnings and reactions.

The system checks for visual impairments. Depending on equipment, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster monitors the driver's gaze behaviour. Visibility conditions and field of vision also affect the timing of the warnings.

Display in the instrument cluster

The following indicator lights and warning lights are shown in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the Head-up display:

Icon	Meaning
	Depending on equipment and national-market version: Functional limitation detected, for example, due to system limits of the cameras or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.
	System limits of the cameras, see page 40.
	Depending on equipment and national-market version: The system is deactivated.
	Risk of collision, for example, with an oncoming or a vehicle driving in front.
	Risk of collision, e.g. with a crossing vehicle from the right.
	Risk of collision, e.g. with a crossing vehicle from the left.
	General risk of collision.

The display of the indicator lights and warning lights may vary because the system may detect multiple objects.

Warning function

The front-collision warning warns on different warning levels, depending on the respective hazardous situation.

In the event of a system warning, the driver must intervene immediately and in accordance with the situation.

- A red warning light is illuminated:



A hazardous situation has been detected.
Increased awareness is required.

▷ A red warning light flashes:

There is a risk of collision. Intervene yourself immediately.

▷ A warning signal sounds:

There is a risk of collision. Intervene yourself immediately.

▷ Automatic brake intervention:

Depending on the equipment and situation in case of an imminent danger of collision, the system can also intervene with an automatic brake intervention and automatically decelerate the vehicle, if necessary, to a complete standstill.

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake force of the vehicle is used.

Automatic brake intervention

If there is a risk of collision, the front-collision warning can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a standstill.

A brake intervention can be cancelled by sufficiently stepping on the accelerator pedal, releasing the brake pedal or with an active steering wheel movement.

Depending on the equipment and situation, the brake intervention can occur at speeds of up to approx. 250 km/h/155 mph.

At speeds above approx. 210 km/h/130 mph, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

System limits

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Due to system limitations, the system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection capability

The detection capability of the front-collision warning is limited.

The system only takes into account objects within the detection range of the installed sensors and that are detected by the system.

Depending on the equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

System limits of the sensors

The system may be limited by the system limits of the sensors.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page [40](#).

Functional limitations

The front-collision warning may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In tight bends.
- ▷ With restriction of the driving stability control systems.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

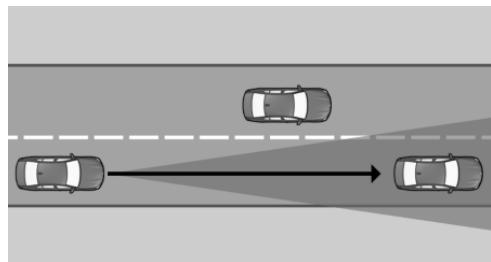
Warning function in rear-end collision situations

Principle

The warning function in rear-end collision situations warns of a possible risk of collision and may brake independently.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 5 km/h/3 mph. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The driver's own driving behaviour is taken into account in the responses of the system. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions are output less frequently.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in Chapter "Front-collision warning".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Collision Warning with a detected vehicle.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning function prompts the driver to intervene in rear-end collision situations.

For further information:

Front-collision warning, see page 180.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front-collision warning".

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, or only detected with a delay, for example:

- ▷ Slow driving vehicle in front being approached at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or decelerating heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear design.

Warning function for oncoming traffic

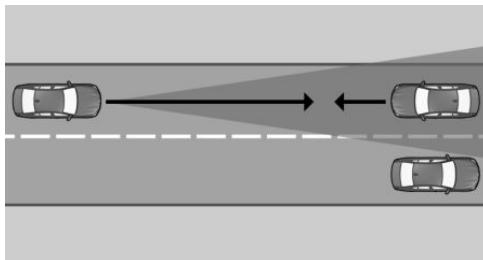
Principle

The Warning function for oncoming traffic can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision with oncoming vehicles and apply the brakes independently, if needed.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.



General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 5 km/h/3 mph. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in Chapter "Front-collision warning".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Oncoming traffic warning when a vehicle is detected.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning function in the event of oncoming traffic prompts a driver intervention.

In case of a risk of collision, a brake intervention is triggered.

For further information:

Front-collision warning, see page 180.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front-collision warning".

Detection range

The following might not be detected in the detection range, for example:

- ▷ Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual front view.

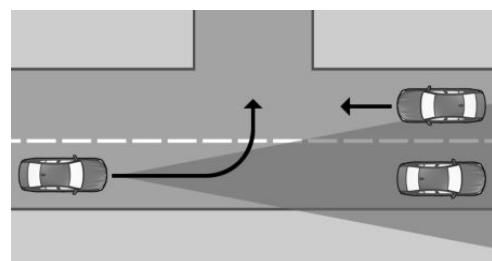
Warning function for turning with oncoming traffic

Principle

There is a risk of an accident with oncoming vehicles when turning across the oncoming lane. The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and may activate the brakes independently.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with oncoming vehicles at speeds from approx. 5 km/h/3 mph. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in Chapter "Front-collision warning".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon Meaning

Icon	Meaning
	Oncoming traffic warning when a vehicle is detected.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning function when turning with oncoming traffic prompts a driver intervention.

For further information:

Front-collision warning, see page [180](#).

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front-collision warning".

Detection range

The following might not be detected in the detection range, for example:

- ▶ Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- ▶ Vehicles that are hidden by other vehicles.
- ▶ Vehicles with an unusual front view.

Upper speed limit

The system is active when the own speed is below approx. 25 km/h, approx. 15 mph during turning.

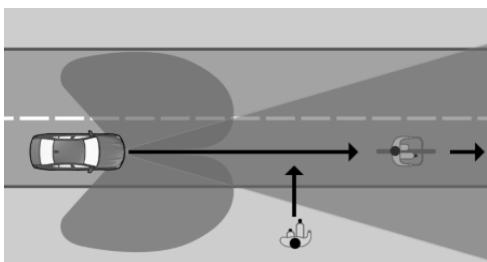
Warning function for pedestrians

Principle

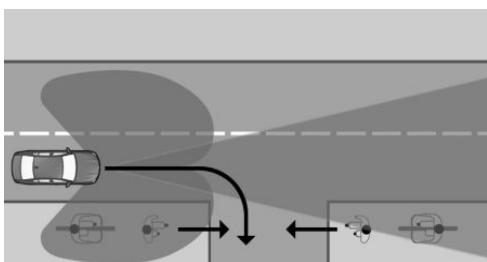
The warning function for pedestrians warns of the risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists at speeds that are common in towns and cities. The system may brake automatically if necessary.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range on a straight line.



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range when turning off.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians at speeds above approx. 5 km/h/3 mph.



Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in Chapter "Front-collision warning".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person, a warning light is displayed.

Icon Meaning

	Risk of collision with a pedestrian.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning function for pedestrians prompts an intervention by the driver.

For further information:

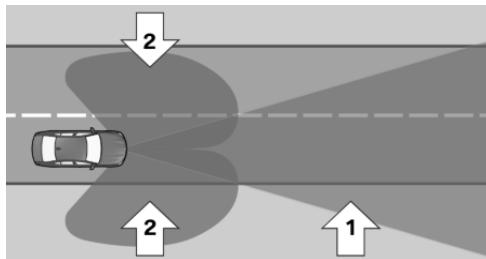
Front-collision warning, see page 180.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front-collision warning".

Detection range



The detection range consists of the following parts:

- ▶ Area in front of the vehicle, arrow 1.
- ▶ With side radar sensors in front: side areas, arrows 2.

For example the following might not be detected:

- ▶ Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- ▶ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- ▶ Pedestrians with insufficient height.

Upper speed limit

Depending on the equipment, the warning function reacts to pedestrians when the own speed is up to 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

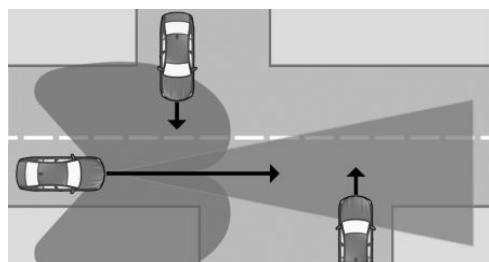
Warning function at road junctions

Principle

The warning function at road junctions can warn of a possible risk of collision with crossing traffic at intersections and junctions at speeds that are common in towns and cities. The system may brake automatically if necessary.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Vehicles that cross the vehicle's direction of travel can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter the detection range of the sensors.

A warning is given at road junctions and cross-roads if there is a risk of collision with crossing traffic.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 5 km/h/3 mph.

The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in Chapter "Front-collision warning".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with crossing vehicle from right.
	Risk of collision with crossing vehicle from left.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning function at road junctions prompts the driver to intervene.

For further information:

Front-collision warning, see page [180](#).

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front-collision warning".

Detection range

The following might not be detected in the detection range, for example:

- ▷ Crossing vehicles concealed by buildings, for example.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual side appearance.
- ▷ Vehicles in highly dynamic driving situations.

Upper speed limit

The warning function at road junctions responds to crossing vehicles when the own speed is below approx. 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

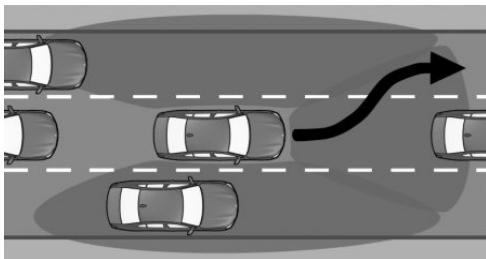
Evasion Assistant

Principle

The Evasion Assistant can support the driver in making evasive manoeuvres in certain situations, for example, when obstacles or persons suddenly appear.

If there is sufficient free space, the steering movement of the driver is supported during the evasive action.

General



Sensors monitor and detect the clearance in front of the vehicle. Depending on the equipment, the areas next to the vehicle are also monitored.



The system issues warnings and intervenes to provide support if there is a possibility to take an avoidance manoeuvre to the side.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in Chapter "Front-collision warning".

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Evasion Assistant:

- ▷ The front-collision warning is active.
- ▷ The sensors detect adequate space around the vehicle.

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle or person, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning when a vehicle is detected.
	Warning when a person is detected.
	Warning for unknown obstacles.

Warning function with evasion support

If the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed, a warning is displayed if there is an immediate risk of collision.

Intervene in case of a warning.

The system provides support for the driver's avoidance manoeuvres if there is a risk of collision.

A message in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the Head-up display signals the evasion support.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front-collision warning".

Detection range

The following might not be detected in the detection range, for example:

- ▷ Slow driving vehicle in front being approached at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or decelerating heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear design.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.
- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- ▷ Pedestrians with insufficient height.

Exit warning

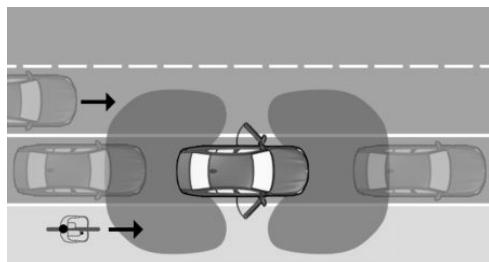
Principle

The exit warning helps to avoid accidents.

The system can warn the passengers when they are opening the doors and a risk of collision with approaching objects is detected.

The system monitors the area around the vehicle for a limited time after getting in or after parking. A possible risk of collision is indicated by various warnings, for example by flashing in the exterior mirror and sounding of an acoustic signal.

General



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the area in front of the vehicle is also monitored. For this purpose, two further radar sensors are located in the front bumper.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the Chapter "Collision warning systems".

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▶ Side radar sensors, rear.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment, by the side radar sensors, front.

Activating/deactivating the exit warning

Automatically activating the system

The exit warning is activated automatically after departure if the function was turned on at the end of the last journey.

Manually deactivating the system

The exit warning can be deactivated.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Exit warning" / "Off"

Setting the warning function of the exit warning system

The warning function of the exit warning can be set.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Exit warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

Switching the warning signal on/off

The warning tone of the exit warning can be switched on or off.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Exit warning" / "Warning tone"

Displays

Warning light in the exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

Ambient lighting

Depending on the equipment, warnings are also indicated by the ambient lighting in the interior.



Warning function

Advance warning

In the event of an advance warning, the warning light in the exterior mirror is illuminated. Depending on the equipment, the ambient lighting also flashes. An object was detected in the opening range. Increased awareness is required.

Acute warning

In the event of an acute warning, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and, depending on the equipment, the ambient lighting also flashes. An acoustic signal also sounds.

There is a risk of collision when opening the doors.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Detection range

The following might not be detected in the detection range, for example:

- ▷ Fully or partially hidden objects.
- ▷ Stationary or very slow objects.
- ▷ Pedestrians.

Functional limitations

The exit warning may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ The speed of an approaching vehicle is too fast or too slow.
- ▷ In curves.
- ▷ In case of fully or partially hidden objects.

Lane Departure Warning with active return

Principle

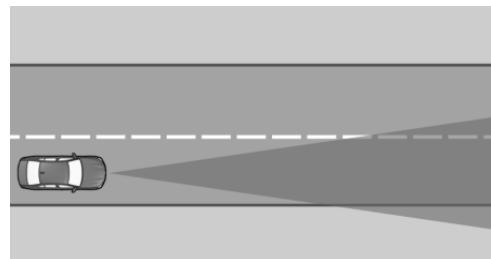
Lane Departure Warning with active return issues a warning if the vehicle is about to leave the road or its driving lane.

An automatic steering intervention may help in keeping the vehicle in its lane.

Warnings are displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, the steering wheel is vibrating.

The system does not issue a warning if the driver indicates in the corresponding direction before leaving the driving lane.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning starting at a minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the layout of the road and the traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. In the event of a warning, do

not move the steering wheel unnecessarily abruptly.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The lane marking must be detected by the camera in order for the Lane Departure Warning to be active.

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windscreen.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Side radar sensor, front.
- ▷ Side radar sensor, rear.

Activating/deactivating Lane Departure Warning

Automatically activating the system

Depending on the national-market version, Lane Departure Warning is automatically active each time upon driving off.

Manually activating the system

The Lane Departure Warning is activated when the warning time is set.

For further information:

Setting the warning time of the Lane Departure Warning, see page [192](#).

Manually deactivating the system

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the deactivation must be confirmed successively on the control display.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane departure warning" / "Off"

Setting the warning time of the Lane Departure Warning

The warning time from which the Lane Departure Warning system should issue a warning can be set.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane departure warning"
2. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Expanded"
If the system detects that the vehicle is about to leave the lane or cross a lane marking, a warning is issued. The system performs a steering intervention.
 - ▷ "In dangerous situations"
If the lane marking is interrupted: if driving over the lane is detected as unintentional or the radar sensors detect an oncoming vehicle, a warning is issued and steering intervention is carried out.
 - If the lane markings are solid, depending on the national-market version: if the system detects that the vehicle is unintentionally leaving the lane or crossing a lane marking, a warning is issued and a steering intervention is performed.



Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

The strength of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Vibration intensity"
2. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on national-market version: activating/deactivating steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version, the Lane Departure Warning steering intervention can be activated or deactivated.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane departure warning" / "Steering intervention"

Depending on the national-market version, steering intervention is automatically active whenever you drive off.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different system statuses are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Icon	Meaning
	The indicator light is illuminated green: the system is activated. A lane marking has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle. The system is ready to intervene and issue warnings. The system can perform steering interventions.
	The indicator light flashes green: the system actively issues a warning. If necessary, the system performs a steering intervention.
	The warning light is illuminated yellow: functional limitation detected, for example, due to low sun or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.
	The warning light flashes yellow: a warning is issued actively. The system does not carry out any steering interventions.
	The warning light is illuminated grey: the system is automatically deactivated, for example, because DSC OFF is activated.
	The warning light flashes grey: a warning is issued actively. The system does not carry out any steering interventions.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page [160](#).

Warning function

When leaving the driving lane

If the vehicle leaves the driving lane and a lane boundary is detected, the steering wheel vibrates depending on the steering wheel vibration setting.



In addition, the indicator light flashes green.

If the turn indicator is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing lanes, no warning is issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version and equipment: if a lane boundary is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, the system may respond with an active steering intervention in addition to the steering wheel vibration. The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in driving lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.



When steering intervention is active, the indicator light flashes green.

For example, steering intervention is suppressed in the following situations:

- ▷ If the vehicle is accelerating rapidly or braking heavily.
- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ If the hazard warning lights are switched on.
- ▷ In driving situations with high driving dynamics.
- ▷ When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control is restricted.
- ▷ Directly after a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.

Warning signal

Depending on the national-market version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel during the steering intervention itself, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. A longer warning signal sounds from the third steering intervention onwards.

A Check Control message is also displayed. The warning signal and Check Control message advise to pay closer attention to the lane.

In trailer operation

If the trailer socket is occupied or the trailer operation is activated, for example during operation with a trailer, no steering intervention takes place.

When a bicycle carrier or load carrier is used on the trailer tow hitch, this limitation does not apply when trailer operation is activated accordingly on the control display.

For further information:

Towing a trailer, see page [315](#).

Cancellation of the warning

For example, the warning or an active steering intervention is cancelled in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after a few seconds.
- ▷ On returning to the correct lane.
- ▷ If the vehicle is accelerating rapidly or braking heavily.
- ▷ If the hazard warning lights are switched on.
- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.
- ▷ Directly after a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.



- ▷ With manual steering intervention.
- ▷ Possibly when another driver assistance system is activated.
- ▷ No lane boundary detected.
- ▷ When the system limits are reached.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Functional limitations

The Lane Departure Warning may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane boundaries, for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are not white.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control is restricted.

A Check Control message may be displayed if functionality is restricted. Depending on the national-market version, a yellow warning light is also illuminated.

Lane Change Warning with active recirculation

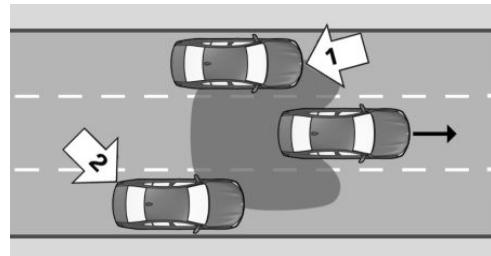
Principle

Lane Change Warning with active return detects vehicles in the blind spot or if vehicles are approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns in different stages.

An automatic steering intervention may help in keeping the vehicle in its lane.

General



The system is operational after a minimum speed has been reached and uses radar sensors to monitor the area behind and adjacent to the vehicle.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed in the Lane Change Warning menu.

The system indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot, arrow 1, or are approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The warning light in the exterior mirror is illuminated at a dimmed level.

In the previously named situations, the system will warn prior to a lane change. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

When turning at a speed of up to approx. 20 km/h, approx. 12 mph, the steering wheel will not vibrate.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the Chapter "Collision warning systems".

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▶ Camera behind the windscreen.
- ▶ Side radar sensors, rear.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment, by the side radar sensors, front.

Operating requirements

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

Activating/deactivating Lane Change Warning

The Lane Change Warning function can be activated or deactivated.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane change warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

Setting the warning time of the Lane Change Warning

The warning time of the Lane Change Warning can be set.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane change warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

The strength of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Vibration intensity"
2. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on national-market version: activating/deactivating steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version, the Lane Change Warning steering intervention can be activated or deactivated.

- Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane change warning" / "Steering intervention"

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different system statuses are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Icon	Meaning
	The indicator light is illuminated green: the system is activated. Warnings are issued within the system limits and, if necessary, steering interventions are carried out.
	The warning light is illuminated grey: the system is activated. No warnings are issued temporarily. At least one functional requirement has not been met, for example the minimum speed has not been reached.



Icon Meaning



The warning light is illuminated yellow: functional limitation detected, for example, due to dirty radar sensors or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.



The indicator light is illuminated grey: the system is deactivated.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page [160](#).

Warning function

Warning light in the exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

Advance warning

The dimmed warning light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot or are approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

In the event of an acute warning, the steering wheel vibrates briefly. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

An acute warning is issued if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Another vehicle is located in the critical area.
- ▷ Your own vehicle is approaching the other lane.
- ▷ Depending on the system setting when the turn indicator is turned on.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version: if there is no response to the steering wheel vibrations and a lane boundary is crossed at speeds of up to 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, the system responds with an active steering intervention if necessary. The steering intervention helps to return the vehicle to its driving lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

The steering intervention is carried out from a minimum speed. The minimum speed is displayed on the control display.

Brief flashing of the warning light

Brief flashing of the warning light in exterior mirror during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Upper speed limit

The Lane Change Warning is temporarily deactivated at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.

The system is activated again at speeds under approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.

Warning displays

Depending on the selected setting for warnings, for example the warning time, it is possible that more or fewer warnings will be displayed. As a result, there may also be an increased number of premature warnings about critical situations.

Functional limitations

The Lane Change Warning may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ The speed of the approaching vehicle is much faster than your own speed.
- ▷ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▷ The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention may be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane boundaries, for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are not white.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ If the camera is impaired.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message may be displayed if functionality is restricted. Depending on the national-market version, a yellow warning light is also illuminated.

The system may be restricted or inactive when the trailer socket is occupied or when the trailer operation is activated, for example, when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Side collision warning

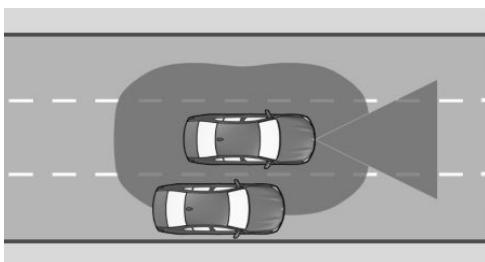
Principle

The side collision warning helps to avoid an imminent side collision.

If another vehicle is detected adjacent to the vehicle – and there is a risk of a side collision – the system helps the driver to avoid a collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning with a flashing LED in the exterior mirror, a Check Control message and a vibrating steering wheel.

An active steering intervention is performed by the system if necessary.

General



Radar sensors monitor the area adjacent to the vehicle from a minimum speed up to approximately , 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.



Safety information

Follow the safety information in the Chapter "Collision warning systems".

Operating requirements

The camera behind the windscreen detects the position of the lane boundaries.

The lane boundaries must be detected by the camera in order for the side collision warning with steering intervention to be active.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windscreen.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, front.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, rear.

Activating/deactivating side collision warning

The side collision warning can be activated or deactivated.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Side collision warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

The strength of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Vibration intensity"
2. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 160.

Warning function

Warning light in the exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel starts vibrating.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version, an active steering intervention takes place if necessary to prevent a collision and keep the vehicle in its own lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Functional limitations

The side collision warning may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane boundaries, for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are not white.
- ▷ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message may be displayed if functionality is restricted.

The system is inactive when the trailer socket is occupied or when the trailer operation is activated, for example, when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Rear Collision Prevention

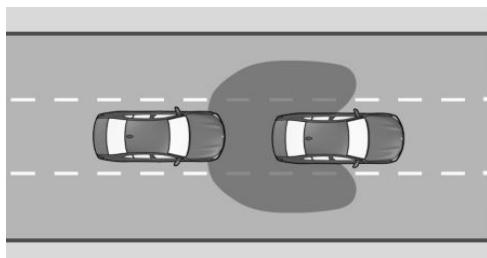
Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Rear Collision Prevention can respond to vehicles approaching from behind.

If a vehicle that is approaching at a corresponding speed is detected, the hazard warn-

ing lights are switched on and, if necessary, PreCrash functions triggered.

General



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the Chapter "Collision warning systems".

Sensors

The system is controlled via the radar sensors at the side in the rear.

Activating/deactivating the Rear Collision Prevention

Rear Collision Prevention is automatically active after the start of each journey.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- ▷ When reversing.
- ▷ If the trailer socket is occupied or trailer operation is activated, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".



Functional limitations

Rear Collision Prevention may be restricted if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher or similar to the own speed.

Road Priority Warning

Principle

The Road Priority Warning provides support in situations where road signs or traffic lights indicate that the driver must give way.

The respective traffic situation is displayed for the warning, for example in the instrument cluster. An acoustic signal also sounds in acute warning situations.

General

The Road Priority Warning uses a camera behind the windscreen to evaluate road signs and traffic lights.

The navigation system forwards information regarding the road layout to the system.

A warning is given if a right-of-way is about to be violated in the following traffic situations, for example:

- ▷ At a road junction.
- ▷ At a T-junction.
- ▷ On an entry slip road slip road.
- ▷ At a roundabout.
- ▷ In the event of a red traffic light.

Starting from a variable minimum speed, the system issues warnings from and up to approximately 80 km/h/50 mph.

The following road signs are taken into account for the Road Priority Warning:

Signs Meaning



Give way signs:

An advance warning is issued for these road signs.



Stop signs:

An advance warning and an acute warning are issued for these road signs.



Red traffic lights result in output of an advance warning and an acute warning.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the Chapter "Collision warning systems".

Operating requirements

The road priority situation must be unambiguously directed by road signs or light signal systems.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the camera behind the windscreen.

Activating/deactivating the Road Priority Warning

The Road Priority Warning can be activated or deactivated.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Safety and warnings" / "Give way warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

Setting the warning time of the Road Priority Warning

The warning time of the Road Priority Warning can be set.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Give way warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

The selected setting is saved and adopted for the next journey.

Warning function

General

The Road Priority Warning warns in two stages:

- Advance warning: visually by means of an icon in the instrument cluster.
- Acute warning: visually by means of an icon in the instrument cluster and with an additional acoustic signal.

The timing of the warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation and the set warning time.

Advance warning

If there is a risk that road priority is about to be ignored, one of the following icons appears in the instrument cluster:

Icon	Meaning
	Give way.
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When an advance warning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Acute warning

If there is an imminent risk that right-of-way is about to be ignored, an acoustic signal sounds and one of the following icons appears in the instrument cluster:

Icon	Meaning
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When an acute warning is issued, immediately intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Display in the Head-up display

Depending on the equipment, the warning is displayed in the Head-up display at the same time as in the instrument cluster.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

No Warning

The Road Priority Warning provides no warning in the following situations, for example:

- In road priority situations without "Give Way" signs, "Stop" signs or red light signal systems.
- At road junctions with relevant traffic lights that illuminate yellow or green.



Functional limitations

The Road Priority Warning may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are unclear.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are difficult to read or rotated.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are too small or too large.
- ▷ With road signs that do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a merging or parallel road.
- ▷ If the road signs or road layouts are specific to one country.
- ▷ At road junctions with flashing light signal systems.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent in some countries.

Wrong-way Warning

Principle

The Wrong-way Warning issues a warning if the driver is about to drive the wrong way, for example on motorways, roundabouts and one-way streets.

As a warning, a corresponding road sign is displayed in the instrument cluster and an acoustic signal also sounds.

General

Depending on the equipment, the Wrong-way Warning will check the traffic situation based on navigation data and road signs.

The system will take into account road signs such as the following:

- ▷ No entry.
- ▷ Roundabout.
- ▷ Direction arrows: keep right/left signs.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the Chapter "Collision warning systems".

Operating requirements

The road layout ahead must be unambiguously indicated by road signs.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the camera behind the windscreen.

Activating/deactivating the Wrong-way Warning

Depending on the national-market version, the Wrong-way Warning is automatically activated each time upon driving off.

Warning function



A warning is displayed and an acoustic signal sounds, for example when the vehicle is travelling in the wrong direction on a motorway, roundabout or one-way street.

Warnings are displayed in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the Head-up display.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

No Warning

The Wrong-way Warning does not provide a warning on roads without road signs, for example.

Functional limitations

The Wrong-way Warning may have restricted functionality or give no Wrong-way Warning at all in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the road signs are ambiguous.
- ▷ If the road signs are fully or partially covered or soiled.
- ▷ If the road signs are poorly visible or twisted.
- ▷ If the road signs are too small or too large.
- ▷ With road signs that do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a merging or parallel road.
- ▷ If the road signs or road layouts are specific to one country.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the system in all countries.

Emergency Stop Assistant

Principle

If the driver can no longer drive the vehicle safely, the Emergency Stop Assistant helps to bring the vehicle to a safe standstill.

The Emergency Stop Assistant is activated automatically.

If the system is activated, the vehicle is brought to a standstill within its own lane by means of lane tracking.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess your physical condition correctly. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or may not be detected in good time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Emergency Stop Assistant:

- ▷ Emergency Stop Assistant is activated via iDrive.
- ▷ The function is activated from a speed of approx. 70 km/h, approx. 43 mph.
- ▷ The Driver Attention Camera detects driver activity.

Activating the Emergency Stop Assistant

If the Emergency Stop Assistant detects that the driver is no longer driving the vehicle safely or is ignoring warnings, the system is activated automatically. The activated system is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The Emergency Stop Assistant can also be activated via voice input.

An immediate emergency call can be triggered on the control display.

The following is performed automatically when the Emergency Stop Assistant is activated:



- ▷ A display is shown in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ The system takes control of the vehicle until the vehicle comes to a standstill.
- ▷ The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, an emergency call is triggered at standstill.

For further information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, see page 56.

Activating/deactivating the Emergency Stop Assistant

Triggering of the Emergency Stop Assistant can be activated or deactivated.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" /
/ "Safety and warnings" / "Emergency stop"

Cancelling the Emergency Stop Assistant

At any time during the process, the driver can cancel the Emergency Stop Assistant function by actively taking control of the vehicle.

For example, the system is cancelled in the following situations:

- ▷ With strong countersteering.
- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ If the accelerator pedal is pressed hard.
- ▷ When the hazard warning lights are switched off.
- ▷ If the system is interrupted on the control display.
- ▷ When changing the selector lever position, if the vehicle was already at a standstill.

When the vehicle is at a standstill

As soon as the vehicle is at standstill, the Emergency Stop Assistant configures the following settings:

- ▷ The vehicle is secured to prevent it from rolling away.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on.
- ▷ The central locking system is unlocked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Meaning
	The Emergency Stop Assistant has triggered.

System limits

The Emergency Stop Assistant cannot replace the abilities of a safe driver.

The system may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

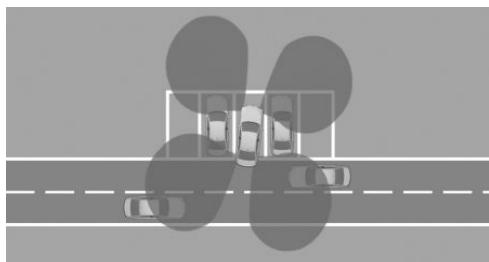
- ▷ If the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- ▷ If the driver is wearing sunglasses with high protection against infrared light.

Crossing-traffic Warning with braking function

Principle

At blind exits or when leaving bay parking spaces, the Crossing-traffic Warning detects other road users approaching from the side earlier than is possible from the driver's seat.

General



The area behind to the vehicle is monitored by sensors.

Depending on the equipment, the area in front of the vehicle is also monitored.

The system indicates when other road users are approaching.

In case of a risk of collision when driving in reverse, the system will provide assistance with an automatic brake intervention.

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▶ Side radar sensors, rear.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment, by the side radar sensors, front.

Activating/deactivating Crossing-traffic Warning

The system must be activated on the control display for the Crossing-traffic Warning and brake intervention to switch on automatically.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Parking" / "CROSSING-TRAFFIC WARNING"
2. Select the desired setting.

Turning on the Crossing-traffic Warning automatically

The Crossing-traffic Warning must be activated on the control display. As soon as Park Distance Control or a camera view is active and a selector lever position is engaged, the system is automatically switched on.

The system is switched on at the rear when reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on the equipment, the front system is turned on when a drive position is engaged.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active when the vehicle is started.

Turning off the Crossing-traffic Warning automatically

The Crossing-traffic Warning switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ If walking speed is exceeded.
- ▶ When a certain distance covered is exceeded.



Warning function

General

The control display shows the corresponding image, an acoustic signal may sound, and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes.

In case of a brake intervention, a message is displayed on the control display, which will be closed after a brief period of time.

Visual warning

Warning light in the exterior mirror



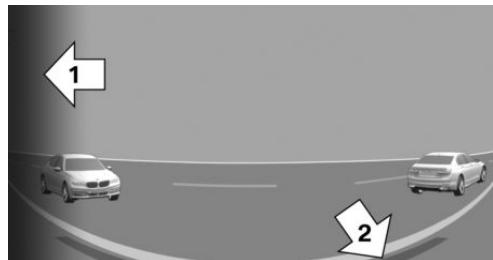
The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if other vehicles are detected by the rear sensors when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the relevant boundary area flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Display in camera image



Depending on the direction of travel, the view to the front or rear is displayed in the camera image.

The relevant boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, indicate the bumper of your vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning, an acoustic signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

Depending on the national-market version, the acoustic signal will already sound when the drive position is engaged.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

The system may be limited by the system limits of the sensors.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 40.

Functional limitations

The Crossing-traffic Warning may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In tight bends.
- ▷ Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.

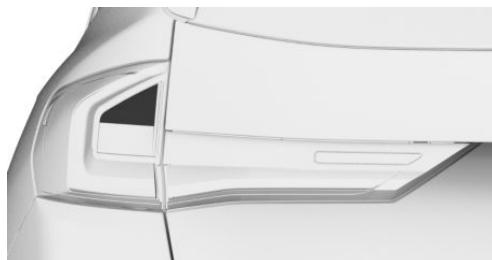
- ▶ Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.
- ▶ If the trailer socket is occupied or trailer operation is activated, the Crossing-traffic Warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

Dynamic brake lights

Principle

The brake lights flash to warn road users behind the vehicle that emergency braking is being performed.

General



- ▶ Normal braking: brake lights illuminate.
- ▶ Heavy braking: brake lights flash.

Shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated.

To switch off the hazard warning lights:

- ▶ Accelerate.
- ▶ Press the hazard warning lights button.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The BMW Drive Recorder saves short video recordings of the vehicle surroundings in order to document the traffic situation, for example.

The video recordings can be saved in different ways:

- ▶ Automatic storage makes it possible to document the accident or theft of the vehicle with the corresponding set recording type.
- ▶ Manual saving of the recording makes it possible to document the traffic situations with the corresponding set recording type.

The cameras of the assistance systems are used for recording, for example the cameras of the panorama view.

In addition, the following journey parameters are saved:

- ▶ Date.
- ▶ Time.
- ▶ Speed.
- ▶ GPS coordinates.

Data protection

The reliability of the recording and the use of BMW Drive Recorder video recordings depend on the legal regulations in the country where the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and for complying with the provisions that apply in each case.

Before using for the first time, the vehicle manufacturer recommends checking that there are no legal or official restrictions on using the system in the state or country in question. Additionally, the legality of using the system should be checked at regular intervals, especially if the vehicle frequently crosses borders.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed of the system. Information about the system must also be provided if the vehicle is passed on to anyone else.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the BMW Drive Recorder:

- ▶ Standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▶ The BMW Drive Recorder is activated.



- ▷ The Privacy Policy has been accepted.
 - ▷ The recording type has been selected.
 - ▷ The recording duration has been selected.
- The following functional requirements apply to the use of the theft notification:

- ▷ The theft notification was activated in the Data Protection menu or in the Drive Recorder menu.
- ▷ Data transfer is activated.
- ▷ The My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- ▷ The My BMW App is connected to the ConnectedDrive account.
- ▷ The Privacy Policy has been accepted.

Activating/deactivating the BMW Drive Recorder

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before using the recording function for the first time.

1. Go to the Apps menu.
2. "ALL"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. Accept the Privacy Policy.
5. "Settings"
6. "Allow recording"
7. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

Automatic recording

The recording of the BMW Drive Recorder is automatically saved if the vehicle sensors detect an accident or theft.

- ▷ In the event of an accident, the BMW Drive Recorder saves recordings up to 30 seconds before and after the save function was triggered.
- ▷ In the event of theft, the BMW Drive Recorder saves the recording after triggering.

Saving takes place depending on the selected setting of the recording duration.

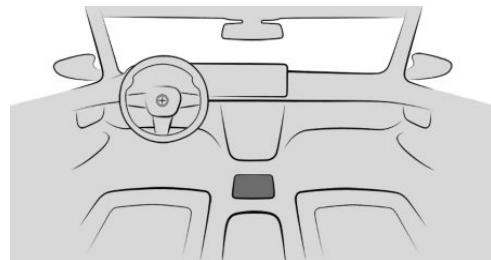
When the alarm system is triggered, a message is sent to the My BMW App.

After saving the recording, a video in reduced quality can be downloaded to a mobile device.

If the vehicle accelerates rapidly, an automatic recording may occur.

Manual recording

Using the button



Press and hold the Park Assist key in the centre console.

Recording takes place according to the set recording duration or can be ended manually on the control display.

Via iDrive

Recording of the BMW Drive Recorder in the vehicle can be started via iDrive.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "ALL" / "Drive Recorder" / "Start recording" / "(vehicle)"

Recording takes place according to the set recording duration or can be ended manually by selecting the menu item on the control display again.

The system saves recordings up to 30 seconds before and after the save function was triggered.

Playing and managing recordings

The video recordings saved by the BMW Drive Recorder can be played, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, video recordings are only shown on the control display if the speed is below approximately 3 km/h, approx. 2 mph. In the case of some national-market versions, the video recordings are only shown with the parking brake applied or with the selector lever in position P.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Drive Recorder" / "Recordings"
2. Select the desired recordings.
3. If necessary, select camera.

Settings

Recording type

The recording type of the BMW Drive Recorder can be selected via iDrive.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Drive Recorder" / "Settings"
2. Select the desired setting.

Recording duration

The recording duration of the BMW Driver Recorder can be set via iDrive.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Drive Recorder" / "Settings"
2. Select the desired setting.

Recording on a mobile device

Principle

Depending on the equipment version, video recordings can be stored directly on a mobile device, for example, a smartphone or USB stick.

The length of the video that can be stored depends on the available memory capacity on the mobile device.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the BMW Drive Recorder for recording on a mobile device:

- ▷ The Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- ▷ The BMW Drive Recorder is activated.

For transferring recordings to a mobile device, the following functional requirements apply to the BMW Drive Recorder:

- ▷ Depending on the equipment version, a mobile device is connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi and Bluetooth audio or a USB stick is connected.
- ▷ The My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- ▷ The My BMW App is connected to the ConnectedDrive account.

Recording

Recording of the BMW Drive Recorder on a mobile device can be started manually via iDrive.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Drive Recorder" / "Start recording" / "(USB/My BMW app)"

The recording can be ended manually by selecting the menu item on the control display again.

Cameras

Different cameras of the BMW Drive Recorder can be selected.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Drive Recorder" / "Settings" / "Cam. selection"
2. Select the desired camera.



System limits

In the event of a serious accident, recordings may not be saved by the BMW Drive Recorder if, for example, the damage to the vehicle is too extensive or the power supply was interrupted.

In the case of USB sticks that have been overwritten multiple times, there may be limitations when exporting recordings.

In case of theft, the recording is only stored automatically when the alarm system has been triggered.

Theft notification and video download may be restricted or unavailable if the Internet connection is weak or missing.

Active Protection

Principle

In critical situations, Active Protection prepares the passengers and the vehicle for a potential imminent accident.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions.

The Active Protection function detects critical driving situations which could potentially lead to an accident. Such critical driving situations include:

- ▷ Full braking.
- ▷ Severe understeering.
- ▷ Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of some systems installed in the vehicle can – within the system limits – cause Active Protection to trigger:

- ▷ Automatic brake intervention by the front-collision warning.
- ▷ Brake power assistance by the front-collision warning.
- ▷ Recognition of an impending rear collision by the front-collision warning.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits may mean that critical situations are not detected reliably or in good time. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Function

Depending on the equipment and requirements, in critical accident situations, the following individual functions become active as required:

- ▷ The windows are automatically closed.
The windows remain open by a gap.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the glass sunroof/panoramic glass sunroof.
- ▷ The sun protection is also closed.

Following a critical driving situation where no accident has occurred, the systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill without the driver having to intervene.

This can reduce the risk of a further collision.

Once the vehicle has come to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Decelerating the vehicle harder

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a standstill more quickly than is possible with automatic braking.

To do so, brake quickly and firmly. This will briefly increase the brake pressure to a higher level than that achieved with the automatic brake function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Cancelling automatic braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to cancel automatic braking, for example if an avoidance manoeuvre is required.

Automatic braking can be cancelled by the following actions:

- ▷ By depressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By depressing the accelerator pedal.

Attentiveness Assistant

Principle

The Attentiveness Assistant can detect the decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long monotonous journeys and recommends a break if necessary.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess your physical condition correctly. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or may not be detected in good time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.

Function

The Attentiveness Assistant is switched on every time drive-ready state is switched on.

Once the journey has started, the Attentiveness Assistant adapts to the driver so that any

decrease in attention or fatigue can be detected.

This process takes into account the following criteria, for example:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for example steering behaviour.
- ▷ The driving conditions, for example the time or duration of the journey.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, the information from the Driver Attention Camera.

The Attentiveness Assistant is active from approx. 65 km/h, 40 mph and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Setting break recommendations

The break recommendation of the Attentiveness Assistant can be switched on and off and set via iDrive.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive:
Menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Safety and warnings" / "Attentiveness Assistant"
2. Select the desired setting.

Display

If the driver shows signs of decreasing attentiveness or of fatigue, a note is shown on the control display with the recommendation to take a break.

The following settings can be selected during the display.

The system is reset approximately 45 minutes after the vehicle is stopped. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

System limits

The function of the Attentiveness Assistant may be restricted. If the function is restricted, no warning or a false warning is issued. The



system may have restricted functionality in the following situations:

- ▷ If the time is set incorrectly.
- ▷ When the speed is predominantly below approx. 65 km/h, 40 mph.
- ▷ If a sporty driving style is adopted, for example sharp acceleration or fast cornering.
- ▷ In active driving situations, for example frequent lane changes.
- ▷ In poor road condition.
- ▷ In strong crosswinds.

sources can be visible when the vehicle is in the standby state.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- ▷ If the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- ▷ If the driver is wearing sunglasses with high protection against infrared light.

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

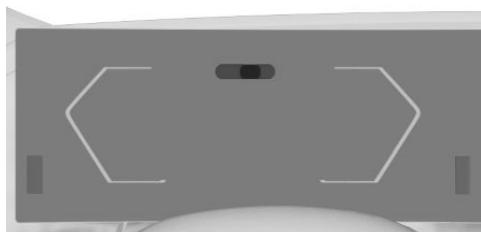
A camera in the instrument cluster monitors the driver activity and, depending on the equipment, the driver's direction of view.

General

For support by assistance systems, the attention of the driver is analysed by evaluating the head position and eye opening of the driver.

To guarantee full functionality, ensure that the Driver Attention Camera has an unobstructed field of view.

Overview



Depending on the equipment, the instrument cluster has up to three infrared light sources. Depending on the light conditions, these light

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Anti-lock Braking System

Principle

The Anti-lock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking during braking.

Steering control is retained even during full braking, which enhances active road safety.

General

The Anti-lock Braking System is ready whenever you switch on drive-ready state.

Malfunction



The warning light in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

A Check Control message is shown.

- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is not available.
- The ease of steering is restricted in the event of full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Brake Assist

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly, Brake Assist automatically provides the maximum possible braking force assistance. This keeps the stopping distance as short as possible in full braking situations. This takes full advantage of the Anti-lock Braking System.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

The Dynamic Stability Control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by brake intervention on individual wheels.

General

The system detects the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- Loss of traction at the rear which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of grip at the front wheels which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at

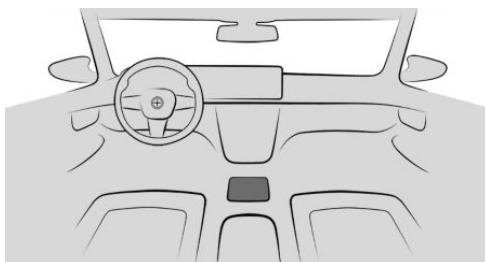
any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with roof bars, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Driving with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



The button for My Modes is located in the centre console.

Activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is restricted when accelerating and cornering.

To support driving stability, re-activate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

1.  Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.
2. "SPORT"
3. If necessary, "Driving dynamics"

4.  Select the icon.

5. "DSC OFF"

When changing to another drive mode, Dynamic Stability Control is activated automatically.

"SPORT": when you switch to this drive mode, the last setting is automatically reactivated.

Displays in the instrument cluster



DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster when Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.



Indicator light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.



Warning light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is being stabilised. Reduce speed and adjust the driving style to the road conditions.



Warning light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is initialising. The driving stabilisation is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light is continuously illuminated, have the system checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Setting for increased driving dynamics

Principle

For a more dynamic driving experience, the vehicle can be adjusted to a setting for increased driving dynamics via My Modes.

General

The Dynamic Stability Control and thereby the driving stability are limited during acceleration and when cornering.

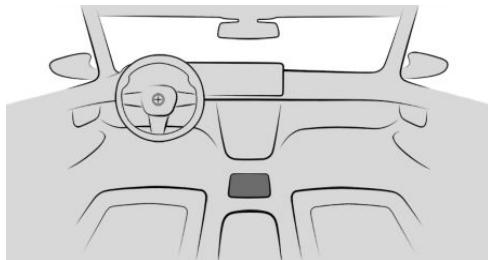
To increase driving dynamics, the following drive mode must be selected via My Modes: "SPORT".

When you switch to this drive mode, the last setting of Dynamic Stability Control is automatically reactivated.

If this drive mode is exited, increased driving dynamics is deactivated and Dynamic Stability Control is automatically reactivated.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 The button for My Modes is located in the centre console.

Activating/deactivating increased driving dynamics

-  1. Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.
2. "SPORT"
3. If necessary, "Driving dynamics"
4.  Select the icon.
5. "SPORT PLUS"

Display in the instrument cluster



The indicator light is illuminated: increased driving dynamics is activated.

Automatic programme change

The increased driving dynamics will be deactivated automatically, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ When the distance control is activated.
- ▷ In case of a brake intervention by the front-collision warning. Deactivate the front-collision warning if necessary.
- ▷ If the suspension control system fails.
- ▷ In the event of a flat tyre.

For further information:

Front-collision warning, see page [180](#).

Drive-off support

Principle

The drive-off support offers the best possible traction when driving off in certain situations on difficult ground, for example snow or sand.

General

The function provides maximum propulsion with adapted driving stability in the low speed range.

Activating/deactivating the drive-off support

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Drive-off support"
2. "Activate drive-off support once" or
"Deactivate drive-off support"

The drive-off support remains active until it is deactivated or the drive mode is changed.

BMW xDrive

Principle

BMW xDrive is the vehicle's all-wheel drive system. The interaction of BMW xDrive and other suspension control systems, for example, Dynamic Stability Control, further optimises traction and driving dynamics.

General

BMW xDrive distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axles according to the driving situation and road condition.

Hill Descent Control

Principle

Hill Descent Control provides assistance when descending hills by regulating vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients, for example when driving off-road.

General

When the system is active, the vehicle moves at a speed set by the driver without the brake pedal having to be pressed.

While Hill Descent Control regulates vehicle speed, the system automatically distributes brake force to the individual wheels. Driving stability and ease of steering are improved. If required, the Anti-lock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

Hill Descent Control can be activated below approx. 40 km/h, approx. 25 mph.

Speeds between approx. 3 km/h, 2 mph and approx. 30 km/h, 20 mph can be set. When driving downhill, the system reduces the speed to the set value, within the physical limits.

Hill Descent Control provides support when driving in selector lever positions D, N and R.

Activating/deactivating Hill Descent Control

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Hill Descent Control"

Hill Descent Control is automatically disabled at speeds above approx. 40 km/h, approx. 25 mph.

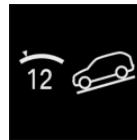
While Hill Descent Control is regulating the speed, the following functions are deactivated:

- ▷ The front-collision warning.
- ▷ The emergency braking function of Active Park Distance Control.

For further information:

- ▷ Front-collision warning, see page 180.
- ▷ Active Park Distance Control, see page 264.

Display in the instrument cluster



An icon and the selected set speed are displayed.

- ▷ Display green: Hill Descent Control is active. The system brakes the vehicle.
- ▷ Display grey: Hill Descent Control is ready.

Display in the Head-up display

The status of Hill Descent Control can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

Increasing or reducing speed

Using the Cruise Control buttons



Press the plus button or the minus button on the left side of the steering wheel.

- ▷ Press the appropriate button to gradually increase or decrease the set speed.
- ▷ Press and hold the corresponding button until the set speed is reached.

With the brake pedal

While the Hill Descent Control regulates vehicle speed, the set speed can be reduced by pressing the brake pedal.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, a message appears in the instrument cluster.

Servotronic

Principle

Servotronic is a speed-dependent steering assistance.

The system provides more steering force assistance at lower speeds than at higher speeds. This makes it easier to park, for example, and provides a firmer steering feel when driving at higher speeds.

Setting

The steering force adapts according to the drive mode, so that a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering behaviour is conveyed.



Driver assistance systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Speed limit warning

Principle

The speed limit warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General

The speed limit warning is repeated if the set speed limit is exceeded again after dropping below it by 5 km/h, approx. 3 mph.

Activating/deactivating the speed limit warning

To activate or deactivate the speed limit warning, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Safety and warnings" / "Speed warning"

Setting the speed

1. To set the speed, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Driving settings" / "Speed warning" / "Speed warning"
2. Select the desired setting.

Setting the current speed as the speed limit warning

To adopt the current speed as a speed limit warning, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Driving settings" / "Speed warning" / "Speed warning" /

Speed Limit Display with no-overtaking indicator

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info uses a camera located near the interior mirror to detect road signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead signs.

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up display and possibly supplementary signs.

Speed Limit Info may also show speed limits that apply to routes without signs if the navigation system has current map data.

General

Depending on the national-market version, road signs with supplementary signs, for example, for wet road conditions, are taken into account and compared with the vehicle's on-board data, for example, the windscreen wiper signal. The road sign and associated supplementary signs are then displayed in the instrument cluster and the Head-up display, if applicable, or ignored, depending on the situation. Some supplementary signs are taken into account in the speed limit evaluation, but are not displayed in the instrument cluster.

In order for Speed Limit Info to function correctly, the current map data must be installed for the country in which the vehicle is operated.

For information on the current map version and map update, see Map update in the chapter Navigation system.

Speed limits for trailer operation are displayed when the trailer socket is occupied or when the trailer operation has been activated via iDrive.

Depending on the equipment, an approved maximum speed can be set up for trailer operation, which will be taken into account for the display of speed limits.

For further information:

- ▷ Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication, see page 6.
- ▷ Trailer operation, see page 312.

No-overtaking indicator

Principle

The no-overtaking indicator considers overtaking restrictions and ends of restrictions that are indicated by means of road signs.

Overtaking restriction signs and end of restriction signs which have been detected by the camera are indicated by corresponding icons in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-up display.

General

It will not display anything in the following situations:

- ▷ In countries where overtaking restrictions are primarily shown by road markings.
- ▷ On routes without road signs.
- ▷ In the case of railway crossings, lane markings and other situations which indicate an overtaking restriction but which are not signposted to this effect.

Depending on the equipment, an additional icon with distance information may also be dis-

played to indicate the end of the no-overtaking indicator.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the camera behind the windscreen.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General

The Speed Limit Info can be shown or hidden via iDrive in the instrument cluster. Depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info is continuously displayed in the instrument cluster.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

To display Speed Limit Info, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED" / / "Show current limit"

Display

General

Depending on the national-market version, supplementary signs and no-overtaking indi-



cators are displayed together with Speed Limit Info.

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
	Present speed limit.
	No data available on the current speed limit.
	Speed Limit Info unavailable.

The display flashes if the detected speed limit has been exceeded. Depending on the national-market version, an acoustic signal also sounds.

To activate or deactivate the warning if the maximum permitted speed is exceeded, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED" / "Warning when exceeding the speed limit."

No-overtaking indicator

Icon	Description
	No overtaking.
	End of overtaking restriction.

Supplementary signs

Icon	Description
	Speed limit with time limit.
	The speed limit only applies in wet conditions.

Icon	Description
	The speed limit only applies in snow.
	The speed limit only applies in fog.
	The speed limit applies for the exit junction on the left.
	The speed limit applies for the exit junction on the right.
	The speed limit only applies when towing a trailer.
	Depending on the equipment: speed limit with unrecognised supplementary sign.

Speed Limit Display with Anticipatory Indicator

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, an additional icon with distance information may indicate that a change in speed limit is ahead. The Anticipatory Indicator must be activated for Speed Limit Assist.

Temporary speed limits may also be displayed, for example at construction sites. Temporary speed limits can only be displayed if the following service is selected in Privacy for the navigation system:



For further information:

- ▶ Speed Limit Assist, see page 243.
- ▶ Data protection, see page 66.

Settings

1. To make settings for Speed Limit Info, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED"
2. Select the desired setting.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Camera, see page [40](#).

Functional limitations

Speed Limit Info may be restricted or incorrect information may be displayed in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Road signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ Road signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ In areas that are not included in the map data of the navigation system.
- ▷ In the event of invalid, outdated or unavailable map data of the navigation system.
- ▷ If there are navigation discrepancies, for example due to changes in road layout.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ When overtaking buses or trucks with road sign stickers.
- ▷ If there are electronic road signs.
- ▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a parallel road.
- ▷ If the road signs or road layouts are specific to one country.

Cruise Control Systems

Principle

The Cruise Control Systems provide assistance when driving, for example, by limiting the speed, distance control or staying in the lane.

The systems are operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General

Depending on the equipment, the Cruise Control Systems include the following individual systems.

- ▷ Manual Speed Limiter, see page [224](#).
- ▷ Cruise Control, see page [226](#).
- ▷ Distance control, see page [229](#).
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see page [241](#).

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the individual systems are enhanced with additional functions.

Some functions can be operated via voice input.

For further information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, see page [56](#).

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Individual functions may malfunction when tow-starting or towing away with activated front-collision warning or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Turn off the front-collision warning and Cruise Control before tow-starting or towing away.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button Function

	Switch last active Cruise Control System on/off.
	Interrupt and continue Cruise Control Systems.
	Select the desired Cruise Control System.
	To store the current speed. Speed Limit Assist: to accept the suggested speed manually.
	To set the speed.

Turning on/selecting Cruise Control Systems

1.  To activate the Cruise Control System, press the button for switching on and off on the left side of the steering wheel.
2.  To select a different Cruise Control System while a system is active, press the MODE button on the left of the steering wheel repeatedly until the desired system is displayed in the toolbar in the instrument cluster.

The system is shown in white if the system can be activated.

The system is shown in green if the system is activated.

The system is greyed out if the system has failed or if the functional requirements are not met.

Icon	Cruise Control System
	Manual Speed Limiter.
	Cruise Control.
	Distance control.
	Assisted Driving Mode: Cruise Control with Distance Control, Steering Assistant with tracking.
	Assisted Driving Mode Plus: system for traffic queues.

Interrupting Cruise Control Systems automatically

Depending on the system, Cruise Control Systems are interrupted automatically, for example, in the following situations:

- ▷ When exiting selector lever position D to P, N or R.
- ▷ When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▷ "SPORT PLUS": When the setting for increased driving dynamics is activated.
- ▷ When braking manually.

Interrupting Cruise Control Systems manually

The Cruise Control Systems can be manually interrupted.

 Press the button for switching on and off on the left side of the steering wheel.

 Press the MODE button on the left side of the steering wheel.

The Cruise Control System is interrupted.

Continuing Cruise Control Systems

 To resume the Cruise Control System, press the button for switching the system on and off on the left side of the steering wheel.

The Cruise Control System is resumed.

Switching off Cruise Control Systems

The Cruise Control Systems can be switched off manually.

 To switch off the Cruise Control System, press and hold the button for switching the system on and off on the left-hand side of the steering wheel until the displays go out.

The Cruise Control Systems are switched off. The Cruise Control Systems switch off automatically when the drive-ready state is switched off.

Adjusting speed values

Speed values for the Cruise Control Systems can be adjusted on the steering wheel.

 Press the plus button or the minus button on the left of the steering wheel repeatedly until the desired value is set.

- ▶ Press the corresponding button up to the resistance point to increase or decrease the set speed by 1 km/h/1 mph.
- ▶ Press the button past the resistance point to change the set speed by 10 in the km/h display or by 5 in the mph display in the speedometer.

Display in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



A mark is displayed on the speedometer for the set speed.

▶ The marker is illuminated green when a Cruise Control System is active.

- ▶ The marker is illuminated grey when the system is interrupted.
- ▶ No marker is displayed when the system is switched off.

Notifications

In addition to the respective indicator lights, notifications are displayed for some functions.

1. To set the scope of the notifications, select the following menu path via iDrive: Apps menu / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "Notifications"
2. Select the desired setting.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The Manual Speed Limiter can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

The Manual Speed Limiter is operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General

The Manual Speed Limiter allows speeds of 30 km/h, approx. 20 mph and above to be set as a speed limit. Below the set speed limit, the vehicle can be driven without restriction.

The current speed or a higher speed that has already been stored is adopted as the speed limit.

The speedometer marker is set to the appropriate speed.

When switching on at a standstill or driving at low speed, 30 km/h/20 mph is set as the speed limit.

When the speed limit is switched on, the drive mode may be changed or Dynamic Stability Control activated.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Switch last active Cruise Control System on/off. Interrupt and continue Cruise Control Systems.
	Select the desired Cruise Control System.
	To store the current speed. Speed Limit Assist: to accept the suggested speed manually.
	To set the speed.

Operation

Switching on the speed limiter

Switch on the speed limiter using the buttons on the steering wheel.

Turning the Cruise Control System on/off

The Cruise Control System can be turned off or cancelled automatically or manually.

For further information:

Cruise Control Systems, see page 222.

Changing the speed limit

The speed limit for the speed limiter can be changed using the buttons on the steering wheel.

 Press the plus button or the minus button on the left of the steering wheel repeatedly until the desired speed limit has been set.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded, for example when driving downhill, no active brake intervention takes place.

When Speed Limit Assist is not active, the current speed can be stored by pressing a button:

 Press the SET button on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Exceeding of speed limit

The system gives a warning if the current speed exceeds the set speed limit.

You can intentionally exceed the speed limit.

To intentionally exceed the set speed limit, press the accelerator pedal all the way down.

The limit automatically becomes active again as soon as the current speed falls below the set speed limit.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning



The indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes as long as the vehicle is travelling above the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- ▷ A warning sounds if you inadvertently exceed the set speed limit.
- ▷ If the speed limit is reduced to below the current speed during the journey, the signal sounds after a little time.
- ▷ No signal sounds if you intentionally exceed the speed limit by fully pressing the accelerator pedal.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

The speedometer marker indicates the status of the speed limiter.



- ▷ The marker is illuminated green when the system is active.
- ▷ The marker is illuminated grey when the system is interrupted.
- ▷ No marker is displayed when the system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
	Indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on.
	Indicator light flashes: set speed limit is exceeded.
	Grey indicator light: the system is interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on the equipment, some information of the Cruise Control Systems can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

Cruise Control

Principle

Cruise Control allows a set speed to be specified using the buttons on the steering wheel. The set speed is then maintained by the system. It does this by automatically accelerating and braking the vehicle as necessary.

General

Cruise Control can be activated at speeds above 30 km/h, approx. 20 mph.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas; for example, acceleration may change depending on the drive mode.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of acci-



dent. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

The risk of accident may increase if the system is used in certain situations, such as:

- ▷ On stretches of road with many corners and bends.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ If the road is icy, if there is fog or snow, in wet conditions or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accident or material damage. Only use the system if it is possible to drive at a constant speed.

WARNING

The set speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button Function



Switch last active Cruise Control System on/off.

Interrupt and continue Cruise Control Systems.



Select the desired Cruise Control System.

Button Function



To store the current speed.

Speed Limit Assist: to accept the suggested speed manually.



To set the speed.

Turning on the Cruise Control

Cruise Control can be activated as follows:

In vehicles with distance control: change the mode of the Cruise Control to Cruise Control without distance control.

In vehicles without distance control: turn on the Cruise Control with the buttons on the steering wheel.



1. To switch on the Cruise Control, where applicable press the button for switching on and off on the left side of the steering wheel.



2. To switch on the Cruise Control, where applicable press the MODE button on the left of the steering wheel repeatedly until Cruise Control is selected.

Cruise Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

The indicator lights are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

When Cruise Control is switched on, the drive mode may be changed or Dynamic Stability Control activated.

For further information:

Distance control, see page 229.

Turning the Cruise Control System on/off

The Cruise Control System can be turned off or cancelled automatically or manually.

For further information:

Cruise Control Systems, see page 222.

Setting the speed

To maintain/store the speed

The speed can be maintained and stored using the buttons on the steering wheel.

 When interrupted, press the plus button or the minus button on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

When Cruise Control is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

When Speed Limit Assist is not active, the current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

 Press the SET button on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Changing the speed

The speed can be changed with the buttons on the steering wheel.

 Press the plus button or the minus button on the left of the steering wheel repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

The maximum speed which can be set depends on the vehicle.

Press and hold the button to the resistance point: the vehicle accelerates or decelerates

without the need to press the accelerator pedal.

When the button is released, the vehicle maintains the final speed. Pressing beyond the resistance point accelerates the vehicle more rapidly.

Resuming Cruise Control

At the stored speed

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed.

Before calling up the stored speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is not too great. Otherwise, unwanted vehicle deceleration or acceleration may occur.

 To resume Cruise Control while the system is interrupted, press switch for switching on and off on the left side of the steering wheel.

Cruise Control is resumed with the stored values.

In the following instances, the stored speed value is deleted and therefore cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

At the current speed

 Press the plus button or the minus button on the left side of the steering wheel to resume Cruise Control at the current speed.

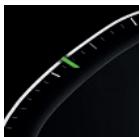
Speed Limit Assist: at the suggested speed

 When a speed is suggested, press the SET button on the left side of the steering wheel to accept Cruise Control at the suggested speed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

The speedometer marker indicates the status of the Cruise Control.



- ▷ The marker is illuminated green when the system is active.
- ▷ The marker is illuminated grey when the system is interrupted.
- ▷ No marker is displayed when the system is switched off.

Indicator light



- ▷ Green indicator light: the system is active.
- ▷ No indicator light: the system is turned off or interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on the equipment, some information of the Cruise Control Systems can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

System limits

The set speed is also maintained when driving downhill. The vehicle may not achieve the set speed on uphill gradients if there is not enough drive power.

Depending on the drive mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the set speed setting in some situations; for example, on downhill or uphill gradients.

Distance control

Principle

With the distance control, a distance to a vehicle driving ahead can be set in addition to the Cruise Control.

When the road ahead is clear, the system maintains the set speed. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If there is a vehicle driving in front, the system adapts the speed of your vehicle in order to maintain the set distance from the vehicle ahead. The speed is adapted as far as the given situation allows.

Distance Control is operated using the buttons on the steering wheel. The distance is set via iDrive.

General

The distance can be set in several stages and for safety reasons is dependent on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill and drives off again shortly afterwards, Distance Control is able to detect this as far as given conditions allow.

Otherwise, independent drive-off, for example, by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the button for the speed setting on the steering wheel.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at

any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

WARNING

The set speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

There is a risk of accident if the difference in speed relative to other vehicles is too great. This may occur, for example, in the following situations:

- ▷ When quickly approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ If another vehicle suddenly veers into the vehicle's own driving lane.
- ▷ When quickly approaching stationary vehicles.

There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Switch last active Cruise Control System on/off.
	Interrupt and continue Cruise Control Systems.
	Select the desired Cruise Control System.
	To store the current speed. Speed Limit Assist: to accept the suggested speed manually.
	To set the speed.

Sensors

Distance Control is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ The camera behind the windscreen.
- ▷ The front radar sensor.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 40.

Use

Distance Control can be used to optimum effect on well-developed roads.

The maximum speed which can be set is limited and depends on the vehicle and its equipment, for example.

Depending on the equipment, higher set speeds can also be selected after switching to Cruise Control without Distance Control.

The system can also be activated when the vehicle is at a standstill.



Turning on Cruise Control with distance control

Switch on the Cruise Control with Distance Control using the buttons on the steering wheel.

1. In order to switch on the Cruise Control with Distance Control, press the button for switching on and off on the left side of the steering wheel.

2. If necessary, press the MODE button on the left of the steering wheel repeatedly until Distance Control is selected.

Cruise Control with distance control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

The selected distance to a vehicle driving in front is maintained.

The indicator lights are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

When Distance Control is switched on, the drive mode may be changed or Dynamic Stability Control activated.

Setting the speed

The speed can be set with the buttons on the steering wheel.

For further information:

Cruise Control, see page [226](#).

Interrupting Cruise Control with distance control automatically

Cruise Control with Distance Control interrupts automatically, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ When braking manually.
- ▷ If the selector lever is moved out of position D.

- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▷ "SPORT PLUS": When the setting for increased driving dynamics is activated.
- ▷ When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.
- ▷ When the driver's seat belt and the driver's door are opened.
- ▷ If the system has not detected any objects for an extended period of time, for example on roads with little traffic and without defined boundaries.
- ▷ If the detection range of the radar is disrupted, for example due to contamination or heavy rainfall.
- ▷ After an extended stationary period, if the vehicle was decelerated to a standstill by the system.

Turning the Cruise Control System on/off

The Cruise Control System can be turned off or cancelled automatically or manually.

For further information:

Cruise Control Systems, see page [222](#).

Resuming Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed.

Before calling up the stored speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is not too great. Otherwise, unwanted vehicle deceleration or acceleration may occur.

For further information:

Cruise Control, see page [226](#).

Distance

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits may mean that deceleration is performed too late. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Pay close attention to the traffic situation at all times. Adapt the distance to suit traffic and weather conditions and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.

Adjusting the distance

1. To set the distance, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "Distance control" / "Distance"
2. Select the desired setting.

Adapting the distance automatically

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: Distance Control can be configured so that the distance to the vehicle in front is adapted automatically within the set distance. The system takes into account the traffic situation and ambient conditions, e.g. poor visibility.

To have the distance automatically adjusted, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "Distance control" / "Situational distance control"

Switching between Cruise Control with/without distance control

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system will not respond to traffic travelling in front of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake if necessary.

Switching the Cruise Control mode

To switch the Cruise Control mode, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "Distance control" / "Switch to cruise control"

The setting is reset when the vehicle is parked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General

Depending on the equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer

The speedometer marker indicates the status of the Cruise Control.



- ▷ The marker is illuminated green when the system is active.
- ▷ The marker is illuminated grey when the system is interrupted.
- ▷ No marker is displayed when the system is switched off.



Indicator lights and warning lights

Icon	Description
	White indicator light: No display of distance control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	The indicator light is illuminated green. Vehicle ahead detected. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected.
	The indicator light is illuminated green: Preceding vehicle has driven off.
	The indicator light flashes grey: The requirements for system operation are no longer being met. The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
	Warning light flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and take avoidance manoeuvre if necessary.

Assisted View

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from Distance Control in the Assisted View is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page [160](#).

Displays in the Head-up display

Set speed

Depending on the equipment, some information of the Cruise Control Systems can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

Distance information

The icon is shown if your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.

The distance information is active under the following circumstances:

- ▷ Cruise Control with Distance Control is switched off.
- ▷ The display in the Head-up display is selected.
- ▷ The distance is too short.
- ▷ Speed above approximately 70 km/h, 40 mph.

For further information:

Head-up display, see page [145](#).

Preventing overtaking

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, Distance Control helps to prevent unintended overtaking on motorways.

The system can be set to avoid overtaking in the slower lane.

The setting applies to speeds exceeding 80 km/h/50 mph.

When the set speed is significantly higher than the speed in the adjacent lane, passing or overtaking may still be possible even if the function is switched on.

At speeds below 80 km/h/50 mph, vehicles on motorways are only overtaken with an adjusted differential speed.

The driver can overtake or accelerate at any time by pressing the accelerator pedal.

1. To switch overtaking prevention on or off, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "Distance control"
2. Depending on the national-market version:
 - ▷ "Avoid overtaking on the left"
 - ▷ "Avoid overtaking on the right"

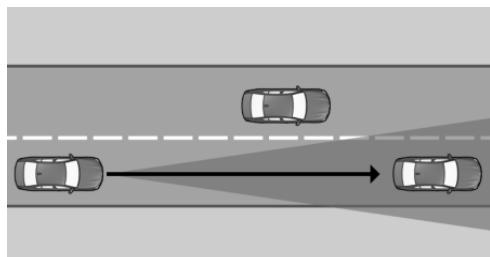
System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 40.
- ▷ Radar sensors, see page 41.

Detection range



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The detection capability of the sensors and automatic braking capacity are limited.

For example, two-wheel vehicles may not be detected.

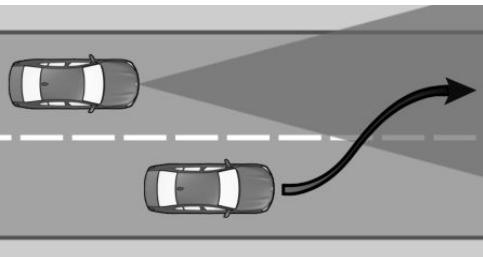
Deceleration

Distance Control does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow road users.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, at red traffic lights.

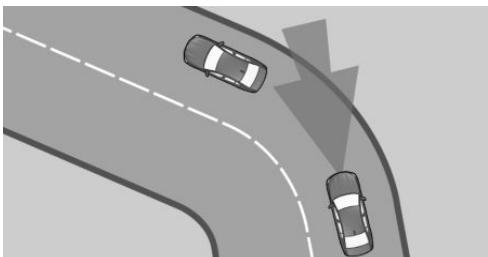
- ▷ For crossing traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming vehicles.

Vehicles cutting in



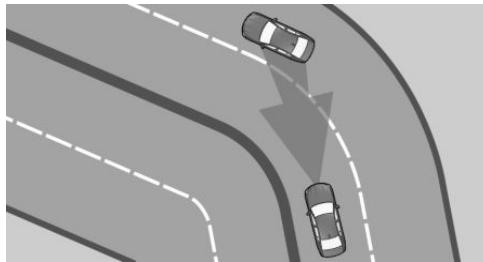
If another vehicle suddenly cuts in front of you, Distance Control might not be able to restore the selected distance automatically. In some circumstances, it may also not be possible to restore the selected distance if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles in front, for example when rapidly approaching a lorry. If a vehicle is clearly detected in front of you, the system prompts you to intervene by braking, and if necessary by taking avoidance manoeuvre.

Cornering



If the set speed is too high for cornering, it will be reduced slightly in the bend. However, since bends may not be anticipated in advance, moderate your speed when cornering.

Distance Control has a restricted detection range. Situations can arise on tight bends where a vehicle driving in front will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When your vehicle is approaching a bend, the curvature may cause the system to respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. If the system responds by decelerating the vehicle, you may compensate for this by accelerating briefly. When the accelerator pedal is released again, the system will resume control of the vehicle's speed.

Driving off

The vehicle cannot drive off automatically in some situations, for example:

- ▷ On steep upward gradients.
- ▷ Before bumps or rises in the road.
- ▷ When towing a heavy trailer.

In such cases, press the accelerator pedal.

Weather

In adverse weather and lighting conditions, system functionality may be limited as follows:

- ▷ Impaired detection of vehicles.
- ▷ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking avoidance manoeuvre.

Drive power

The set speed is also maintained when driving downhill. The vehicle may not achieve the set speed on uphill gradients if there is not enough drive power.

Depending on the drive mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the set speed setting in some situations; for example, on downhill or uphill gradients.

Assisted Driving Mode

Principle

Assisted Driving Mode enhances Distance Control with a Steering Assistant with tracking. The system helps keep the vehicle in driving lane. It does this by performing supporting steering wheel movements, for example when cornering.

Assisted Driving Mode is operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General

Depending on the speed, Assisted Driving Mode orients itself using the lane boundaries and vehicles driving in front.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

When the system is switched on, the front-collision warning and, depending on the equipment, the side collision warning are active.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The information on Cruise Control and Distance Control also applies.

For further information:

- ▷ Cruise Control, see page 226.
- ▷ Distance control, see page 229.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button Function



Switch last active Cruise Control System on/off.

Interrupt and continue Cruise Control Systems.



Select the desired Cruise Control System.



To store the current speed.

Speed Limit Assist: to accept the suggested speed manually.



To set the speed.

Sensors

Assisted Driving Mode is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ The camera behind the windscreen.
- ▷ The front radar sensor.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment:
The radar sensors on the side, front.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment:
The radar sensors on the side, rear.
- ▷ The sensors in the steering wheel.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 40.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to Assisted Driving Mode:

- ▷ Depending on the equipment: speed below 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph or 180 km/h, approx. 110 mph.
- ▷ The lane width is sufficiently wide.
- ▷ Hands are on the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ Sufficiently wide curve radius.
- ▷ Driving in the centre of the driving lane.
- ▷ The turn indicators are switched off.
- ▷ The sensor system calibration is complete.
- ▷ Distance Control is active.
- ▷ The seat belt on the driver's side is fastened.
- ▷ The front-collision warning is active.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment:
The side collision warning is active.
- ▷ With a trailer tow hitch: operation with a trailer or operation with a rear luggage rack must be set on the control display in accordance with the use.

For further information:

Operation with a trailer or rear luggage rack, see page 315.

Switching on Assisted Driving Mode



1. To switch on Assisted Driving Mode, press the button for switching on and off on the left side of the steering wheel.



2. If necessary, press the MODE button on the left of the steering wheel until Assisted Driving MODE is selected in the toolbar in the instrument cluster.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

The status of Assisted Driving Mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The indicator light is illuminated grey when the system is ready and does not perform any steering wheel movement.



The indicator light is illuminated green when the system is active.

Interrupting Assisted Driving Mode automatically

Assisted Driving Mode interrupts the supporting steering wheel movements automatically in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Depending on the equipment: at a speed above 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph or 180 km/h, approx. 110 mph.
- ▷ After releasing the steering wheel.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is turned sharply.
- ▷ When the vehicle leaves its own driving lane.
- ▷ When the turn indicator is activated.
- ▷ When the driving lane is too narrow.
- ▷ A lane boundary is not detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.
- ▷ The Cruise Control with distance control is interrupted.
- ▷ The seat belt on the driver's side is unfastened.



The indicator light is illuminated grey when the system is ready and does not perform any steering wheel movement.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	The indicator light is illuminated grey: The system is ready.
	The indicator light is illuminated green. The system is activated. The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in driving lane.
	The warning light flashes yellow and the steering wheel vibrates: A lane boundary has been crossed.
	The warning light is illuminated yellow and a signal sounds: A system interruption is imminent.
	Warning light flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: The system is switching off or an interruption of the system is imminent.
	Warning light is illuminated yellow: Hands are not holding the steering wheel. System remains active. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
	Warning light is illuminated red, a signal sounds: Hands are not holding the steering wheel. A system interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. The system may possibly not perform any supporting steering wheel movements. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from Assisted Driving Mode is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page [160](#).

Displays on the steering wheel



Analogously to the displays of Assisted Driving Mode in the instrument cluster, the two LEDs above the keypads on the steering wheel are illuminated.

1. To switch the displays on the steering wheel on or off, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Lighting elements"
2. Select the desired setting.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on the equipment, the information from Assisted Driving Mode can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

1. To adjust the level of steering wheel vibration, use iDrive to select the following menu path: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Vibration intensity"
2. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety Systems.

System limits

General

Assisted Driving Mode cannot be activated or used sensibly in certain situations.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limitations, the system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

The information on Cruise Control and Distance Control also applies.

For further information:

- ▷ [Cruise Control](#), see page [226](#).
- ▷ [Distance control](#), see page [229](#).

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ [Cameras](#), see page [40](#).
- ▷ [Radar sensors](#), see page [41](#).

Hands on the steering wheel

In the following situations, contact between the driver's hands and the steering wheel is not detected by the sensors:

- ▷ Driving when wearing gloves.
- ▷ Covers on the steering wheel.

Weather

In adverse weather and lighting conditions, system functionality may be limited as follows:



- ▶ Impaired detection of vehicles and lane markings.
- ▶ Short-term interruptions in case of already detected vehicles and lane boundaries.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking avoidance manoeuvre.

any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The Assisted Driving Mode notices also apply.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Emergency Lane Assistant:

- ▶ Assisted Driving Mode is activated.
- ▶ A traffic queue situation is detected.
- ▶ Driving on a motorway or a similar road.
- ▶ The lane boundary is detected.
- ▶ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Activating/deactivating the Emergency Lane Assistant

To activate or deactivate the Emergency Lane Assistant, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Driving" / "Emerg. Corridor Assistant" / "Emerg. Corridor Assistant"

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the Emergency Lane Assistant is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page [160](#).

System limits

The limits of the Assisted Driving Mode system apply.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Emergency Lane Assistant

Principle

The Emergency Lane Assistant can assist in traffic queues on motorways or motorway-like roads with the formation of an emergency lane. Depending on the situation, the vehicle will be steered to the right or left within the current driving lane in order to form an emergency lane.

The Emergency Lane Assistant is activated or deactivated via iDrive.

General

As soon as the Emergency Lane Assistant detects a traffic queue, a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

The system uses the Assisted Driving Mode sensors.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at

Lane Change Assistant

Principle

The Lane Change Assistant also assists when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

The Lane Change Assistant is switched on or off via iDrive and operated with the turn indicator lever.

General

The Lane Change Assistant uses the Assisted Driving Mode sensors.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The Assisted Driving Mode notices also apply.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Lane Change Assistant:

- ▶ The functional requirements of Assisted Driving Mode are met.
- ▶ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers separating oncoming vehicles, for example crash barriers.

- ▶ Since the start of the journey, a vehicle has been detected at a sufficient distance behind your own vehicle.
- ▶ Lane boundaries that can be driven over are detected.
- ▶ Maximum speed 180 km/h, approx. 110 mph.
- ▶ The minimum speed is country-specific.

For further information:

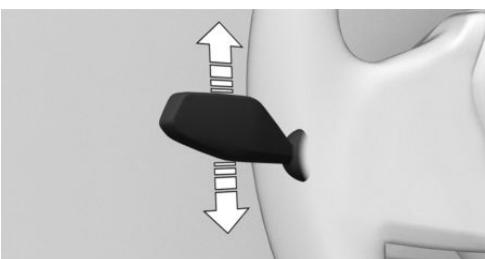
Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Turning on/turning off Lane Change Assistant

To switch the Lane Change Assistant on or off, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Driving" / "Lane Change Assistant" / "Lane Change Assistant"

Changing driving lane

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits a lane change.
2. To change lanes with Lane Change Assistant, press the turn indicator lever in the desired direction up to the pressure point for brief flashing.



Supporting steering movements in the desired direction can be felt a short time later.

After the lane change, the system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane.

The lane change can be cancelled by steering movement into the opposite direction or by operating the turn signal in the opposite direction.



Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Steering wheel symbol and arrow symbol for lane change green: The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel symbol and line for lane boundary on the affected side grey: The system has detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national market version, the information from the Lane Change Assistant is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 160.

System limits

The limits of the Assisted Driving Mode system apply.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page 235.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

Principle

Assisted Driving Mode Plus assists with vehicle control in traffic queues on motorways.

The function makes it possible to temporarily remove the hands from the steering wheel in suitable driving situations.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is switched on or off via iDrive.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The Assisted Driving Mode notices also apply.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page 235.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Switch last active Cruise Control System on/off. Interrupt and continue Cruise Control Systems.
	Select the desired Cruise Control System.
	To store the current speed. Speed Limit Assist: to accept the suggested speed manually.
	To set the speed.

Sensors

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ The camera behind the windscreen.
- ▶ The front radar sensor.
- ▶ The radar sensors on the side, front.
- ▶ The radar sensors on the side, rear.
- ▶ The sensors in the steering wheel.
- ▶ The Driver Attention Camera.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page [40](#).

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to Assisted Driving Mode Plus:

- ▶ The functional requirements of Assisted Driving Mode are met.
Assisted Driving Mode is active and the LED displays on the steering wheel are switched on.
- ▶ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.
- ▶ Driving on motorways or similar roads without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers separating oncoming vehicles, for example guard rails.
- ▶ The lane width is sufficiently wide.
- ▶ Sufficiently wide curve radius.
- ▶ Lane boundaries are detected.
- ▶ A vehicle ahead is detected.
- ▶ Speed below approx. 60 km/h/40 mph.
- ▶ The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is looking at the traffic situation.

For further information:

▶ Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Switching Assisted Driving Mode Plus on/off

To switch Assisted Driving Mode Plus on or off, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" /

/ "Driving" / "Assisted Driving Plus" / "Assisted Driving Plus"

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is automatically offered when Assisted Driving is active and all functional requirements for Assisted Driving Mode Plus are met.

Two green LEDs are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is shown in green.

The system starts to help the driver to control the vehicle.

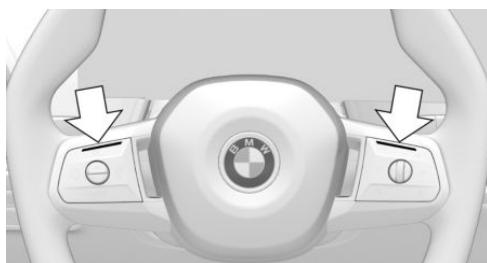
When the system is switched on, the following functions are active:

- ▶ Front-collision warning.
- ▶ Side collision warning.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Green indicator light: the system is active.
	White indicator light: the system can be activated.

Displays on the steering wheel



Depending on the situation, the two LEDs above the keypads on the steering wheel are illuminated.



- ▷ The LEDs on the steering wheel are illuminated green when Assisted Driving Mode Plus is active.
- ▷ The LEDs on the steering wheel are illuminated green when the system is interrupted.
- Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
- ▷ The LEDs on the steering wheel are illuminated red when the system is deactivated.
- Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on the equipment, the information from Assisted Driving Mode Plus can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

System limits

The system limits of the following systems apply:

- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode
- ▷ Driver Attention Camera
- ▷ Sensors in the vehicle

For further information:

- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).
- ▷ Driver Attention Camera, see page [213](#).
- ▷ Sensors in the vehicle, see page [40](#).

Speed Limit Assist

Principle

Speed Limit Assist helps the driver to observe speed limits. A suggested speed can be adopted.

Speed Limit Assist is switched on or off via iDrive and operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General

When the systems in the vehicle, for example Speed Limit Info, detect a change in the speed limit, it is possible to adopt this new speed value for the following systems:

- ▷ Manual Speed Limiter.
- ▷ Cruise Control.
- ▷ Distance control.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode Plus.

The speed value is proposed as a new set speed for adopting. The relevant system must be activated for the speed value to be adopted.

Depending on the equipment, destination system and national-market version, the value may be applied automatically.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

The set speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button Function

	To accept the suggested speed manually.
	Remaining distance display shown alongside the icon indicates there might be a change in the speed limit up ahead.

Switching Speed Limit Assist on/off

1. To make settings for Speed Limit Assist, select the following menu path: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Driving" / "Speed Limit Assistant" /
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Adjust automatically": depending on the equipment, detected speed limits are applied automatically.
 - ▷ "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.
 - ▷ "Show anticipation": current and upcoming speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.
 - ▷ "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
 - ▷ "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assist will be turned off.

If necessary, other predictive comfort functions will be turned off.

For further information:

Speed Limit Info, see page 219.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when Speed Limit Assist and a Cruise Control System are activated.

Icon	Function
	Detected change in speed limit detected with immediate effect.
	Remaining distance display shown alongside the icon indicates there might be a change in the speed limit up ahead.

Automatic adoption

"Adjust automatically": with the selected setting, a detected speed limit is automatically applied to Distance Control or the Manual Speed Limiter adopted.

After automatic adoption, the SET button on the left of the steering wheel can be pressed to switch back to the last set value of the set speed.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually to the active Cruise Control System.

When the SET icon is displayed, press the SET button on the left of the steering wheel.

Speed adjustment

General

For Speed Limit Assist, it is possible to set whether the speed limit is adopted exactly or with a tolerance.

A speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 60 km/h/40 mph can be set up.



The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 60 km/h/40 mph can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. To set a speed adjustment, select the following menu path via iDrive: Menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "Speed Limit Assistant"
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set the tolerance for speed adjustments, which applies to all speed limits.
 - ▷ "2nd adjustment up to \$s \$s": to activate or deactivate additional speed adjustment.
 - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": with activated additional speed adjustment, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 60 km/h/40 mph.

System limits

Speed Limit Assist is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Take into account the Speed Limit Info system limits.

Depending on the national-market version, upcoming speed limits may not be available for application or they may only be available to a certain extent, for instance information from the map data of the navigation system.

Cruise Control without distance control: depending on the system, it may not be possible to adopt speed limits automatically.

Upcoming speed limits can only be applied to the Cruise Control with distance control.

With a trailer tow hitch: speed values to be adopted are limited to the value set on the control display for trailer operation.

For further information:

- ▷ System limits of Speed Limit Info, see page 222.
- ▷ System limits of the sensors, see page 40.
- ▷ Operation with a trailer or rear luggage rack, see page 315.

Adapting the speed to the route

Principle

Cruise Control can be configured so that the vehicle adapts the speed automatically to the route when Distance Control is active.

For example, the speed is reduced in the following situations if necessary:

- ▷ Before turning off.
- ▷ Before a roundabout.
- ▷ Before a bend.
- ▷ In front of an exit junction on motorways or motorway-like roads.

The function is operated via iDrive.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

In addition, the notices for Cruise Control, Distance Control, Assisted Driving Mode and Speed Limit Assist apply.

For further information:

- ▷ Cruise Control, see page 226.
- ▷ Distance control, see page 229.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, see page 235.
- ▷ Speed Limit Assist, see page 243.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply for adapting the speed to the route:

- ▷ Cruise Control and Distance Control are activated.
- ▷ Driving on a motorway or a similar road.
- ▷ With navigation system: route guidance is activated.

The use of navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto may lead to functional limitations, for example deviations from instructions given by the navigation system.

- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.
- ▷ With a trailer tow hitch: operation with a trailer or operation with a rear luggage rack must be set on the control display in accordance with the use.

For further information:

Operation with a trailer or rear luggage rack, see page 315.

Adapt speed automatically to route

To activate or deactivate automatic speed adjustment, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "GB: Geschwindigkeit an Streckenverlauf anpassen" / "Adjust speed automatically"

Adjusting the cornering speed

Depending on the national-market version, the cornering speed can be set.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" /

"Driving settings" / / "Driving" /
"GB: Geschwindigkeit an Streckenverlauf
anpassen" / "Cornering speed"

2. Select the desired setting.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the route monitoring function is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 160.

System limits

Depending on the national-market version or country in which the vehicle is currently being driven, the route monitoring function may not be available.

The system does not respond at all or responds only to a limited extent on the route ahead in the following situations for example:

- ▷ If the position of the vehicle cannot be clearly determined by the navigation system.

- ▷ In wintry road conditions.

Additionally, the limits of the Cruise Control, distance control, Assisted Driving Mode and Speed Limit Assist systems apply.

For further information:

- ▷ Cruise Control, see page 226.
- ▷ Distance control, see page 229.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, see page 235.
- ▷ Speed Limit Assist, see page 243.

Lane change with active route guidance

Principle

Lane change with active route guidance assists the driver when a lane change is needed in order to reach a destination. A warning is displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, a slight jerk can be felt on the steering wheel.

The function is switched on or off via iDrive.

General

The lane change with active route guidance function uses the Assisted Driving Mode sensors.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The Cruise Control, Distance Control and Assisted Driving Mode notices also apply.

For further information:

- ▷ Cruise Control, see page 226.
- ▷ Distance control, see page 229.
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, see page 235.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to lane change when route guidance is active:

- ▷ Cruise Control and Distance Control are activated.
- ▷ Driving on a motorway or a similar road.
- ▷ A situation-dependent minimum speed has been reached.
- ▷ The system detects a sufficiently large gap in traffic in the adjacent lane.
- ▷ A lane boundary that can be driven over is detected on the side of the desired lane change.
- ▷ Route guidance is active in the navigation system.

The function is not available when using navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.
- ▷ With a trailer tow hitch: operation with a trailer or operation with a rear luggage rack must be set on the control display in accordance with the use.

For further information:

Operation with a trailer or rear luggage rack, see page 315.

Switching lane change on/off with active route guidance

To switch the lane change function on or off when route guidance is active, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "Actively follow the route" / "Actively follow the route"

Switching the steering wheel jerk on/off

Support by the jerk on the steering wheel can be switched on or off via iDrive.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Driving" / "Actively follow the route" / "Steering wheel impulse"

Changing driving lane

If lane changes are necessary to reach a navigation destination, a corresponding message is displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, a slight jerk can be felt on the steering wheel.

To change lanes, follow the instructions in the instrument cluster.



1. The system detects a suitable gap in the flow of traffic in the adjacent lane. An icon with a green check mark is displayed in the instrument cluster. The system prepares for the lane change.
2. When a suitable gap has been found, the speed is adapted so the vehicle stays level with the gap.
3. A lane change suggestion is displayed with a Check Control message.
4. If the traffic situation permits a lane change, the driver can steer the vehicle into the adjacent lane.

If the vehicle is equipped with the Lane Change Assistant: once the Check Control message has been displayed, the Lane Change Assistant can be started by operating the turn indicator.

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Function
	Indicates a necessary lane change. The icon varies depending on the traffic situation.
	A green check mark on the icon indicates the active function. A red cross on the icon indicates that the system cannot support lane change.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the traffic situation is displayed

in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page [160](#).

System limits

The limits of the Cruise Control, Distance Control and Assisted Driving Mode systems apply.

For further information:

- ▷ Cruise Control, see page [226](#).
- ▷ Distance control, see page [229](#).
- ▷ Assisted Driving Mode, see page [235](#).

Traffic light detection

Principle

Traffic light detection assist when stopping at red traffic lights and draws attention to when it is possible to continue driving.

Detected red traffic lights are displayed in the instrument cluster and, depending on the setting, can be taken into account either manually or automatically during the journey.

The function is operated via iDrive and the SET button on the steering wheel.

General

The camera near the interior mirror is used to detect red traffic lights.

If necessary, the system also uses the Driver Attention Camera and the information that has been saved in the navigation system.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in



all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

To activate or deactivate the drive off reminder, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Driving" / "Stop at traffic lights" / "Drive off reminder"

Overview

Button on the steering wheel

Button Function



Accept detected traffic lights manually.

Sensors

The traffic light detection function is controlled by the camera behind the windscreen.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to Speed Limit Assist with traffic light detection:

- ▷ Cruise Control and Distance Control are activated.
- ▷ Speed up to approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.
- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Adjusting the traffic light detection

1. To set the traffic light detection, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Driving" / "Stop at traffic lights"
2. Select the desired setting.

Activating/deactivating drive off reminder

With activated drive off reminder, there will be visual and acoustic information as soon as driving can continue at a green traffic light.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Meaning
	Red traffic light detected. As soon as a green tick is displayed after adoption, the vehicle brakes to a standstill.
	Green traffic light detected.
	Grey traffic light: the system is interrupted. If the grey traffic light is displayed with a red cross, it cannot be offered for acceptance.
	The detected traffic light can be accepted with the SET button. A green tick is displayed once it has been adopted.

System limits

The traffic light detection system may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- ▷ When traffic lights are hidden, for example, by other vehicles.
- ▷ At a road junction with multiple lanes where there are several sets of traffic lights.

For further information:

System limits of the sensors, see page 40.

Parking

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Parking assistance systems

Principle

The parking assistance systems support parking and manoeuvring or reversing by displaying Park Distance Control and via various camera views. The parking assistance systems are operated with the Park Assist key or via the Parking menu.

The following individual systems actively support parking or reversing with assistance functions and sensors:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, see page 261.
- ▷ Active Park Distance Control, see page 264.
- ▷ Drive off monitoring, see page 266.
- ▷ Park Assist, see page 267.
- ▷ Reversing Assistant, see page 272.
- ▷ Trailer Assistant, see page 317.

Different camera views and camera perspectives provide good all-round visibility during parking and manoeuvring. Different camera views are available depending on the equipment.

The following camera views can be used in the basic version:

- ▷ Reversing Assist Camera, see page 255.

- ▷ Trailer tow hitch view, see page 258.

- ▷ Panorama view, rear, see page 259.

Depending on the equipment, additional camera views can be used with the parking view:

- ▷ Semi-automatic camera perspective, see page 256.

- ▷ Automatic camera perspective, see page 256.

- ▷ Side view, see page 257.

- ▷ 3D view, see page 257.

- ▷ Car wash view, see page 258.

- ▷ Panorama view, front, see page 259.

- ▷ Activation of the panorama view by activation points, see page 259.

- ▷ Door opening angle, see page 260.

- ▷ Remote 3D View, see page 261.

The camera-based individual systems are operated with the toolbars on the control display. The camera views can be switched on and off by selecting the appropriate icon. Additional displays with parking assistance lines or obstacle markings can be shown.

Safety information

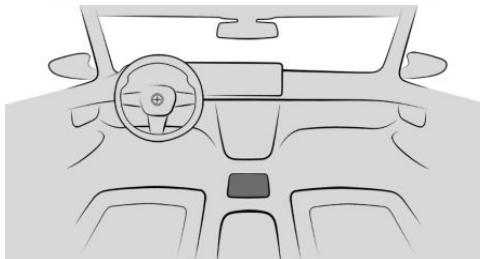
WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.



Overview

Button in the vehicle



 The Park Assist key is located in the centre console.

Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ The ultrasonic sensors in the bumpers.
- ▷ The side ultrasonic sensors.
- ▷ The side front radar sensors.
- ▷ The rear side radar sensors.
- ▷ The front camera.
- ▷ The exterior mirror cameras.
- ▷ The Reversing Assist Camera.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page [40](#).

Go to Park menu

Some parking assistance systems can be configured individually in the Parking menu.

1. To open the Parking menu, select the following menu path via iDrive: Apps menu / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Parking"
2. Select the desired settings.

Display

Turning the display on/off

General

When driving forwards, the parking assistance systems display turns off automatically when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

With the reverse gear

The display is automatically turned on if selector lever position R is engaged while drive-ready state is turned on.

Via Parking Assistant button

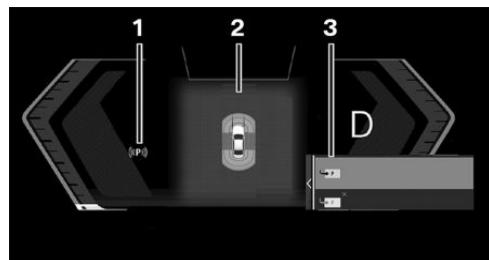
 Press the Park Assist key in the centre console.

Via iDrive

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Parking"

Display in the instrument cluster

The instrument cluster shows displays of some parking assistance systems, for example Park Distance Control or Park Assist.



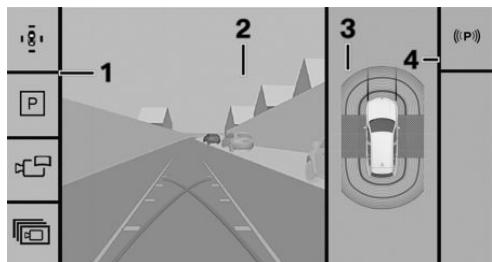
- 1 Status of parking assistance systems
- 2 Assisted View
- 3 Selection menu

Display on the control display

General

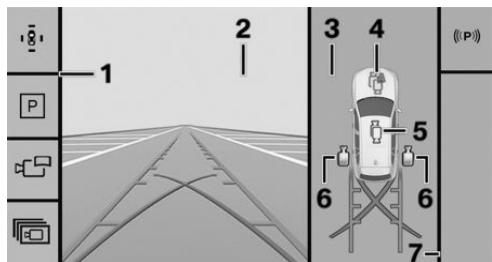
The display on the control display will vary depending on the equipment and the activated parking assistance system.

Assistance view



- 1 Toolbar, left
- 2 Camera image
- 3 Selection window
- 4 Toolbar, right

Parking view



- 1 Toolbar, left
- 2 Camera image
- 3 Selection window
- 4 Automatic camera perspective
- 5 Semi-automatic camera perspective
- 6 Flank view
- 7 Toolbar, right

Camera image

Depending on vehicle equipment, one or more cameras record the area from different selectable perspectives.

Depending on the view, the vehicle surroundings or a partial area are displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, either the automatic or the semi-automatic camera perspective is displayed.

Toolbar, left

Depending on the equipment, different views and settings can be selected via the left toolbar.

▷ "Parking view"

Depending on the equipment, camera images or the view of the Park Distance Control are displayed.

▷ "Assist view"

A stylised display of the vehicle top view is displayed.

▷ "Panorama view"

The display for crossing traffic is displayed.

▷ "More"

▷ "3D view"

A three-dimensional view is shown.

▷ "Trailer coupling view"

The zoom for the trailer tow hitch can be turned on.

▷ "Car wash view"

The display of your own lane can be turned on for easier driving into the car wash.

▷ "Settings"

Settings can be entered in the Park menu.

Toolbar, right

The parking assistance functions are displayed in the right toolbar:



- ▷ Status of the parking assistance systems.
- ▷ Available parking methods of the Park Assist.
- ▷ Functions of the Reversing Assistant.
- ▷ Trailer Assistant functions.
- ▷ Additional information in case of malfunctions.

Status of the parking assistance systems

The status of the following parking assistance systems is displayed:

- ▷ Park Assist.
- ▷ Reversing Assistant.
- ▷ Trailer Assistant.

The icons are shown on the control display in the right toolbar and in the instrument cluster in the status area. In addition to the icon, a message is displayed on the control display.

Icon	Meaning
	<p>The icon indicates the following meanings:</p> <p>No search for parking assistance system services.</p> <p>No other parking assistance systems available.</p> <p>Parking assistance systems have failed.</p>
	<p>Search for parking assistance system services is active.</p>
	<p>White: an available manoeuvre is selected but will not be performed. Functional requirements have not been met or the transfer of functions has been completed.</p> <p>Green: parking assistance system is active. The functions are adopted depending on the activated system.</p>

Additional displays

General

Additional views, for example parking assistance lines, can be shown on the camera image on the parking assistance system display to facilitate parking and manoeuvring.

A number of additional displays can be active simultaneously.

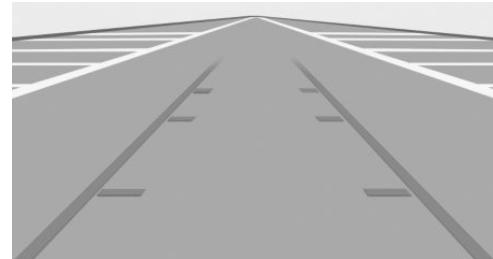
Switching additional displays on/off

The additional displays in the camera image can be switched on or off.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Parking"
2. Select the desired setting.

Parking assistance lines

Driving lane lines

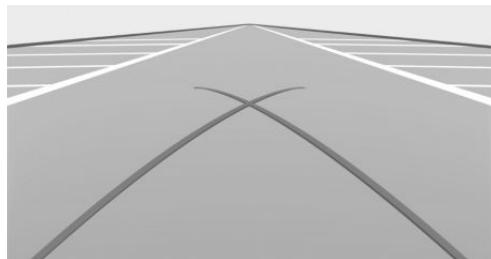


The driving lane lines help in estimating the space requirement when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

Depending on the gear engaged, the driving lane lines are displayed in front of or behind the vehicle.

The driving lane lines are continuously adapted to the steering wheel movements depending on the steering wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with lanes.

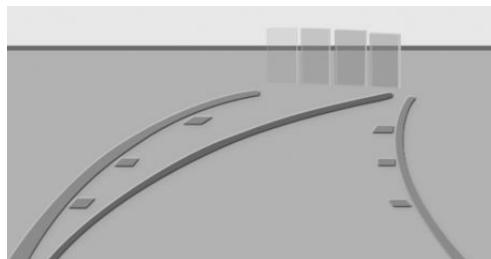
The lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Using parking assistance lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving lane line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



Obstacles are detected by the sensors.

Obstacles detected by Park Distance Control are marked on the camera image.

Coloured gradations of the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

Functional limitations

The parking assistance systems can only be used to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With open luggage compartment.
- ▷ With the exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with grey hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown, for example an open door.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limitations, the system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

System limits of the sensors

The system may be limited by the system limits of the sensors.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 40.

Field of view

Due to the angle of view, the area under the vehicle cannot be seen by the cameras.

Detection of objects

The system cannot detect very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges.

The objects shown in the control display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the objects on the control display.

Projecting loads, rear luggage racks, or trailers can restrict the detection range of the camera.

Malfunction

Failure of one camera is shown on the control display.

The detection range of the failed camera is displayed hatched on the control display.

Reversing Assist Camera

Principle

The Reversing Assist Camera assists in reverse parking and manoeuvring. The area behind the vehicle is shown in the camera image on the control display. The Reversing Assist Camera is switched on when reversing and can be operated via iDrive or the Park Assist key.

Additional displays can be shown in the camera image, for example, parking assistance lines and obstacle markings.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Reversing Assist Camera:

- ▷ The luggage compartment is fully closed.
- ▷ The camera area is clean and unobstructed.

Turning the Reversing Assist Camera on/off

Switching the camera view on automatically

The Reversing Assist Camera is automatically turned on if selector lever position R is engaged while drive-ready state is turned on.

Switching the camera view off automatically

When driving forwards, the Reversing Assist Camera turns off automatically when a certain distance or speed is exceeded, if necessary.

Switching the camera view on/off manually



1. To switch on the Reversing Assist Camera manually, press the Park Assist key in the centre console.

2. Engage selector lever position R.

The Reversing Assist Camera view is switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the icon for the automatic camera perspective in the selection window is automatically selected.

To exit the camera view of the Reversing Assist Camera, select another camera view in the selection window or press the Park Assist key again.

Deactivated Reversing Assist Camera

When the Reversing Assist Camera is deactivated, for example when the luggage compartment is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in grey.

Semi-automatic camera perspective

Principle

Depending on the parking direction and engaged selector lever position, the semi-automatic camera perspective is displayed with the areas in front of or behind the vehicle.

The semi-automatic camera perspective can be switched on or off on the control display.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Switching semi-automatic camera perspective on/off



1. To switch on the semi-automatic camera perspective, press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
2. Select the semi-automatic camera perspective icon in the selection window.

To exit the fixed camera view, select another camera view in the selection window.

Automatic camera perspective

Principle

The automatic camera perspective displays a steering angle-dependent view looking towards the vehicle's direction of travel. This perspective adapts to the current driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view switches to a fixed display of the area in front of or behind the bumper or, if necessary, to the Lateral Parking Aid page.

The Lateral Parking Aid is automatically displayed when the automatic camera perspec-

tive is switched on. This feature shows obstacles located near the vehicle.

The automatic camera perspective can be switched on or off on the control display.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Switching the automatic camera perspective on/off

Switching the camera view on/off automatically

When the display of the parking assistance systems is switched on, the automatic camera perspective is automatically selected.

The icon for the automatic camera perspective in the selection window is automatically selected.

To exit the steering-dependent camera view, select a different camera view in the selection window.

When the reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, exited and the system uses a semi-automatic camera perspective to the rear. If required, select the automatic camera perspective with reverse gear engaged. The automatic camera perspective is retained for the current parking manoeuvre.

Switching the camera view on/off manually



1. To switch on the automatic camera perspective manually, press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
2. The icon for the automatic camera perspective in the selection window is automatically selected.

To exit the steering-dependent camera view, select another camera view in the selection window or press the button again.

Lateral Parking Aid display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

- ▷ No markings: no obstacles detected.
- ▷ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.

Lateral Parking Aid limits

The Lateral Parking Aid only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. Consequently, the markings will no longer be shown on the display after the vehicle has been stationary for a while. The area next to the vehicle needs to be scanned again.

Flank view

Principle

The flank view displays the area at the side of the vehicle to assist with positioning the vehicle at the kerb or alongside any other obstacles.

Flank view looks from the rear to the front. If there is a hazard, it automatically focuses on possible obstacles.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Switching the flank view on/off

Flank view can be selected for the right or left side of vehicle in the selection window.



1.  To switch on the side view, press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
2.  Select the camera icon for the desired vehicle side in the selection window.

To exit the flank view, select another camera view in the selection window.

3D view

Principle

When the 3D view is selected, a circle is displayed on the control display.

Specified perspectives can be selected on the circle.

General

The current perspective is identified by a camera icon.

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Turning the 3D view on/off



1.  To switch on the 3D view, press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
2. Select the following menu path via iDrive: "More" / "3D view"

To exit the 3D view, select another camera view in the left toolbar.

Trailer tow hitch view

Principle

To assist with connecting up a trailer, it is possible to zoom in on the area around the trailer tow hitch.

General

When zooming in, remember that the view might no longer show certain obstacles.

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

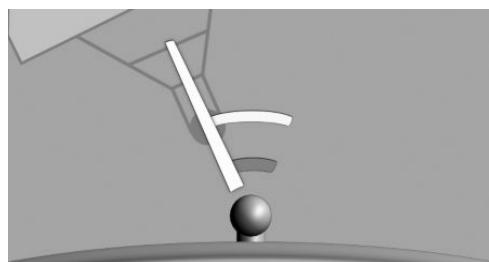
Switching the trailer tow hitch view on/off



1. To switch on the trailer tow hitch view, press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
2. Select the following menu path via iDrive: "More" / "Trailer coupling view"

To exit the trailer tow hitch view, select another camera view in the left toolbar.

Display



Two static circular segments help to estimate the distance of the trailer to the trailer tow hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering wheel angle assists with lining up the trailer tow hitch with the trailer.

Car wash view

Principle

The conveyor car wash view assists when entering a car wash.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

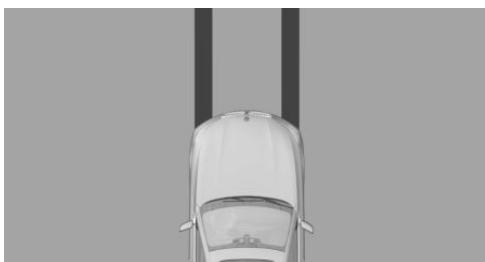
Switching the conveyor car wash view on/off



1. To switch on the car wash view, press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
2. Select the following menu path via iDrive: "More" / "Car wash view"

To exit the car wash view, select another camera view in the left toolbar.

Display



Your own lane is displayed for easier driving into a car wash.

The display can be used to position the vehicle correctly in the guide rails of the car wash.

The vehicle must be able to roll freely while in the car wash.

For further information:

For rolling or pushing the vehicle, see page 130.



Panorama View

Principle

The panoramic view gives you an earlier view of crossing traffic at blind driveway exits and road junctions.

The function can be used when reversing and, depending on the equipment, when driving forwards.

Road users hidden by obstacles at the side may not be seen from the driver's seat until very late. The front camera and the Reversing Assist Camera capture the area around the side of the vehicle to improve visibility.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the function can be activated automatically by storing activation points.

General

The camera image is subject to varying levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for estimating distances.

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Reversing Assist Camera.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, by the front camera.

Switching the panorama view on/off

1.  Press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
2. Select the following menu via iDrive: "Panorama view"

To exit the panorama view, select another camera view in the left toolbar.

Display



Yellow lines on the screen mask identify the bumpers of your own vehicle.

Depending on the engaged selector lever position, the camera view of the Reversing Assist Camera or front camera will be displayed.

Automatic activation of the panorama view

Principle

Positions at which the panoramic view should switch on automatically can be saved as activation points.

General

Up to ten activation points can be saved.

The activation points can be used when driving forwards.

Follow the information in the Panorama view chapter.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply for automatic activation of the panorama view:

- ▷ A GPS signal must be received.
- ▷ A BMW ID or a driver profile must be activated.
- ▷ The direction of travel, the selector lever position and the vehicle angle must match a stored activation point.

Saving activation points

Desired activation points can be saved.

1. Drive the vehicle to the position where the panorama view should switch on automatically and stop.



2. Press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
3. "Panorama view"
4. "Activation point"

The current position is shown.

5. "Save activation point"

The activation points are saved with the following information, for example:

- ▷ Location.
- ▷ Location and street.
- ▷ With a default name.

The automatically created location and street information can be renamed.

Using activation points

Use of activation points can be switched on and off.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" /
/ "Parking" / "GPS-based"

Editing activation points

Any or all of the activation points can be renamed or deleted.



1. Press the Park Assist key in the centre console.
2. "Panorama view"
3. "Manage points"
- A list of all saved activation points is shown.
4. Select the desired setting.

Door opening angle

Principle

Depending on the equipment, the door opening angle indicator is displayed automatically when stationary.

The display helps to estimate how far the doors can be opened in a parking situation.

If obstacle marking is activated, the parking view indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Display



The maximum door opening angles are displayed when the selector lever is in position P.

System limits

The door opening angle display does not warn of approaching road users.

For technical reasons, the display of the vehicle surroundings is distorted.

Even if the door opening angle indicator on the control display does not superimpose any other objects, it is necessary to park carefully next to other objects.

The perspective means that protruding objects located higher up may be closer than they appear on the control display.

Remote 3D View

Principle

The My BMW App and the camera views in the parking view, for example automatic camera perspective, enable the display of the vehicle surroundings on a mobile end device.

The Remote 3D View shows a view of the current situation.

General

For data protection reasons, Remote 3D View can only be run three times in two hours.

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Exterior mirror cameras.
- ▷ Reversing Assist Camera.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Remote 3D View:

- ▷ Data transfer must be activated.
- ▷ The My BMW App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries: a BMW ID with an existing ConnectedDrive account must be activated.

For further information:

- ▷ Data protection, see page [66](#).
- ▷ BMW ID/driver profiles, see page [67](#).

Activating/deactivating Remote 3D View

The Remote 3D View can be activated or deactivated individually or together with other functions.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" /
2. Select the desired setting.

After the activation, Remote 3D View can be accessed in the My BMW App.

Functional limitations

The Remote 3D View may have restricted functionality or may not be available at all in the following, for example:

- ▷ With a door or the luggage compartment open. Areas that the system is not able to record are shown dark on the display.
- ▷ If the exterior mirrors have been folded in manually.
- ▷ When other camera functions are being run in the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle moves faster than at walking speed.
- ▷ In case of missing or weak Internet connection.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle are signalled by acoustic and visual warnings.

Obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors can also be reported.

The range of the Park Distance Control is approximately 2 m, 6 ft, depending on the obstacle and environmental factors.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Approaching at high speed when Park Distance Control is activated may result in late warnings due to the physical conditions. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Avoid approaching an object at speed. Avoid driving off at speed while Park Distance Control is not yet activated.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Side ultrasonic sensors.

Turning Park Distance Control on/off

Switching on the system automatically

Park Distance Control switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ With drive-ready state switched on, when selector lever position R is engaged.
- ▷ When approaching detected obstacles, if the speed is less than approximately 4 km/h, approx. 2.5 mph The distance from the obstacle at which the system activates depends on the individual situation.

The automatic activation in the event of detected obstacles can be activated or deactivated.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" /
/ "Parking" / "Automatic PDC activation"

Turning off the system automatically

When driving forwards, the Park Distance Control switches off automatically when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switching the system on/off manually



To switch on Park Distance Control manually, press the Park Assist key in the centre console.

- ▷ The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.
- ▷ The LED is no longer illuminated when the system is switched off.

If the system is manually switched on when reverse gear is engaged, the image of the Reversing Assist Camera is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

General

The acoustic warning of Park Distance Control signals that an object is getting closer by an intermittent tone. For example, if an object is detected to the rear left of the vehicle, the sound is emitted from the rear left loudspeaker.

The shorter the distance to an object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

An acoustic warning is given when the vehicle is approx. 70 cm, 27 in away from an object and a collision is imminent.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is given sooner, at a distance of approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft.

A continuous tone sounds if the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 20 cm, 8 in.

An alternating continuous tone sounds from the front and rear loudspeakers if there are objects in front and behind the vehicle at the same time and at a distance of less than approximately 20 cm, 8 in.

The intermittent tones and the continuous tone are turned off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on the national-market version, the interval tones are switched off after a short time with the vehicle at a standstill.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

Adjusting the volume

The volume of the acoustic warning can be adjusted.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Parking" / "PDC signal volume"
2. Set the desired value.

Switching off the acoustic warning

Depending on the national-market version, the acoustic warning can be switched off after the start of the parking manoeuvre.

 Press the acoustic warning icon in the status field at the top of the control display.

No audible warning is emitted during active parking.

When the Park Distance Control is switched on again, the acoustic warning is automatically switched on again.

Visual warning

General

When approaching an object, its proximity is displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster as soon as the Park Distance Control is activated.

Objects that are farther away are already displayed before a signal sounds.

Depending on the view, driving lane lines, turning circle lines and obstacle markings are shown for a better estimation of the space required.

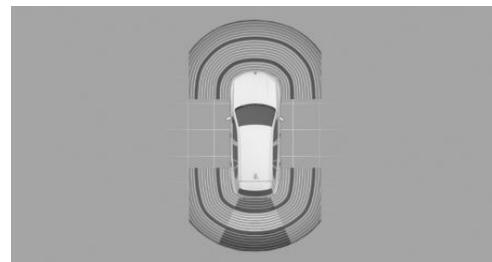
Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is represented by hatched ring-shaped areas. Markings in green, yellow and red indicate when obstacles are detected in the detection range.

If equipped with the Crossing-traffic Warning: depending on the equipment, the display also warns of vehicles approaching from the sides at the front and rear.

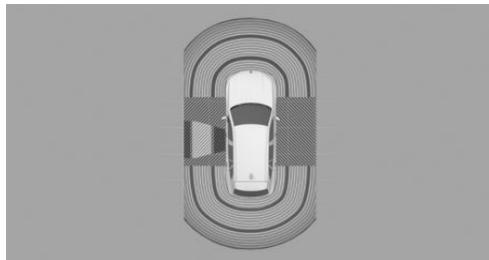
Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

Display

Depending on the equipment, warnings may be displayed in front of, next to and behind the vehicle.



Display behind the vehicle.



Display next to the vehicle.

- ▶ Hatched area: detection range of the sensors.
- ▶ Grey hatched area: no obstacles were detected in the detection range.
- ▶ Coloured markings in the hatched area: obstacles were detected in the detection range.
- ▶ Hatched area interrupted: the area next to the vehicle has not yet been recorded.

System limits

General

The function to protect the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The Park Distance Control does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. The grey hatched areas on the sides are hidden after a certain period of time when the vehicle is at a standstill. The area on the side of the vehicle must be newly captured.

Also observe the limits of the system in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Trailer operation

With a trailer or when the trailer socket is occupied, the rear functions of Park Distance Control are switched off.

Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is shown dark on the control display.

Obstacles next to the vehicle are not displayed. Depending on the national-market version, the rear functions of Park Distance Control remain switched on when the trailer operation is activated.



An icon is displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Towing a trailer, see page [315](#).

False alarms

If the system limits of the Park Distance Control are reached, false warnings may occur.

To reduce false alarms, for example in conveyor car washes, switch off automatic activation of Park Distance Control when obstacles are detected if necessary.

Malfunction



An icon is displayed on the control display.

Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is not shown on the control display.

A Check Control message is shown.

Park Distance Control failure. Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an imminent risk of collision.

The Active Park Distance Control function is available at speeds below walking speed when reversing or rolling back.



Due to the system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

Pressing the accelerator pedal suppresses the brake intervention. Emergency braking is not performed.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the assistance system cannot react correctly if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not use the assistance system in trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the rear bumpers.
- ▷ Side ultrasonic sensors.

Driving off after emergency braking

After emergency braking to a stop, it is possible to continue a slow approach to the obstacle. To approach, lightly depress the accelerator pedal and release it again.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed for longer, the vehicle pulls away. Manual braking is possible at any time.

Temporarily deactivating Active Park Distance Control

After emergency braking, the Active Park Distance Control can be temporarily deactivated on the control display.

1. "Obstacle detected. Emergency braking."
2. "Deactivate temporarily"

If the journey is continued in these environmental conditions, no further emergency braking is performed.

The function is automatically reactivated when the Park Distance Control is switched on again.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle are protected by Active Park Distance Control.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / / "Parking" / "Active PDC emergency braking"
2. Select the desired setting.

Display



As soon as the system intervenes, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General

Observe the limits of the system in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Functional limitations

The system cannot be used in situations such as the following:

- ▶ The emergency braking function is deactivated while Hill Descent Control is regulating the speed.
- ▶ When driving with a trailer.

If applicable, switch off the system temporarily, if needed.

For further information:

Hill Descent Control, see page [217](#).

any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the assistance system cannot react correctly if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not use the assistance system in trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.

Drive off monitoring

Principle

If there is a collision risk, start-up monitoring reduces the drive power when driving off.

General

When obstacles are detected in close range in front of the vehicle, the acceleration will be reduced. If necessary, this permits timely manual braking.

When obstacles are detected behind the vehicle, the system will brake.

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▶ Side ultrasonic sensors.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to drive off monitoring:

- ▶ Selector lever position D or R is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ Obstacles at close range are detected in front of or behind the vehicle.
- ▶ The accelerator pedal is applied forcefully, almost as far as it will go.
- ▶ The accelerator pedal is applied as soon as the selector lever position is engaged and the obstacle is detected.

Turning start-up monitoring on/off

The drive off monitoring can be switched on or off.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" /
/ "Parking" / "Drive off monitoring"

A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically turned on again at the next drive.

Cancelling reduced drive power

The reduction of the drive power is cancelled in the following situations:

- ▷ The accelerator pedal is released.
- ▷ If the accelerator pedal is pressed twice.
- ▷ A certain distance is travelled.

If the reduction in drive power is cancelled by covering a certain distance, the drive power is released gradually.

Display



As soon as the system intervenes, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General

Observe the limits of the system in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Trailer operation

The system is deactivated when the trailer socket is occupied or when the trailer operation is activated, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier.

Park Assist

Principle

Park Assist provides support when parallel and bay parking.

The system also makes it easier to leave parallel and bay parking spaces.

The ultrasonic sensors measure the surroundings on both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly straight forward. Suitable parking

spaces are calculated based on detected objects, for example, parked vehicles. The status of the system is displayed.

The system calculates the optimum parking line for driving in or out of parking spaces and takes control of the vehicle during the parking manoeuvre.

The operating principle and operation of Park Assist are divided into the following steps:

- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Switch on.
- ▷ Parking.
- ▷ Leaving parking space.

The parking manoeuvre during parking is performed automatically.

When leaving bay parking spaces, the vehicle is manoeuvred completely out of the parking space to enable continued driving in the desired direction.

A parking manoeuvre can be manually interrupted and continued.

Individual settings can be made, for example, display of the parking manoeuvre or a sound for suitable parking spaces.

General

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at

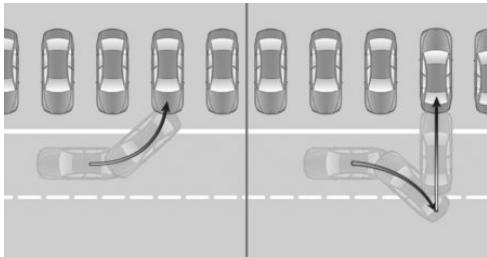
any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

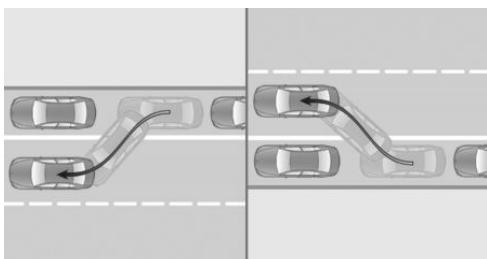
When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the assistance system cannot react correctly if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not use the assistance system in trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.

⚠ NOTICE

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto kerbs. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.



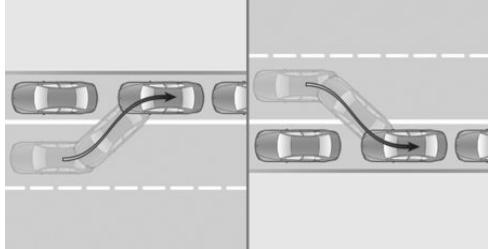
Bay parking: reverse or forward parking perpendicular to the road.



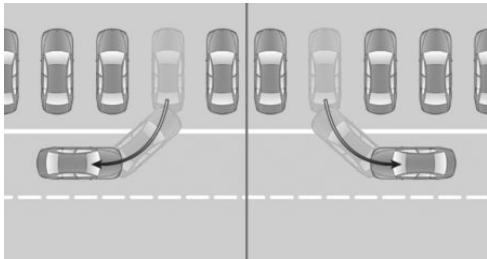
Leaving parallel parking spaces.

Parking methods

Park Assist supports the following functions:



Parallel parking: reverse parking parallel to the road.



Leaving bay parking spaces.

Sensors

The Park Assist is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Side ultrasonic sensors.



Operating requirements

Measurement of parking spaces

The following functional requirements apply to the measurement of parking spaces:

- ▷ Driving forwards in a straight line up to a maximum speed of approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph.
- ▷ Maximum distance from the row of parked vehicles: 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Suitable parking space

The following functional requirements apply to suitable parking spaces:

Parallel parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of a detected object, for example, a parking vehicle: approx. 1 m, approx. 3 ft.
- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approximately 0.8 m, 2.6 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approximately 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Bay parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of a detected object, for example, a parking vehicle: approx. 1 m, approx. 3 ft.
- ▷ Minimum width of gap: own vehicle width plus approximately 0.7 m, 2.3 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.
The depth of bay parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limits, the system is only able to gauge the depth of bay parking spaces approximately.

Parking manoeuvre

The following functional requirements apply to the parking manoeuvre:

- ▷ The doors and the luggage compartment are closed.
- ▷ The driver's seat belt is fastened.

Leaving parking space

The following functional requirements apply to the parking manoeuvre:

- ▷ The vehicle was parked using the Park Assist and an object is detected in the area around the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle was parked manually in reverse and objects in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle are detected. The distance to a detected kerb is at least 15 cm, approx. 6 in.
- ▷ The parking space is at least 0.8 m, 2.6 ft longer than the vehicle.

Displays

General

The current status of the parking assistance systems is shown in the right-hand toolbar, in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the Head-up display.

Different icons are shown on the control display for selecting the parking method.

The sequence of the displayed icons corresponds to the prioritised parking option.

The direction of the arrow changes in the parking method icons when leaving parallel parking spaces.

Icon	Meaning
	Reverse parallel parking, right.
	Reverse parallel parking, left.
	Reverse bay parking.
	Forward bay parking.

Turning the parking manoeuvre display on/off

When Park Assist is active, the parking manoeuvre is displayed in the camera image on the control display.

To switch the parking manoeuvre display on or off, select the following menu path via iDrive:

menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" /
/ "Parking" / "Show assistance info"

Switching the acoustic signal on/off

The acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces can be turned on and off.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" /
/ "Parking" / "Sound when available"

Parking with Park Assist

When parking with Park Assist, a parking method must be selected depending on the available parking spaces.

1. For the parking space search, drive past parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 35 km/h, approx. 22 mph and a maximum distance of 1.5 m, approx. 5 ft.

 Parking space search is activated.

2.  Press the Park Assist key in the centre console or engage reverse gear.
The display of the parking assistance systems is shown.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

3. On the control display: select an offered parking method. If applicable, another parking method can also be selected afterwards.

In the instrument cluster: select suggested parking method with the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

 Green: the system takes control of the parking manoeuvre.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

Depending on the national-market version, an intermittent tone or a continuous tone of the Park Distance Control will sound.

When parking manoeuvre is complete, selector lever position P is engaged.

The end of the parking manoeuvre is indicated on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself if necessary.

Leaving parking space with Park Assist

1. Switch on the drive-ready state to drive out of the parking space with Park Assist.



2.  When the vehicle is stationary, press the Park Assist key in the centre console or engage reverse gear.

The display of the parking assistance systems is shown.

3. On the control display: select the desired parking method.

In the instrument cluster: select suggested parking method with the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

 Green: the system takes control of the parking manoeuvre.

The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

A message is displayed at the end of the manoeuvre.

5. Make sure that it is safe to leave a parking space with the given traffic situation, and drive off as usual.

The Park Assist is turned off automatically.



Cancelling Park Assist manually

Park Assist can be cancelled manually at any time, for example:

- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal and move the steering wheel slightly at the same time.
- ▷ Step on the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

The Park Assist is cancelled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Cancelling Park Assist automatically

The Park Assist automatically cancels the operation in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- ▷ When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- ▷ If the parking brake is applied.
- ▷ When the driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- ▷ With open luggage compartment.
- ▷ With open bonnet.
- ▷ When the doors are open.
- ▷ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- ▷ If you switch to other functions on the control display.
- ▷ When the display on the control display is faded due to messages.
- ▷ On snow-covered or slippery road.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill gradients.
- ▷ If it encounters objects that are difficult to negotiate, for example kerbs.
- ▷ If objects appear suddenly.

- ▷ With insufficient distances, which are indicated by the Park Distance Control.
- ▷ When a maximum number of parking moves or the parking time is exceeded.

When the system is stopped automatically, selector lever position P is engaged.

A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

Continuing the parking manoeuvre

If parking or leaving a parking space has been interrupted, the operation can be continued, if needed.

Switch the Park Assist on again and follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

System limits

General

Observe the limits of the system in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

No parking assistance

Park Assist does not provide assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight bends.
- ▷ In angled parking spaces.
- ▷ In trailer operation.
- ▷ With parking spaces which are marked by lines on the floor only. The system orients itself on objects.
- ▷ For special parking spaces, for example paid parking spaces with automatic locking mechanisms, coin parking, or mechanical parking systems.

Functional limitations

Park Assist may have restricted functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ On uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery surfaces.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill gradients.
- ▷ If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- ▷ If an already measured parking space changes.
- ▷ If there are ditches or sudden drops, for example at a quayside.
- ▷ In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

Park Assist has failed. Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Reversing Assistant

Principle

The Reversing Assistant assists when driving in reverse, for example when driving out of tight or confusing parking or street situations.

General

The vehicle saves the driving movements for the last distance covered. This stored distance can be driven back with automated steering.

The Reversing Assistant takes over the steering. The speed must be controlled by the driver using the accelerator pedal and the brake.

A maximum of 50 m, approx. 164 ft is stored.

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the assistance system cannot react correctly if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not use the assistance system in trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.

⚠ NOTICE

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto kerbs. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Reversing Assistant:

- ▷ To save the distance covered, drive forwards without interruption.
- ▷ To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 35 km/h/22 mph.
- ▷ No trailer operation.

Reversing with automated steering

- To reverse with automated steering, switch on the drive-ready state.



- When the vehicle is stationary, press the Park Assist key in the centre console or engage reverse gear.

The display of the parking assistance systems is shown.

- "Start Reversing Assistant"

The length of the distance covered is displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

If applicable, follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

- Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive in reverse with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

 Green: the system takes control of the steering.

When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle surroundings.

In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Pay attention to the information on Park Distance Control.

- Shortly before the end of the stored distance covered, an acoustic signal will sound and a message is displayed.

Stop when you reach normal road traffic at the latest and take over control of the vehicle, for example by engaging a forward gear.

Cancelling the Reversing Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Reversing Assistant can be cancelled manually:

- "Cancel"



- Press the Park Assist key in the centre console.

Cancelling the Reversing Assistant automatically

The Reversing Assistant automatically cancels the operation in the following situations, for example:

- If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- When shifting from reverse gear to another selector lever position.
- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- After an extended period of time when the vehicle is stationary.
- When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for example with a maximum steering wheel angle.
- When the display on the control display is faded due to messages.
- In case of a slippery surface.
- When the vehicle is rolling, for example on a slope.
- In case of changed environmental factors.
- When the trailer socket is occupied or trailer operation is activated.
- At speeds over approximately 10 km/h, 6 mph.

System limits

- The maximum speed when driving in reverse is limited to approx. 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph.

A warning occurs at a speed of approx. 7 km/h, approx. 4 mph.

If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.

Various factors can cause the vehicle to deviate sideways when reversing along the saved distance covered. These factors include, for example:

- ▷ If the steering wheel is moved with the vehicle stationary while the distance covered is being saved.
- ▷ The speed is not adapted to the distance covered in question.
- ▷ Certain road characteristics, for example gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the distance covered, for example, different tyres or changed environmental factors like the weather.

Also observe the limits of the system in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Adaptive M suspension

Principle

The adaptive M suspension is a variable, mechanically controlled sport suspension.

Setting

The suspension reduces body movements with a sporty driving style or on an uneven road.

Driving dynamics and driving comfort are increased by the control of the suspension.

BMW IconicSounds

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the drive sound of the vehicle can be adjusted with BMW IconicSounds.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "IconicSounds"
2. Select the desired setting.

Air conditioning

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Air conditioning control

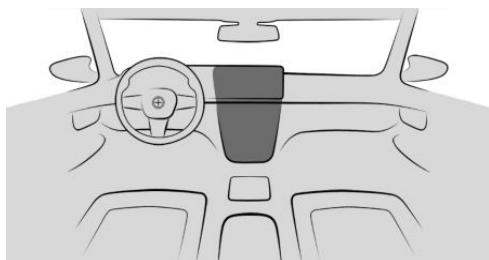
Overview

Functions in the air conditioning menu

Icon	Function
	Switching the air conditioning system on/off
	Automatic programme.
	Temperature.
	Amount of air.
	Air distribution.
	Air conditioning function.
	Maximum cooling.

Icon	Function
	Air recirculation function.
	Automatic air recirculation control.
	Fresh air.
	SYNC programme.
	Seat heating.
	Steering wheel heating.

Buttons, integrated automatic heating/air conditioning system



Icon	Function
	Defrost function.
	Rear window heating.

Go to air conditioning functions

The Climate menu can be accessed via iDrive:



- Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.

Or:

Select the following menu path: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Climate control"

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

The air conditioning system can be switched on or off using iDrive.



- Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.



- Tap the button for switching on and off.

The complete air conditioning system is switched on/off with the last settings.

When the air conditioning system is turned on, individual air conditioning functions can be turned off.

Settings

Individual settings for the climate comfort functions, for example, the intensity of the seat heating, can be made via iDrive.



- Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.



- Tap the settings button.
- Select the desired setting.

Automatic programme

Principle

The automatic programme ensures a comfortable climate, which can be modified with the set temperature and individual settings.

The automatic programme cools, ventilates, or heats the vehicle interior automatically.

General

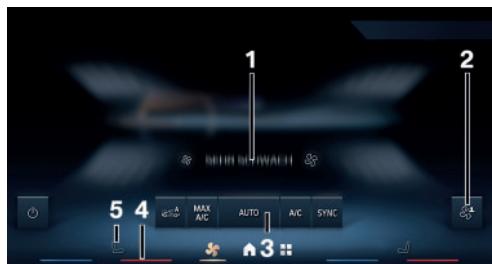
Depending on vehicle equipment, the automatic programme provides the best possible settings for air conditioning functions depending on the outside temperature, interior temperature, sunlight, seat occupancy, and the desired temperature setting:

- ▷ Amount of air.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating.

The automatic programme takes the seat occupancy into account to ensure energy-efficient control adapting to the vehicle passengers.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the automatic programme in such a way that condensation is avoided as far as possible.

Overview



- 1 Air intensity
- 2 Settings
- 3 Air-conditioning functions bar
- 4 Temperature
- 5 Seat heating
Steering wheel heating

Switching the automatic programme on/off

The automatic programme can be switched on or off using iDrive.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the button for the automatic programme.

Setting the intensity

When the automatic programme is activated, the intensity of individual climate comfort functions, for example, the seat heating, can be individually adjusted.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the settings button.
3. Select the desired setting; for example:

- ▷ "LOW"
- ▷ "MEDIUM"
- ▷ "HIGH"

Each level has a specific control range of the intensity.

Based on the stored data models, the intensities are dynamically adjusted during the journey. It is not necessary to manually change the desired intensity to lower or higher levels while driving.

The individually selected settings of the air conditioning functions are stored and automatically set up again, for example, after the vehicle is started again.

Display

The indicator in the menu bar provides information about the temperature differential between the set desired temperature and current interior temperature:

- ▷ The red or blue bar next to the temperature display indicates the progress of heating up or cooling.
- ▷ The desired interior temperature is reached as soon as the bar is no longer displayed.

Active air conditioning functions, for example seat heating, are displayed as icons in the menu bar.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning cools or heats to the set temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

General

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to adjust to the set temperature.



Adjusting the temperature



The desired temperature can be set individually in the menu bar for the driver and front passenger.

- ▷ + Increase the temperature.
- ▷ - Reduce the temperature.

Amount of air

General

The blower-generated air flow can be adjusted individually as needed.

Adjusting the amount of air

The amount of air can be set using iDrive.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. Select the desired setting:

- ▷  Tap the large icon for the amount of air to increase the amount of air.
- ▷  Tap the small icon for the amount of air to reduce the amount of air.

The amount of air may be reduced in order to save the vehicle battery power.

Air distribution

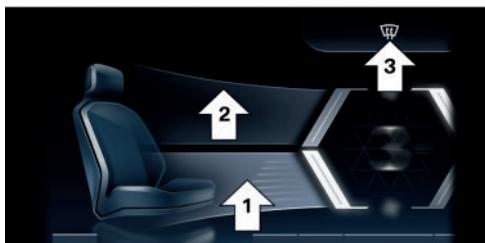
General

In manual mode, the air distribution can be adjusted as required.

Adjusting the air distribution

The air distribution can be set using iDrive.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ Direct the air flow downwards, arrow 1.
 - ▷ Direct the air flow upwards, arrow 2.
 - ▷ Direct the air flow to the windscreen, arrow 3.



The selected air distribution is displayed.

Air conditioning function

Principle

The air in the interior is cooled and dried and then heated again depending on the temperature setting.

Operating requirements

Standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching the cooling function on/off

The cooling function can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the button for the cooling function.

Depending on the weather conditions, the windscreen and the side windows may mist over for a short time after switching on drive-ready state.

Cooling produces condensation, which then exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Principle

The function enables quick and intense cooling of the interior.

General

The system is set to the lowest temperature and maximum amount of air.

Operating requirements

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C, 32 °F and when drive-ready state is switched on.

Turning maximum cooling on/off

Maximum cooling can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the button for maximum cooling.

The air flows from the air vents for the upper body area. Open the vents.

Air recirculation function

Principle

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply of outside air into the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The interior air is then recirculated.

General

If there is condensation, switch off the air recirculation function.

When the air recirculation function is turned off, outside air is directed into the interior.

In the automatic recirculated-air control, outside air is drawn in or the interior air is circulated, depending on the outside air quality.

The interior filter cleans the incoming outside air or the circulated inside air in air recirculation mode.



Turning the air recirculation function on/off

The air recirculation function can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. The current operating mode is displayed in the air conditioning functions toolbar. Tap the button until the desired operating mode is set.

- ▶  Air recirculation.
- ▶  Fresh air.
- ▶  Automatic air recirculation control.

Depending on the equipment, the air recirculation function will turn off automatically after some time depending on the environmental factors to prevent condensation.

SYNC programme

Principle

If the SYNC programme is activated, the temperature setting on the driver's side is transferred to the passenger's side.

Turning the SYNC programme on/off

The SYNC programme can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the button for the SYNC programme.

If the temperature setting on the passenger side is changed, the programme is automatically switched off.

Defrost function

Principle

With the defrost function, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windscreen and the front side windows.

General

The amount of air and air temperature are automatically optimised for the removal of ice and condensation.

The air distribution is directed towards the windscreen and the front side windows.

If there is condensation, turn on the automatic programme to utilise the advantages of the condensation sensor. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreen.

Turning the defrost function on/off

-  Press the button for the defrost function in the centre console.

The LED in the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

Rear window heating

Principle

With the rear window heating, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the rear window.

Operating requirements

Standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.

The rear window heating can only be activated continuously at an outside temperature below approximately 5 °C/41 °F.

Turning the rear window heating on/off

 Press the button for the rear window heating in the centre console.

The LED is illuminated when the rear window heating is switched on.

The rear window heating switches off automatically after a while.

For continuous operation, press and hold the button for longer than 3 seconds. Press the button again to deactivate.

Seat heating

Principle

The system heats the seats if necessary.

General

If a drive is resumed within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, the functions are automatically switched on at the last temperature setting.

Adjusting the seat heating

Automatic programme

When the automatic programme is activated, the intensity of seat heating can be adjusted. The heating power is automatically adjusted according to the set intensity during the course of the journey.

Adjusting the seat heating manually

The heat output level can be adjusted manually:



1. Tap the icon for seat climate control in the menu bar, arrow 1.

2.  Press the button for the seat heating repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

If a drive mode for a consumption-optimised driving style is selected, the heater output is reduced.

Steering wheel heating

Principle

The system heats the steering wheel if necessary.

Adjusting the steering wheel heating

Automatic programme

When the automatic programme is activated, the intensity of the steering wheel heating can be adjusted. The heating power is automatically adjusted according to the set intensity during the course of the journey.

Adjusting the steering wheel heating manually

The heat output level can be adjusted manually:



1. Tap the icon for seat climate control in the menu bar, arrow 1.

2.  Press the button for the steering wheel heating repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

If a drive mode for a consumption-optimised driving style is selected, the heater output is reduced.

Ventilation

Principle

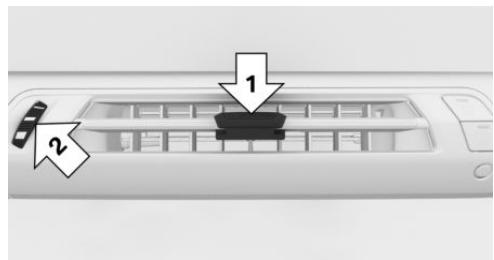
The ventilation system provides individual ranges of adjustment for direct or indirect ventilation to optimise the movement of air inside the vehicle.

General

Open the air vents and position them in a way that ensures effective climate control.

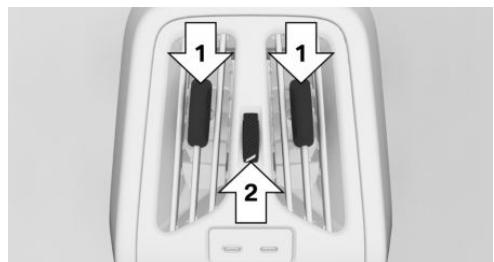
The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the set temperature.

Ventilation at front



- ▶ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- ▶ Knurled wheel for the variable adjustment of the air flow on the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in rear passenger compartment



- ▶ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▶ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the air vents, arrow 2.

Adjusting the ventilation

Depending on the set ventilation, align the air flow directly or indirectly toward the passengers.

Air quality

General

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- ▷ Emissions-tested interior.
- ▷ Interior filter.
- ▷ Climate control system for regulating temperature, amount of air and air recirculation function.
- ▷ Pre-cooling.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming outside air or the circulated inside air in air recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- ▷ Dust and pollen are filtered out from the inflowing outside air.
- ▷ Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- ▷ Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- ▷ Microbial particles, viruses, and allergens are filtered.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the interior filter replaced when the vehicle is serviced.

Pre-cooling

Principle

The pre-cooling allows the temperature of the interior to be adjusted even before the start of the journey. Depending on the set temperature and ambient temperature, the interior is ventilated or heated using any available residual heat from the engine.

General

The system can be switched on and off directly or for a preselected departure time.

The switch-on time is calculated based on the outside temperature. The system will switch on in good time before the preselected departure time.

The system switches off automatically after a while. It continues to run for a short time after it has been switched off.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The vehicle is in rest state or standby state.
- ▷ The vehicle battery must be sufficiently charged.

When activated, the pre-cooling uses power from the vehicle battery. As a result, the maximum operating time is restricted to protect the vehicle battery. After the engine is started or after driving a short distance, the system will be available again.

- ▷ Time and date are set correctly.
- ▷ The air vents of the ventilation are open.

Turning the pre-cooling on/off

Pre-cooling can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the settings button.
3. "Auxiliary ventilation"
4. Select the desired setting.

Departure time

General

To ensure a pleasant interior temperature in the vehicle at the start of the journey, it is possible to set different departure times.

- ▷ One-off departure time: the time can be set.

The system is activated once.

- ▷ Departure time with day of the week: the time and day of the week can be set.
- The system is switched on before the set departure time on the required days of the week.

Preselection of departure time is done in two stages:

- ▷ Set the departure times.
- ▷ Activate the departure time.

At least 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the scheduled departure time, so the climate control has enough time to work.

Setting the departure time

The departure time can be set using iDrive.

-  1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
-  2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Auxiliary ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the required departure time.
6. Set the desired departure time.
7. Select the day of the week if necessary.

Activating the departure time

The departure time can be activated via iDrive:

-  1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
-  2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Auxiliary ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the required departure time.

Activating with the My BMW App

Depending on the equipment, the My BMW App with remote function can be used to switch on the pre-cooling via a preselected departure time or directly.

Pre-conditioning via Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or warms the interior to a comfortable temperature before the start of a journey. The system does this by automatically cooling, ventilating or heating depending on the internal, external and set desired temperature. Any snow and ice can be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically for this purpose and lets it run for a limited time.

Safety information

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to pollute the area around the vehicle or enter it. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces or spaces with inadequate ventilation, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on the pre-conditioning in enclosed or poorly ventilated spaces, for example closed garages.

WARNING

When the pre-conditioning is operating, high temperatures can be generated under the body, for example because of the exhaust system. If flammable materials come into

contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials may ignite. There is a risk of fire. Make sure that no flammable materials, for example leaves, grass, gas, petrol, oil or other flammable objects, can come into contact with vehicle parts when the pre-conditioning is operating.

Operating requirements

- ▶ The vehicle is in rest state or standby state.
- ▶ Battery must be sufficiently charged.
- ▶ Fuel tank capacity is sufficient.
- ▶ Bonnet is closed.
- ▶ Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.
- ▶ Ventilation air vents are open.

Enabling automatic engine start

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system. This enables the engine to switch on automatically in order to control the interior climate.

Automatic engine start can be enabled via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Remote Engine Start"
5. "Start engine for climate cont."
6. Confirm the disclaimer.

Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

General

For safety reasons, the system switches off automatically after 15 minutes at the latest.

The system can be switched on a maximum of twice in succession.

The system will be available again once the drive-ready state has been activated and deactivated again.

Switching on via iDrive

Pre-conditioning can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Start now"

Switching on/off using the vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.

 Press the vehicle key button three times within 1 second.

After the vehicle key is pressed, it will take around 3 seconds for the engine to switch on.

To switch the system off, press the button again three times.

Switching off using the Start/Stop button

The system can be switched off directly by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal.

Air conditioning for departure time

General

To ensure a pleasant interior temperature in the vehicle at the start of the journey, it is possible to set scheduled departure times in the system.



- ▷ One-off departure time: the scheduled departure time can be set.
The system is switched on as a one-off.
- ▷ Departure time with day of the week: the scheduled departure time and day of the week can be set.

Preselection of departure time is done in two stages:

- ▷ Set the departure times.
- ▷ Activate the departure time.

The system is automatically activated a few minutes before the set departure time. The system remains switched on until just after the set departure time.

For safety reasons, climate control for departure time is only possible once.

The system will be available again once the drive-ready state has been activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information regarding the intended use of the vehicle.

For further information:

Your own safety, see page 9.

Setting the departure time

The departure time can be set using iDrive.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select the day of the week if necessary.

Activating the departure time

The departure time can be activated via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the required departure time.

Display



In the instrument cluster:

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Vehicle acknowledgement signals

The system switch-on is acknowledged by two flashes.

The side lights remain switched on while the system is switched on.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Sun visor

Glare protection

Fold the sun visor downwards or upwards.

Protection from glare at the side

Folding the sun visor out

1. Fold down the sun visor.
2. Detach the sun visor from its holder and pivot it sideways to the side window.

Folding the sun visor in

To close the sun visor, proceed in reverse order.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located behind a cover in the sun visor.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

General

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 V.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices and cables, for example portable navigation devices, that are located in the deployment range of the airbags may impede airbag deployment or be thrown around the vehicle interior when the airbag is deployed. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the deployment range of the airbags.

NOTICE

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. After using the socket, re-fit the cigarette lighter or socket cover.



Front centre console



There is a socket in the centre console. Pull off the cover.

Inside the luggage compartment



There is a socket on the right side of the luggage compartment. Open the cover.

USB port

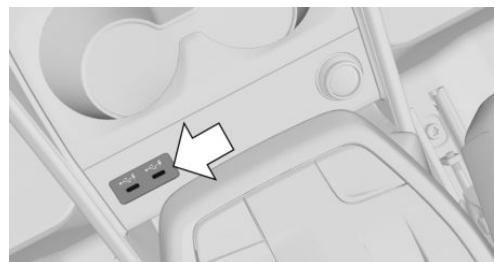
General

Please comply with the notes on connecting mobile devices to the USB port in the chapter on USB connections.

For further information:

For information on USB connection, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

In the front centre console



There are two USB ports in the centre console.
Properties:

- ▷ USB port type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices and transferring data.
- ▷ Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

In the rear centre console



There are two USB ports in the rear centre console.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray allows wireless charging of mobile phones and other mobile devices certified according to the Qi standard.

General

Depending on the mobile device, quick charging functions are supported.

The integrated fan allows cooling of the device being charged.

When inserting the device to be charged, make sure that there are no objects in the wireless charging tray together with the device to be charged.

The charging process is displayed as follows:

- ▷  Charge indicator on the control display.
- ▷ Illumination of the dock area.

Safety information

WARNING

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects that are in the tray together with the device can become very hot. If storage media or electronic cards, for example, smart cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for transmitting signals, are located in the tray together with the device, their function may be impaired. There is a danger of injury or material damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects in the tray together with the device.

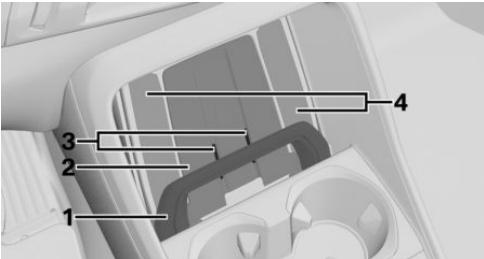
NOTICE

The tray is designed for mobile phones up to a certain size. Using excessive force to insert a mobile phone may damage the tray or the mobile phone. There is a risk of material

damage. Observe the maximum dimensions for the mobile phone. Do not force the mobile phone into the tray.

Overview

Dock in the centre console:



- 1 Holding clip
- 2 Dock surface
- 3 Fan
- 4 Illumination of the dock area

Operating requirements

- ▷ The device to be charged must have been certified according to the Qi standard.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Charging function is turned on.
- ▷ The mobile phone cannot exceed a maximum size of approx. 170 x 85 x 18 mm, 6.69 x 3.34 x 0.7 in.
- ▷ Protective sleeves and covers must be suitable for wireless charging.
- ▷ The mobile phone to be charged is positioned upright in the middle of the storage tray. The display of the mobile phone faces upwards.

Switching the charging function on/off

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "Wireless charging tray" / "Wireless charging"

Inserting/removing the mobile phone



Insert the mobile phone vertically and centrally behind the holding clip and slide it down as far as the limit position. The display of the mobile phone must be facing upwards.

To remove, pull the mobile phone out behind the holding clip.

Depending on the thickness of the mobile phone, it may be necessary to open the holding clip during insertion and removal.

Opening/closing the holding clip



To make it easier to insert and remove a mobile phone, the holding clip can be opened.

To open, swing out the holding clip at the upper edge until it clicks into place.

To close, push the holding clip out of the latch mechanism.

Forgotten phone warning

General

A warning can be issued if a mobile phone with Qi certification has been left in the wireless charging tray when exiting the vehicle.

The forgotten phone warning is shown in the instrument cluster.

Enabling/disabling the forgotten warning

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "System settings" / "Wireless charging tray" / "Mobile phone reminder"

System limits

The charging current may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- ▷ Due to excessive temperatures of the tray and mobile phone.
- ▷ When there are objects between the mobile phone and wireless charging tray.
- ▷ If storage media or electronic cards, for example, chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, are located between the mobile phone and the wireless charging tray.
- ▷ By protective sleeves and covers that exceed a thickness of 2 mm, 0.07 in.
- ▷ By protective sleeves and covers made of unsuitable material, e.g. with magnetic parts.
- ▷ By add-on parts on the mobile phone, e.g. holders.
- ▷ By settings on the mobile phone, for example for charging. Follow the relevant instructions on the control display and in the instructions for the mobile phone, if applicable.

Interior camera

Principle

The interior camera can be used to take media recordings of the vehicle interior.

General

The interior camera can enable the following functions:

- ▷ Interior camera.

Pictures can be taken, stored and displayed.

- ▷ Remote Inside View.

The vehicle interior can be recorded using the My BMW App.

- ▷ Anti-theft recorder.

If the alarm system is triggered, the vehicle interior is automatically recorded. The media recording can be displayed via the My BMW App.

Data protection

General

The reliability of the recording and the use of media recordings depend on the legal regulations in the country where the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and for complying with the provisions that apply in each case.

Before using for the first time, the vehicle manufacturer recommends checking that there are no legal or official restrictions on using the system in the state or country in question. Additionally, the legality of using the system should be checked at regular intervals, especially if the vehicle frequently crosses borders.

Other users and passengers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. Information about the system must also be provided if the vehicle is passed on to anyone else.

Data transfer and data storage

Data transfer and data storage of the media recordings depends on the recording function.

Interior camera:

- ▷ Data transfer to a mobile device, connection to the vehicle via Wi-Fi.
- ▷ Data is stored in the vehicle and is assigned to the BMW ID or a driver profile.

Remote Inside View:

- ▷ Data transfer with the My BMW App to a mobile device, connection with the ConnectedDrive account.
- ▷ Data storage takes place in the My BMW App and after the data transfer to the mobile device.

Anti-theft recorder:

- ▷ Data transfer with the My BMW App to a mobile device, connection with the ConnectedDrive account.
- ▷ Data is stored in the vehicle and after the data transfer to the mobile device.

More information on the scope and content of data processing is available on the Internet in the ConnectedDrive data protection notes / service descriptions.

Operating requirements

Interior camera:

- ▷ Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- ▷ The camera is activated.

To send media recordings to mobile devices:

- ▷ Data transfer is activated.
- ▷ Mobile device is connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi.

Remote Inside View/Anti-theft recorder:

- ▷ Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- ▷ My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- ▷ My BMW App is linked with the ConnectedDrive account.



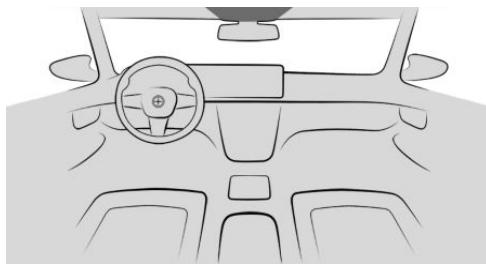
- ▷ The vehicle is locked and parked.
- ▷ Anti-theft recorder: equipped with alarm system.

Ensure that the faces of the passengers are visible and are not partially or completely covered, for example by face masks.

For further information:

Data protection, see page [66](#).

Overview



The interior camera is located on the headliner.

For further information:

Around the headliner, see page [39](#).

Activating/deactivating interior camera

Prior to the first use of the interior camera, the recording function and data transfer must be activated, if necessary. To do this, confirm the query on the control display.

Observe the applicable statutory regulations.

The recording function or data transfer can be deactivated and activated.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Interior camera" / "Settings"
2. Select the desired setting.

Interior camera

Recording mode

Recording mode	Function
"Single photo"	Shortly after triggering, a photo will be taken.
"Smile"	When the system detects a smile, a picture will be taken.
"Self-timer (3 sec.)"	After the timer has elapsed, a photo will be taken.
"Burst mode"	Shortly after triggering, a series of pictures will be taken.

Take picture

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Interior camera" / "Photo"
2. Select desired recording mode.
3. Trigger photo capture.

Depending on the selected recording mode, a photo recording is made shortly after triggering, when a smile is recognised or after the timer has elapsed.

For burst shots, the series of pictures will be displayed as a preview.

Viewing and managing media recordings

Saved media recordings can be displayed, sent, and deleted in the vehicle.

In some national-market versions, media recordings on the control display are only dis-

played up to approx. 3 km/h, approx. 2 mph for your own safety.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Interior camera" / "Gallery"
2. Select the desired media recording.
3. Select the desired setting.

Scan the QR code shown on the display to send media recordings to a mobile device. The media recording is sent when the pop-up opens on the mobile device. The mobile device must be connected to the vehicle via WiFi.

Settings

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "Interior camera" / "Settings"
2. Select the desired setting.

Remote Inside View

Media recordings of the vehicle interior can be displayed on a mobile device with the My BMW App in order to check the vehicle interior, for example, for forgotten objects.

Anti-theft recorder

If the alarm system is triggered, the vehicle interior is automatically recorded. The My BMW App provides a notification about the media recording. The media recording can be displayed on the mobile device.

Up to three media recordings are stored in the vehicle and synchronised with the My BMW App. The media recordings saved in the vehicle are deleted when the vehicle is reset to its factory settings.

Occupying the seats

The interior camera is also used for the detection of occupied seats.

When all doors are closed, the interior camera regularly turns on automatically. The sys-

tem analyses the interior to detect occupied seats. No recordings are made. While the interior camera is active, two infrared light sources next to the camera lens light up. The infrared light sources can be visible depending on the light conditions.



Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Safety information

WARNING

Devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, e.g. mobile phones, or loose objects can be thrown around the interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident, or when braking or performing evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Secure devices connected to the vehicle with a cable or loose objects.

NOTICE

Anti-slip mats can damage the instrument panel. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use anti-slip mats.

Glove compartment

Safety information

WARNING

The glove compartment protrudes into the interior when it is open. Objects in the glove compartment may be thrown into the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury. Immediately close the glove compartment after using it.

Opening the glove compartment



Pull the handle.

Storage compartments in the doors

General

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Breakable objects, for example glass bottles or glasses, may get broken in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. Splinters may scatter throughout the interior. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Do not use breakable objects during a journey. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartments in the centre console

There are storage compartments in the centre console.

For further information:

Wireless charging tray, see page [290](#).

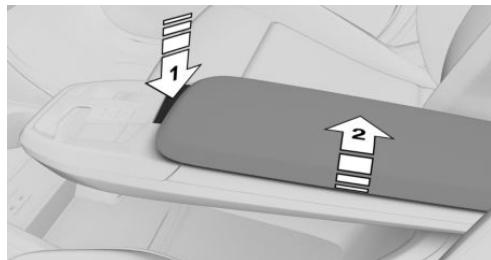
Front centre armrest

General

There is a storage compartment in the centre armrest between the seats.

Opening the centre armrest

1. Press the button on the centre armrest, arrow 1.



2. Open the lid, arrow 2.

Close the centre armrest

Close the cover.

Cup holder front

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. Spilt liquids can distract the driver from the traffic situation and lead to an accident. Hot beverages may damage the cup holders or cause scalding. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatterproof containers. Do not transport hot drinks.

Overview



There are two cup holders in the centre console.



Cup holder rear

Safety information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. Spilt liquids can distract the driver from the traffic situation and lead to an accident. Hot beverages may damage the cup holders or cause scalding. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatterproof containers. Do not transport hot drinks.

Safety information

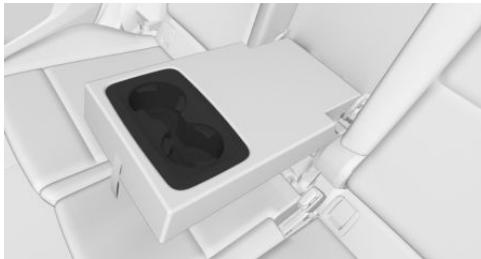
WARNING

Items of clothing on the coat hooks can impair visibility when driving. There is a risk of accident. Hang items of clothing from the coat hooks in such a way that they do not obstruct visibility when driving.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the coat hooks can present a danger, for example if objects are thrown around as a result of braking or avoidance manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for example items of clothing, on the coat hooks.

Overview



There are two cup holders in the centre armrest.

Coat hooks

General

The coat hooks are located on the grab handles in the rear.

Luggage compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Loading

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

A high total weight can make the tyres overheat, causing internal damage and a sudden tyre pressure loss. Handling characteristics may be adversely affected, for example reduced directional stability, longer stopping distance and altered steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident. Please comply with the permitted load index of the tyre, and do not exceed the permitted total weight.

⚠ WARNING

If the permitted total weight and the permitted axle loads are exceeded, the operational safety of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. There is a risk of accident. Do not exceed the permitted total weight and permitted axle loads.

⚠ WARNING

Devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, e.g. mobile phones, or loose objects can be thrown around the interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident, or when braking or performing evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Secure devices connected to the vehicle with a cable or loose objects.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly stowed objects may slip or be thrown into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. Vehicle occupants could be struck and injured. There is a danger of injury. Stow and secure objects and the load correctly.

⚠ NOTICE

Liquids in the luggage compartment may cause damage. There is a risk of material damage. Ensure that no liquids leak out into the luggage compartment.

Stowing and securing loads in the vehicle

- ▷ Wrap protective material around any sharp corners and edges on the load.
- ▷ Do not stack loads above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Fully fold down the rear seat backrests if stowing a large load.
- ▷ Secure load-securing equipment to the lashing eyes in the luggage compartment.



- ▶ Use the luggage compartment partition net to protect the vehicle passengers depending on the equipment. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate the luggage compartment partition net.
- ▶ Small and lightweight load: secure with tensioning straps or retaining straps or with a luggage compartment net.
- ▶ Large and heavy loads: secure with lashing straps.
- ▶ Very heavy loads: stow as far forward as possible, low down and directly behind the rear seat backrests. If there are no passengers on the rear seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.

Lashing eyes in the luggage compartment

General

Depending on the equipment, the lashing eyes can be found in the luggage compartment.

Load-securing equipment, for example lashing straps, tensioning straps, retaining straps or luggage compartment nets, must be secured to the lashing eyes.

Overview



The lashing eyes are located on the side panels in the luggage compartment.

Multifunction hook

General

There are multifunction hooks on the left and right side in the luggage compartment.

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect use of the multifunction hook may present a danger, for example if objects are flung around when performing braking and avoidance manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Only hang lightweight objects from the multifunction hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the luggage compartment if suitably secured.

Net

Smaller objects can be stowed in the net on the left-hand side. Move the net down to transport larger objects.

Side storage compartment, right

There is a storage compartment on the right side of the luggage compartment.

Luggage compartment floor

General

There is a storage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

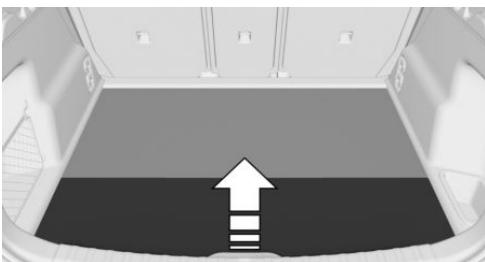
Incorrect use of the luggage compartment floor can present a danger, for example, if objects are thrown around in the event of braking and avoidance manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury or material damage.

- ▷ Do not use the luggage compartment floor to separate the luggage compartment and vehicle interior in the sense of a partition net.
- ▷ Only use the luggage compartment floor in the folded-up position when the rear seat backrests are folded up and locked.
- ▷ Fold down the luggage compartment floor before driving off.
- ▷ Always secure the load to prevent slipping, for example with tensioning or lashing straps and the lashing eyes.

⚠ NOTICE

The storage space under the luggage compartment floor is only suitable for soft objects. Hard objects may damage the vehicle electrics in the event of an accident. There is a risk of material damage. Only stow soft objects under the luggage compartment floor.

Opening the storage compartment



Grip the luggage compartment floor at the edge and fold it forwards.

Folded up position

Without mild hybrid technology:



Fold the folded luggage compartment floor upwards.

With mild hybrid technology:

The function is not available. Do not fold up the luggage compartment floor.

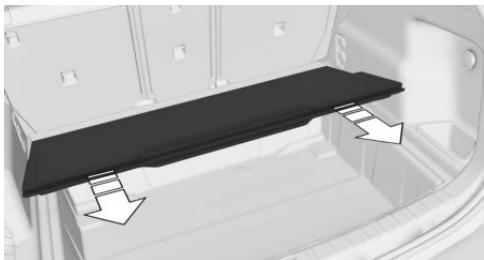
For further information:

Mild hybrid technology, see page [374](#).

Removing the luggage compartment floor

Without mild hybrid technology:

1. Fold the rear part of the luggage compartment floor forwards.
2. Slightly raise the luggage compartment floor.
3. Pull the luggage compartment floor back and out of the brackets and remove.



With mild hybrid technology:

The function is not available. Do not remove the luggage compartment floor.

Inserting the luggage compartment floor

Proceed in reverse order to insert the luggage compartment floor:

1. Position the folded luggage compartment floor flat at the mounts.
2. Push the luggage compartment floor forward into the mounts. The luggage compartment floor engages noticeably.

Enlarging the luggage compartment

Principle

Depending on the equipment specification, the luggage compartment can be enlarged as follows:

- The rear seat backrests can be placed in the cargo position to achieve an upright loading position.
- The rear seat backrests can be folded down.

General

The rear seat backrest is split 40–20–40. The rear seat backrests on each side and the centre section can be folded down individually.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear.

Safety information

WARNING

Risk of entrapment when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Before folding down, make sure that the movement range of the rear seat backrest and the head restraint is clear.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured load may be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after it has been folded back.

WARNING

If the seat is not set properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have restricted or no stability at all. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the seat backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all relevant seat backrests and

adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible and if necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

⚠ NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of material damage. When folding down, make sure that the movement range of the rear seat backrest, including the head restraint, is kept clear.

Cargo position

Principle

The rear seat backrests can be individually moved to an upright loading position. They can be adjusted to various inclination settings as required.

Adjusting

1. Pull the loop on the side of the seat.



2. Set the loading position of the rear seat backrest as required.
3. Lock the rear seat backrest in place.

Folding down rear seat backrest



Pull the loop on the side of the seat and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Folding back the rear seat backrest

1. Fold back the rear seat backrest. The rear seat backrest initially engages in the loading position.
2. Pull the loop on the side of the seat.



3. Fold back the rear seat backrest into the seat position and engage.

Luggage compartment cover

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, e.g. mobile phones, or loose objects can be thrown around the interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident, or when

braking or performing evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Secure devices connected to the vehicle with a cable or loose objects.

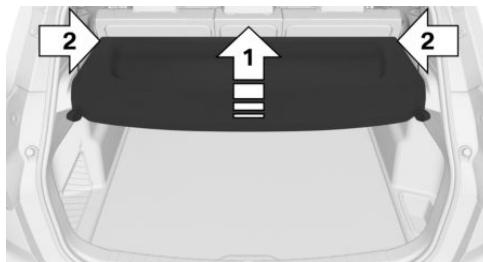
WARNING

If the luggage compartment cover is not inserted correctly, it may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Make sure that the luggage compartment cover is engaged securely in the brackets.

Removing the luggage compartment cover

The cover can be removed for stowing bulky items.

1. Unhook the retaining straps on the tailgate.
2. Grasp the cover with both hands at the rear edge and lift slightly, arrow 1.



3. Pull the cover firmly backwards out of the brackets, arrows 2.

Inserting the luggage compartment cover

To insert, proceed in reverse order. Make sure that the luggage compartment cover is positioned correctly in the brackets and that it is engaged.

Luggage compartment partition net

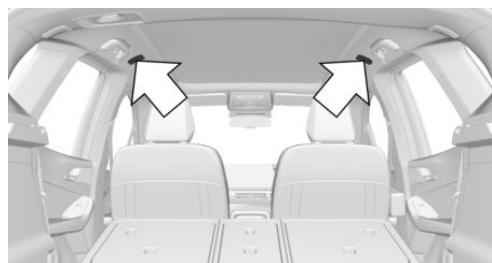
General

The luggage compartment partition net can be installed in two different positions in the vehicle.

With the rear seat backrest folded down

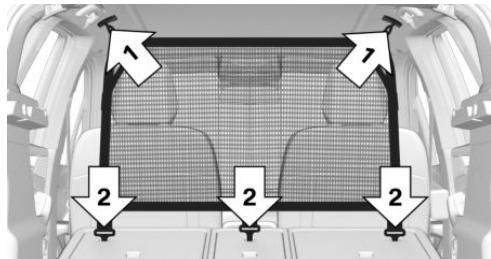
Install the large luggage compartment partition net behind the front seats with the rear seat backrest folded down.

1. Fold down the rear seat backrests. To fold down the rear seat backrests, proceed as for enlarging the luggage compartment.
2. Fold up the front cover caps at the top on the roof frame.



3. Insert both upper fastening pins of the luggage compartment partition net into the holders as far as they will go, arrow 1, and

slide forwards. Make sure that the bottom hooks point to the front.



holders as far as they will go, arrow 1, and slide forwards.



4. Hook the three lower hooks of the luggage compartment partition net into the three front eyes on the folded-down rear seat backrest, arrows 2. The rear seat backrests may need to be raised a little to do this.

For further information:

To enlarge the luggage compartment, see page [301](#).

With the rear seat backrest upright

Install the small luggage compartment partition net behind the second-row seating with the rear seat backrest in the upright position.

1. Remove the luggage compartment cover.
2. Open the rear cover caps at the top on the roof frame.



3. Insert both upper fastening pins of the luggage compartment partition net into the

Driving precautions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Running-in instructions

General

Moving parts need to adjust to each other.

The following notes will help to maximise the vehicle's lifetime and efficiency.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

Safety information

WARNING

New parts and components can cause safety and driver assistance systems to respond with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After new parts have been installed or if the vehicle is new, drive moderately and take action promptly if necessary. Please comply with running-in procedures for the corresponding parts and components.

Engine, transmission and differential

Up to 2000 km, 1200 miles

Do not exceed the maximum rotational speed and vehicle speed:

- With petrol engines, 4500 rpm and 160 km/h, 100 mph.
- With diesel engine, 3500 rpm and 150 km/h, 93 mph.

Generally avoid kickdown and driving under full load.

From 2000 km, 1200 miles onwards

Rotational speed and vehicle speed can be gradually increased.

Tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads must be run in to avoid effects that can lead to brake noise. Drive moderately for the first 500 km, approx. 300 miles.

After fitting new parts

Please comply with the running-in procedures again if the components previously referred to are renewed.

Driving on poor road surfaces

Principle

The increased ground clearance means that the vehicle can be driven on different types of road surfaces with different properties.

All-wheel drive can help to improve drive.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects on unpaved surfaces, for example stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Do not drive on unpaved surfaces.

When driving on poor road surfaces

For your own safety and the safety of passengers and vehicle, note the following:

- ▷ Familiarise yourself with the vehicle before starting a journey.
- ▷ Do not take any risks when driving.
- ▷ Adjust speed to the road conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower the speed should be.
- ▷ For trips on steep gradients: top up the engine oil and coolant almost to the max. mark.
- ▷ Do not allow the vehicle body or underbody to come into contact with the ground.
- ▷ If wheels are spinning, press the accelerator pedal enough that driving stability control systems can distribute driving power to the wheels.

After driving on poor road surfaces

To maintain driving safety, check the wheels and tyres for damage after driving on poor road surfaces. Remove any coarse dirt from the body.

After the body or vehicle floor have come into contact with the ground have the vehicle checked at an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

WARNING

When open, the tailgate protrudes above the vehicle and in the event of an accident, or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre, can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle. There is also a risk of exhaust fumes entering the vehicle interior. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If the vehicle still needs to be driven with the tailgate open:

- ▷ Close all the windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Adjust the blower output to a high setting.
- ▷ Maintain a moderate speed.
- ▷ Secure the tailgate, e.g. with a tensioning belt.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

High temperatures may occur under the vehicle body during driving, for example because of the exhaust system. Contact with the exhaust system may cause burns. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe.

⚠️ WARNING

If flammable materials, for example leaves or grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. There is a risk of fire and injury. Never remove the heat shields installed in this area or apply underbody protection to them. Make sure that when driving, idling or parking, no flammable materials can come into contact with hot vehicle parts.

Exhaust gas particulate filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particulate filter traps soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particulate filter as when required.

General

The cleaning process takes a few minutes, during which the following may occur:

- ▷ The engine may temporarily run a little roughly.
- ▷ A slightly higher rotational speed may be required to achieve the usual power output.
- ▷ Fuel consumption may increase. The increased fuel consumption is shown as the mean value in the current consumption display.
- ▷ There may be a small amount of smoke from the exhaust system, even after stopping the engine.
- ▷ Noise, for example from radiator fan operation, may be heard, even some minutes after stopping the engine.

It is normal for the radiator fan to keep running for several minutes, even after short journeys.

Cleaning the exhaust gas particulate filter while driving

The diesel particulate filter has a self-cleaning feature. No further action is required, such as adjusting your driving style.

Vehicle laminated glass

The laminated glass offers full protection against the harmful effects of UV light on the skin.

Mobile radio in the vehicle

⚠️ WARNING

There is a possibility of reciprocal interference between the vehicle electronics and mobile radio devices. Radiation is generated when mobile radio devices are transmitting. There is a danger of injury or material damage. If possible, only use mobile radio devices, for example mobile phones, inside the vehicle if they are connected directly to an external aerial or personal eSIM in order to eliminate reciprocal interference and to divert the radiation away from the vehicle interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a water wedge can form between the tyres and the road.

This phenomenon is known as aquaplaning and can cause the tyre to lose contact partially or fully with the road surface, meaning that the vehicle can neither be steered, nor the brakes properly applied.

Driving through water

General

Please comply with the following when driving through water:

- ▷ Only drive through when the combustion engine is running.
- ▷ Prevent the combustion engine from shutting down, e.g. SPORT driving mode active and drive set to sporty.
- ▷ Only drive through still water.
- ▷ Only drive through water up to a max. depth of 25 cm, 9.8 in.
- ▷ Drive through water at a walking speed of no more than 5 km/h, 3 mph.

and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after removal, for example for cleaning.

Safety information

NOTICE

Driving too quickly through excessively deep water can cause water to enter the engine compartment, electrical system or transmission. There is a risk of material damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum water depth and maximum speed specified above.

Safe braking

General

The vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System as standard.

Perform full braking in situations that require it.

The vehicle remains steerable. Steer as smoothly as possible to avoid any obstacles.

Hydraulic regulating sounds indicate that the anti-lock braking system is regulating.

Pedal feel when driving off

When drive-ready state is switched on from rest state, an unfamiliar pedal feel can occur, for example short or long pedal travel. Once you have completely released the brake pedal, the pedal feel will be back to normal.

Wet roads

In wet weather, road salt exposure and in heavy rain, apply the brakes lightly every few kilometres/miles.

Ensure that you do not obstruct other road users when doing so.

The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

This helps to maintain braking power so that it is available immediately when needed.

Downhill gradient

General

When driving on long or steep downhill stretches, use the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise the brake system can overheat and the braking effect is reduced.

Engine braking effect can be additionally increased by manually shifting down, even into first gear where required.

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Ensure that items in the vehicle are stowed securely

Safety information

WARNING

Even slight but continuous pressure on the brake pedal can cause overheating, brake wear or even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid excessive loads on the brake.

WARNING

When idling or with drive-ready state switched off, safety-relevant functions, for example, engine braking effect or steering and braking force assistance, are either restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of accident. Do not drive in idle or with the drive-ready state switched off.

Corrosion of the brake disc

Corrosion of the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads increase in the following circumstances:

- ▶ Low mileage.
- ▶ Extended stationary periods when the vehicle is not used.
- ▶ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▶ Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

During braking, corroded brake discs may cause juddering which usually cannot be eliminated.

Condensation when vehicle is parked

When the automatic air conditioning is operating, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Roof bars

Principle

Roof bars are devices that are mounted on the vehicle to facilitate the transport of luggage. Various specifications must be observed when driving with roof bars, for example, the right load.

General

The roof bars can only be installed if roof rails are present.

Roof racks are available as optional accessories.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with roof bars, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident or material damage.

Driving with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Fitting

Follow the installation instructions for the roof bars when fitting the roof bars.

Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the glass sunroof.

Loading

Loaded roof bars change the driving and steering behaviour of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

Therefore when loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not exceed the permitted roof load, axle load or the permitted total weight.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load evenly.
- ▷ The roof load must not be spread over too large an area.
- ▷ Place heavy items of luggage at the bottom.
- ▷ Securely fasten the luggage, for example with tensioning straps.
- ▷ Do not allow objects to protrude into the swing range of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking suddenly or fast cornering.

Driving on a racing track

WARNING

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport competitions or similar. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle in M Sport competitions or similar.

The higher mechanical and thermal loads involved when driving on racing tracks lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

Before and after driving on a racing track, have the vehicle checked at an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Trailers and load carriers

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Using trailers and load carriers

Principle

Trailers and load carriers, for example, rear-mounted luggage racks, can be connected to the vehicle via the trailer tow hitch. Various specifications must be observed when driving with a trailer or load carrier, for example, load or tyre inflation pressure.

General

The permitted trailer loads, axle loads, trailer nose weights and permitted total weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

The vehicle is equipped with reinforced springs on the rear axle and, depending on the vehicle type, with a more powerful cooling system.

Trailer nose weight

The trailer nose weight should not be less than the minimum trailer nose weight of 25 kg, 55 lb. Utilise the maximum trailer nose weight as far as possible.

The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the trailer nose weight reduce the maximum load of the towing vehicle. The trailer nose weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the permitted total weight of the towing vehicle.

Loading

To load the trailer, distribute the load as evenly as possible over the loading platform.

Stow the load as low down as possible and as close as possible to the trailer axle. A low centre of trailer gravity increases the driving safety of the entire trailer.

The permitted total weight of the trailer and the permitted trailer load of the vehicle must not be exceeded. The lower value is the limit which should be adhered to.

Tyre inflation pressure

When driving with a trailer, the tyre inflation pressure of the vehicle and trailer must be observed.

On the vehicle, the tyre inflation pressure for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the regulations of the manufacturer apply.

Re-initialise the flat tyre monitor or reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor or after the tyre inflation pressure has been corrected or a trailer has been attached or detached.

For further information:

- ▷ Tyre inflation pressure information, see page 330.
- ▷ Flat Tyre Monitor, see page 346.
- ▷ Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 340.

Exterior mirrors

When driving with a trailer, two exterior mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into the field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this type are available as optional accessories from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Power consumption

General

Before the start of a journey, check the function of the trailer rear lights.

In order to protect the vehicle battery, keep the switch-on times of the current consumers short during caravan towing.

Trailer rear lights

The power output of the trailer's rear lights must not exceed the following values:

- ▷ Turn indicators: 42 watts per side.
- ▷ Rear lights: 50 watts per side.
- ▷ Brake lights: 84 watts total.
- ▷ Rear fog lights: 42 watts total.
- ▷ Reversing lights: 42 watts total.

Trailer tow hitch with electrically adjustable ball head

Principle

The trailer tow hitch is the device for connecting a trailer to the vehicle. The trailer tow hitch can be swivelled in and out at the push of a button.

General

The adjustable ball head is located on the underside of the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

If the ball head is not locked, unstable driving conditions or accidents can result. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Before a journey with a trailer or load carrier, check that the ball head is correctly locked.

NOTICE

The trailer tow hitch is intended to be used with a trailer. If the ball head of the trailer tow hitch has been swivelled out, it may become jammed if the vehicle is subsequently driven without a trailer or load carrier. There is a risk of material damage. Swivel the ball head back in when driving without a trailer or load carrier.

Overview



The button for swivelling the ball head in and out is in the luggage compartment.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- ▷ The luggage compartment is open.
- ▷ The trailer socket is not occupied.
- ▷ Trailer operation is not activated.
- ▷ The charge level of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

When the system is ready for operation, the LED in the button is illuminated green.

Swivelling out the ball head

1. Open the luggage compartment.
2. Step out of the swing range of the ball head behind the vehicle.
3.  In the luggage compartment, press the button for swivelling the ball head in and out. The ball head swivels out. The LED flashes green.
4. Wait until the ball head has reached the end position and audibly locks.

If the ball head is not properly locked, the LED in the button is illuminated red.

Swivelling the ball head back in

1. Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
2. Remove any fittings for the track-stabilising devices.
3. Remove the power supply connector for the trailer and any adapter from the socket.
4.  In the luggage compartment, press the button for swivelling the ball head in and out. The ball head swivels inwards. The LED flashes green.
5. Wait until the ball head has reached the end position.

Interruption or reversal of the swivel movement

General

If current limit values are exceeded, for example, at very low temperatures or as a result of mechanical resistances, the swivelling process

is interrupted, reversed or not carried out. The LED is illuminated red.

Repeating the swivel movement with the engine running

1. Switch on the drive-ready state.
 2.  In the luggage compartment, press and hold the button for swivelling the ball head in and out until the ball head is fully retracted or extended. If necessary, repeat the swivel movement with the button pressed and the engine running. When the ball head has reached its end position, the LED in the button is illuminated green.
- If the swivel movement is repeatedly interrupted, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

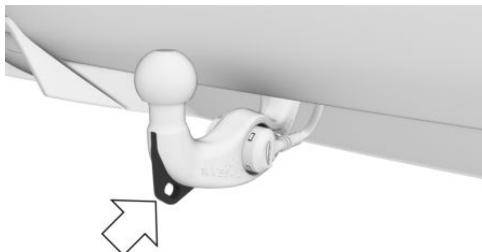
Trailer socket



The trailer socket is located on the trailer tow hitch.

Fold down the cover.

Eye for securing cable



There is an eye on the trailer tow hitch for fastening the trailer securing cable.

For increased safety when towing a trailer, attach the trailer securing cable to the eye.

Check that the securing cable can move freely and is not dragging on the ground.

Towing a trailer

Principle

Certain vehicle requirements must be met for driving with a trailer or load carrier, for example, activation of trailer towing. The correct handling in certain driving situations must also be observed, for example, on uphill or downhill gradients.

General

When driving with a trailer or rear luggage rack, some driver assistance systems are unavailable or only available to a limited extent. A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

Safety information

WARNING

Speeds in excess of approximately 80 km/h, 50 mph, can be enough to cause trailer snakeing, depending on the type of trailer and the load being carried. There is a risk of accident or material damage.

Keep to an appropriate speed when towing a trailer. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be adapted because of the increased axle load in trailer operation. Driving with inadequate tyre inflation pressure can damage the tyres. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not exceed a speed of 100 km/h, 60 mph. Increase the tyre inflation pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar. Note the maximum possible tyre inflation pressure stated on the tyre.

Operation with a trailer or rear luggage rack.

General

If the trailer socket is occupied, a selection menu is displayed on the control display. In the selection menu, specify whether the vehicle is to be driven with a trailer or rear luggage rack.

When driving with a trailer or load carrier, for example rear luggage rack, and if the trailer socket is not occupied, some driver assistance systems may only operate to a limited extent or may malfunction. To avoid malfunctions, activate operation of the trailer or rear luggage rack manually.

Safety information

WARNING

If incorrect settings are made on the control display, some driver assistance system functions may be restricted or faulty. There is a risk of accident. Ensure that the relevant setting is activated when operating with a trailer or rear luggage rack.

Activating/deactivating trailer operation manually

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Trailer mode" / "Type"
2. Select whether driving with or without trailer/rear luggage rack.

Maximum speed

General

When towing a trailer, the maximum permitted speed for the vehicle combination can be set. Depending on the equipment, this setting is taken into account for the speed limit systems.

For further information:

- ▷ Speed Limit Info, see page [219](#).
- ▷ Speed Limit Assist, see page [243](#).

Setting the maximum speed

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Trailer mode" / "Maximum permitted speed"
2. Select the desired speed.

Upward gradients

General

In the interest of safety and to avoid holding up other traffic flow, do not attempt to climb

upward gradients steeper than 12 % in trailer operation.

If higher trailer loads have been subsequently approved, the limit is 8%.

Driving off on upward gradients

The parking brake is automatically released when the accelerator pedal is operated.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.



1. In the centre console, press and release the button for the parking brake shortly before moving off.
The parking brake is engaged.
2. To drive off, press the accelerator pedal with sufficient force.

Downhill gradient

On downward gradients, a car/trailer combination tends to start snaking movement earlier.

Before the downhill gradient, shift down manually to the next-lowest gear and drive downhill slowly.

High loads and high outside temperature

NOTICE

On long journeys with high trailer loads, a high outside temperature and a low fuel tank capacity, the fuel system can overheat leading to reduced engine output. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time. On long journeys with high trailer loads and a high outside temperature, make sure that the fuel tank is more than 1/4 full.

Trailer Assistant

Principle

The Trailer Assistant provides support when reversing with a trailer.

The front wheels are steered when reversing.

Vehicle equipment

This system may not be available in the vehicle in question, for example due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the possibility of subsequent enabling and software updates. This also applies to the individual functions of the system.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

General

The kink angle determines the angle between the vehicle and trailer and thus the desired direction of travel of the car/trailer combination in reverse.

With the Trailer Assistant, the car/trailer combination is not guided via the steering wheel when reversing, but via the continuous input and correction of the kink angle on the control display.

The system takes control of the steering. The speed must be controlled by the driver using the accelerator pedal and the brake.

Follow the information in the Chapter "Parking assistance systems".

For further information:

Parking assistance systems, see page [250](#).

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

NOTICE

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto kerbs. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the Trailer Assistant:

- ▶ A trailer must be attached and connected.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment and national-market version, trailer operation must be activated.
- ▶ When using the Trailer Assistant for the first time, the system may need to be calibrated to the trailer in use.
- ▶ The Reversing Assist Camera must be clean and unobstructed.

Switching operating tips on/off

Operating tips can be displayed for easier operation of the Trailer Assistant.

1. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
2. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving

settings" / "Parking" / "Trailer Assistant tips"

Reversing with Trailer Assistant

Reversing with a trailer can be carried out with the Trailer Assistant.

1. Attach a trailer to vehicle and connect.
2. Depending on the equipment and national-market version, activate the trailer operation on the control display.



3. When the vehicle is stationary, press the Park Assist key in the centre console or engage reverse gear.

The display of the parking assistance systems is shown.

4. "Start Trailer Assistant"

The control display shows the Reversing Assist Camera image with a view of the trailer towbar and a stylised display of the vehicle with the trailer.

5. If necessary, engage reverse gear.
6. Set the desired articulation angle.

Follow the instructions on the control display as applicable.

7. Take hands off the steering wheel and carefully reverse using the accelerator pedal and brake.

Green: the system takes control of the steering.

When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle surroundings.

In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle.

8. If necessary, adjust the kink angle during driving to correct the direction.
9. Engage selector lever position P at the end of the manoeuvring process.

Cancelling Trailer Assistant manually

The manoeuvring of the car/trailer combination can be cancelled manually:

"Cancel"

Automatically cancelling Trailer Assistant

The Trailer Assistant automatically cancels the operation in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- ▷ When shifting from reverse gear to selector lever position D, the Trailer Assistant switches to standby mode.
If reverse gear is engaged again after a short distance, the function is reactivated.
- ▷ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- ▷ When the display on the control display is faded due to messages.
- ▷ In case of a slippery surface.
- ▷ When the vehicle is rolling, for example on a slope.
- ▷ In case of changed environmental factors.
- ▷ At speeds over approximately 10 km/h, 6 mph.

Turning trailer protection brake on/off

After each cancellation of the Trailer Assistant, the trailer protection brake is applied and the vehicle is secured at a standstill. As a result, the car/trailer combination cannot continue to roll uncontrolled. This function can be turned on and off.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Driving settings" / "Parking" / "Trailer protection braking"

System limits

General

The maximum speed is limited to approx. 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph.

A warning occurs at a speed of approx. 7 km/h, approx. 4 mph.

If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function will be cancelled.

Function limitation

The following can restrict the function during manoeuvring or lead to a collision:

- ▷ Accessories on the trailer towbar, e.g. bicycle carrier.
- ▷ Special shapes of trailer towbar and trailer. Trailers with pivot steering are not supported.

Trailer Stability Control

Principle

Trailer Stability Control assists in intercepting trailer snaking movements.

The system detects snaking movements and promptly brakes the vehicle so that the vehicle speed falls to below the critical speed range and the trailer is stabilised.

General

The system can also activate in extreme driving situations when the trailer socket is occupied without a trailer attached, for example when using a bicycle carrier with lighting.

Operating requirements

The system is operational from a speed of approximately 65 km/h, 40 mph in trailer operation and with the trailer socket occupied.

System limits

The system is unable to intervene or intervenes too late, in the following situations for example:

- ▷ If a trailer folds instantly, for example on slippery or loose road surfaces.
- ▷ If a trailer with a high centre of gravity tips over before snaking movement is detected.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or has failed.
- ▷ If the power consumption of a trailer is too low to be detected by the system, for example due to LED rear lights.

Rear luggage rack

Principle

Rear luggage racks, for example, bicycle carrier systems, can be mounted on the ball head of the trailer tow hitch.

General

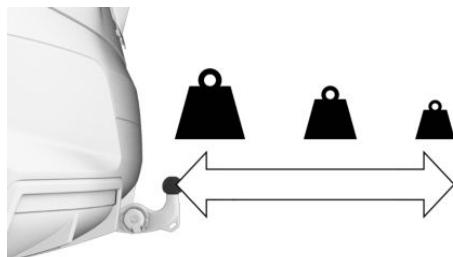
Rear luggage racks which the manufacturer has classified as suitable are available as optional accessories.

Bicycle carrier systems for up to three bicycles can be used.

Fitting

Observe the installation instructions for the rear luggage rack when installing the rear luggage rack.

Loading



The permitted total weight of the rear luggage rack when loaded depends on how far its centre of gravity is from the ball head.

- ▷ If the centre of gravity is up to 30 cm, approx. 11.8 in away from the ball head, the total weight of the rear luggage rack must not exceed 75 kg, 165 lbs.
- ▷ If the centre of gravity is 60 cm, approx. 23.5 in from the ball head, the total weight of the rear luggage rack must not exceed 35 kg, 77 lbs.
- ▷ Stow heavy loads as close as possible to the ball head.
- ▷ Fasten loads securely to the rear luggage rack and secure them against sliding around.

Before a journey

Before starting the journey, check the function of the rear lights of the rear luggage rack.

The maximum output of the rear lights of the rear luggage rack must not exceed the values for trailer rear lights.

To prevent functional limitations and malfunctions affecting driver assistance systems, activate trailer operation accordingly.

For further information:

- ▷ Power consumption, see page [313](#).
- ▷ Operation with a trailer or rear luggage rack, see page [315](#).

Driving with a rear luggage rack

Loaded rear luggage racks change the drivability and steering behaviour of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

Therefore when loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not exceed the permitted axle load or the permitted total weight.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking suddenly or fast cornerings.

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Reducing fuel consumption

Principle

The vehicle has a wide range of technologies for reducing consumption and emissions.

Some measures can influence fuel consumption and environmental pollution:

- ▷ Remove unnecessary loads from the vehicle.
- ▷ Remove add-on parts after use, for example a rear carrier.
- ▷ Close the windows and the electric glass sunroof while driving.
- ▷ Check the tyre inflation pressure regularly and increase if necessary.
- ▷ Switch off the engine if stopping for a longer period.
- ▷ Use anticipatory driving and let the vehicle roll more often, for example.
- ▷ Deactivate functions that are not required, for example rear window heating.
- ▷ Have the vehicle serviced regularly.

Adaptive recuperation

Principle

Adaptive recuperation supports an anticipatory and comfort-oriented driving style.

Based on the situation, the system decides whether energy is recovered through recuperation, or how the vehicle rolls.

In vehicles with mild hybrid technology, the power of recuperation is adaptive, which causes the vehicle to decelerate at different rates while coasting.

General

Map data and various sensors analyse the current driving situation, for example the distance to the vehicle in front.

Adaptive recuperation is available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Activating/deactivating adaptive recuperation

Adaptive recuperation is deactivated by activating SPORT drive mode.

When changing to another drive mode, adaptive recuperation is activated.

Display

Display on the control display

Adaptive recuperation can be displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Current driving condition, see page [162](#).

System limits

- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ If there are country-dependent restrictions on map-based route sections.
- ▷ With a temporary and variable speed limit, such as at road works.
- ▷ If Cruise Control is active.
- ▷ If the sensors are faulty, soiled or covered.
- ▷ Driving in the handling limit range or on steep uphill or downhill gradients.
- ▷ Battery charge state temporarily too low or too high power requirement in the electrical system.
- ▷ Trailer operation.

Coasting

Principle

The drivetrain allows efficient coasting in the D selector lever position with minimal deceleration. This drive state is called coasting. This reduces fuel consumption.

Vehicles with mild hybrid technology do not consume fuel while coasting.

General

An anticipatory driving style helps to use the function frequently and supports the consumption-reducing effect of coasting.

Coasting is automatically adapted to the driving situation in question.

The coasting drive state is displayed in the Live Vehicle menu as efficient coasting.

For further information:

Current driving condition, see page [162](#).

Examples of driving situations

If a distance can be covered without foreseeable braking, it is advantageous to roll this distance.

The following example driving situations may be suitable for coasting:

- ▷ Rolling on straight downhill gradient with no obstacles.
- ▷ Rolling to a stop on a section of route without obstacles.

Avoid late or heavy braking.

Operating requirements

Observe the following functional requirements for coasting:

- ▷ Selector lever position D is engaged.
- ▷ Adaptive recuperation is activated.
- ▷ The brake is not pressed.
- ▷ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.
- ▷ The system detects a calm and smooth driving style.
- ▷ The engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
- ▷ The system does not detect any traffic situations or a course of the road that may pose a problem.

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 25 km/h, 16 mph to 160 km/h, 100 mph.

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

Depending on the equipment, the coasting drive state can be controlled via the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

To activate coasting, long-press the right shift paddle.

Operate the left-hand shift paddle to deactivate.

System limits

- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ If there are country-dependent restrictions on map-based route sections.
- ▷ With a temporary and variable speed limit, such as at road works.
- ▷ If Cruise Control is active.
- ▷ If the sensors are faulty, soiled or covered.
- ▷ Driving in the handling limit range or on steep uphill or downhill gradients.
- ▷ Battery charge state temporarily too low or too high power requirement in the electrical system.
- ▷ Trailer operation.

Efficient mode

Principle

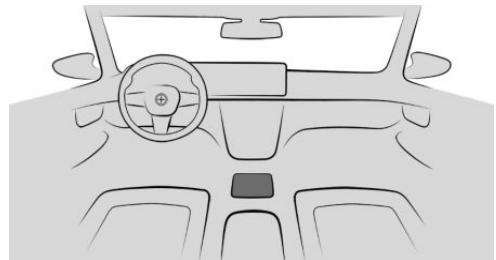
Efficient Mode supports an efficient driving style.

In addition, the Efficiency Coach displays situation dependent notes to assist with an efficient driving style.

The extended range that is achieved by adopting these tips is shown in the instrument cluster as a bonus range.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 The button for My Modes is located in the centre console.

Configuring Efficient Mode

To configure Efficient Mode, proceed as follows:

1.  Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.
2. "EFFICIENT"
3. Select entry for settings.
4. Select the desired setting.

Resetting settings

To reset the settings, proceed as follows:

1.  Press the button for My Modes in the centre console.
2. "EFFICIENT"
3. Select entry for settings.
4. "Reset settings"

Efficiency Coach

Principle

The Efficiency Coach supports an anticipatory and comfort-oriented driving style. For this purpose, map information and sensor data is used to analyse the current driving situation, such as upcoming speed limits and vehicles driving in front. Based on this information, the driver receives notices for an efficient driving style early on. The efficiency of the driving style is evaluated in the control display and shown in three categories.

General

The system has different displays to support the driver with an efficient driving style.

Operating requirements

Observe the following functional requirements when using the Efficiency Coach:

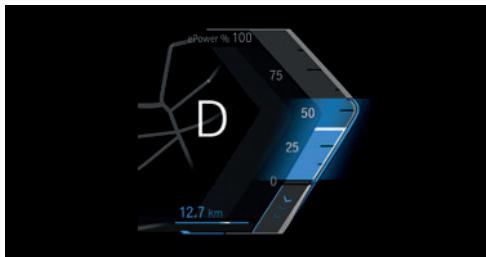
- ▷ Selector lever position D is engaged.
- ▷ Efficient Mode is activated.

Display

Power display

When the Efficient Mode is activated, the display in the instrument cluster changes to a special layout.

Depending on the equipment, some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.



The efficient range of the power display is coloured blue. Additionally, the bonus range will be displayed.

The efficient range is adjusted depending on the driving situation.

If the power display moves within the blue range, the current driving style is efficient. The display will change to grey if the driving style is inefficient.

Bonus range



It is possible to achieve a range extension by adjusting the driving style.

The range extension is displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

If the bonus range is shown in grey or hidden, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all the conditions for consumption-optimised driving are met.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the trip data settings.

Display inefficient driving style



When driving above the efficient range, an arrow is displayed in the instrument cluster.

For example, the display occurs in the following situations:

- ▷ Excessive acceleration.
- ▷ Excessive speed.
- ▷ Special route section, for example round-about, ahead.

In addition, a message for the deceleration reason can be displayed.

System limits

For example, the function is not available in the following situations:

- ▶ If Cruise Control is active.
- ▶ In trailer operation.
- ▶ The Sport programme of the transmission is activated.

Anticipatory driving style

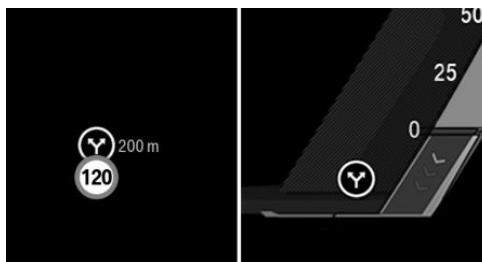
Principle

The display in the instrument cluster informs the driver about decelerations ahead, for example, speed limit reductions or roundabouts, even when they are not yet visible. The situation-specific information and distance to the route section ahead is shown above the current speed limit in the instrument cluster. If there is a notice, the speed can be reduced in an energy-saving way by coasting using the corresponding accelerator pedal position until the section of road is reached.

The system makes a recommendation to the driver to slow down in good time by reducing the efficient range of the power display in the instrument cluster. The reduced efficient range in the power display is displayed until the efficient range is reached.

Display in the instrument cluster

The information on predictive driving is displayed in the instrument cluster.



A note regarding a section of the route ahead is given as a recommendation to allow the vehicle to roll.

An icon, for example a turn, indicates the detected section of the route:

Icon	Section of the road in front
	Turning.
	Speed limit or town entrance.
	Roundabout.
	Departure.
	Corner.

System limits

For example, the display of the upcoming route sections is not available in the following situations:

- ▶ With temporary and variable speed limits, for example, at road works.
- ▶ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▶ If there are country-dependent restrictions on map-based route sections.

Efficiency evaluation

General

The efficiency of the driving style is evaluated in the control display and shown in three categories, e.g. accelerate. The current trip is analysed.

Operating requirements

The function is available in Efficient Mode.

Go to efficiency evaluation

To go to the efficiency assessment, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / Select entry for Live Vehicle.

For further information:

Live Vehicle, see page [145](#)

Display on the control display

The display of the efficiency analysis shows the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the larger the area that is displayed in colour and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced area will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Things to consider when refuelling

General

Before refuelling, take note of the fuel grade information.

On vehicles with diesel engine, the fuel filler neck is designed for refuelling at diesel pumps.

When topping up, hook the fuel pump nozzle fully into the filler pipe. Lifting the fuel pump nozzle while topping up will cause the following to happen:

- ▷ The supply is stopped too soon.
- ▷ Fuel vapour recovery is less effective.

The fuel tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Please comply with the safety regulations displayed at filling stations.

For further information:

Fuel grade, see page 356.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the range drops below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. The engine functions are no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

NOTICE

Fuels are poisonous and aggressive substances. Overfilling the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. If fuel comes into contact with paintwork, it can damage it. The environment is polluted. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid overfilling.

Fuel filler cap

Safety information

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel filler cap may become trapped and crushed when turning the cap to close it. As a result, the cap may not be closed properly. Fuel or fuel vapours can leak out. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Make sure that the retaining strap does not get trapped and crushed when closing the cap.

Opening

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel filler cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



Closing

1. Fit the fuel filler cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency release

In certain situations, it may be necessary to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for example if there is an electrical fault.

Have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheels and tyres

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Tyre inflation pressure

General

The tyre condition and tyre inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tyres.
- ▷ Driving safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety information

WARNING

A tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure can heat up significantly and sustain damage. Handling characteristics, for example steering and braking, will be impaired as a result. There is a risk of accident. Check the tyre inflation pressure regularly, for example twice a month or before any long journey, and correct as necessary.

Tyre inflation pressure information

On the body pillar



The tyre inflation pressure information is located on the body pillar of the driver's door.

The tyre inflation pressures apply to all tyre sizes and recommended tyre makes that have been approved by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable for the model version. The list can also include tyre sizes that are only suitable in combination with specific equipment.

Information about approved wheels and tyres for the vehicle can be requested from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or specialist workshop.

The tyre inflation pressure appropriate for the respective load conditions should be used. For partially loaded vehicles, the specified tyre inflation pressure for a partially loaded vehicle, for example, is the optimum tyre inflation pressure.

On the control display

The current tyre inflation pressures and the specified tyre inflation pressures for the installed tyres can be displayed on the control display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tyre sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the fitted tyres.

The current tyre inflation pressure value is shown on each tyre.

The specified tyre inflation pressure value is located towards the bottom of the control display.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

General

The tyres heat up while driving. The tyre inflation pressure increases with the temperature of the tyre.

The tyres have a natural, uniform tyre pressure loss.

The pressures displayed by some pressure gauges may be up to 0.1 bar too low.

Checking using tyre inflation pressure information on the body pillar

To check the tyre inflation pressure using the tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the door pillar, proceed as follows:

1. Determine the specified tyre inflation pressures for the tyres installed on the vehicle.
2. Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, using a pressure gauge, for example.
3. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.
4. Check that all valve caps are screwed onto the tyre valves.

The tyre inflation pressure information on the tyre pressure label on the body pillar only relates to cold tyres or tyres at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tyre inflation pressures when the tyres are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ If the vehicle has been driven a distance of no more than 2 km, 1.25 miles.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a journey.

If the vehicle is equipped with an emergency spare wheel, check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency spare wheel in the luggage compartment regularly and correct the pressure if necessary.

Checking using the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display

To check the tyre inflation pressure using the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display, proceed as follows:

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
2. Check if the current tyre inflation pressures match the specified tyre pressure value.
3. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.

The current tyre inflation pressure on the control display may be restricted when the vehicle is stationary. The tyre inflation pressure is updated after a short drive.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

If equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitor, tyre inflation pressure corrections are applied automatically. Make sure that the tyre settings are correct. For tyres that are not listed in the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

If equipped with a Flat Tyre Monitor, reinitialize the Flat Tyre Monitor.

Speed code letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 160 km/h, 100 mph
R	up to 170 km/h, 106 mph
S	up to 180 km/h, 112 mph



Designation	Maximum speed
T	up to 190 km/h, 118 mph
H	up to 210 km/h, 131 mph
F	up to 240 km/h, 150 mph
W	up to 270 km/h, 167 mph
Y	up to 300 km/h, 186 mph
(Y)	above 300 km/h, 186 mph

Tyre tread

Summer tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 3 mm, 0.12 in, otherwise there is a high risk of aquaplaning.

Winter tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 4 mm, 0.16 in, otherwise its suitability for winter use is restricted.

Minimum tread depth



There are wear indicators from the tyre manufacturer distributed over the tyre circumference with a height of at least 1.6 mm, approx. 0.06 in, which serve as an indicator of tyre tread wear.

The positions of the wear indicators are identified on the tyre sidewall by TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Irrespective of the wear indicators, observe the legal requirements on minimum tread depth.

Tyre damages

General

Inspect tyres regularly for damage, the presence of foreign bodies and wear.

The following abnormalities may indicate tyre damage or a malfunction on the vehicle:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tyre or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual vehicle response, such as pronounced pulling to the left or right.
- ▷ Uneven wear pattern, for example increased wear near the tyre shoulder.

Tyre damage can be caused by situations such as the following:

- ▷ Driving over kerbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tyre inflation pressure too low.
- ▷ Overloading the vehicle.
- ▷ Incorrect tyre storage.

Safety information

WARNING

If the tyres are damaged, the tyre inflation pressure may be reduced, causing you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. If you suspect tyre damage while you are driving, immediately reduce speed and bring the vehicle to a stop. Have the wheels and tyres checked. To do so, carefully drive to an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there. Do not repair damaged tyres. Have them replaced.

WARNING

Tyres can become damaged by driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or damaged road surfaces, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tyre cross-section. The smaller the tyre cross-section, the higher the risk of tyre damage. There is a risk of accident and material damage. If possible, drive around obstacles or drive over them slowly and carefully.

by the manufacturer of the vehicle on the basis of the following criteria:

- ▷ Tyre size; for example, tyre width, aspect ratio.
- ▷ Wheel size; for example rim diameter, offset.

Information on the approved wheels and tyres for the vehicle, as well as the special equipment, can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Tyre age

Recommendation

Irrespective of the tyre tread depth, change tyres after 6 years at the latest.

Production date

The production date of the tyre can be found on the tyre sidewall.

Designation	Production date
DOT ... 0123	1st week of 2023

Replacement of wheels and tyres

Fitting and balancing

Have the wheel fitted and balanced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Permissible wheels and tyres

General

Depending on the vehicle and equipment, certain wheel/tyre combinations are permitted. The wheel/tyre combinations are determined

WARNING

Wheels and tyres that are not permitted for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends only using wheels and tyres that have been approved as permissible for the vehicle type concerned.

WARNING

Incorrect wheel and tyre combinations will impair the vehicle's driving characteristics and a variety of system functions, for example the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends only using wheels and tyres that have been approved as permissible for the vehicle type concerned. After a tyre has been damaged, refit the same wheel/tyre combination as the original.



Recommended makes of tyre



For each vehicle, tyre types are developed that are optimised specifically for the individual requirements of the vehicle. For example:

- ▷ Drivability.
- ▷ Comfort.
- ▷ Noise behaviour.

The specially developed tyres are marked with a star on the tyre sidewall. After replacing wheels and tyres, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using tyres with a star marking again. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that tyres of the same make and tread design are used.

New tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Retreaded tyres

⚠ WARNING

Retreaded tyres may have different tyre carcasses. Their durability may be restricted due to their advanced age. There is a risk of accident. The vehicle manufacturer advises against the use of retreaded tyres.

Winter tyres

General



Winter tyres are recommended if driving in winter conditions.

The winter tyres can be identified by the mountain and snowflake icon, as well as the M+S marking on the tyre sidewall.

So-called all-season tyres with M+S marking but without symbol with mountain and snowflake have better winter properties than summer tyres. As a rule, all-season tyres do not achieve the performance of winter tyres.

Maximum speed of winter tyres

If the vehicle is capable of maximum speed higher than the speed permitted for the winter tyres, a sign stating the speed limit for the tyres fitted must be displayed in the driver's field of view. The sign is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

When winter tyres are fitted, observe the speed limit of the winter tyres and do not exceed it.

Wheel change between axles

Depending on the individual operating conditions, the tyre tread wears differently on the front and rear axles. To achieve even abrasion, the tyres can be swapped in pairs between the axles. Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

After a wheel change, check the tyre inflation pressure and correct if necessary.

Storing tyres

Tyre inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure indicated on the tyre sidewall.

Storage

- ▷ Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and dark place when not in use.
- ▷ Protect the tyres against contamination from oil, grease and solvents.
- ▷ Do not leave tyres in plastic bags.
- ▷ Remove dirt from the wheels or tyres.

Remedying flat tyre

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle on firm and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▷ As soon as the traffic flow permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ If necessary, set up the warning triangle or hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.

Tyre repair kit

Principle

With the tyre repair kit, minor tyre damage can be quickly sealed to allow the driver to continue driving.

The filled in tyre sealant encloses the damage from the inside when it hardens.

The compressor can be used to check the tyre inflation pressure.

The use of the tyre repair set can be ineffective in the event of tyre damage from a size of approx. 4 mm, approx. 0.16 in.

General

- ▷ Please observe the notes on using the tyre repair kit which are on the compressor and the tyre sealant bottle.
- ▷ Foreign bodies that have penetrated the tyre should remain inside the tyre. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tyre.

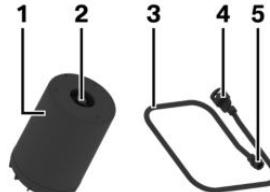
Overview

Storage

Depending on the equipment, storage for the tyre repair set is provided as follows:

- ▷ In the luggage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.
- ▷ In the luggage compartment on the left or right side.
- ▷ In the luggage compartment behind a side trim panel.

Tyre sealant bottle and filler hose



1 Tyre sealant bottle

2 Tyre sealant bottle outlet

3 Filler hose

- 4 Tyre sealant bottle connection
- 5 Wheel valve connection

Compressor



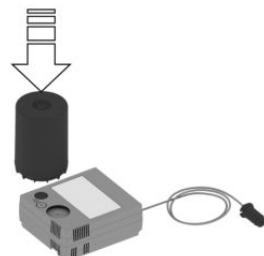
- 1 Compressor
- 2 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 3 Pressure reducing valve button
- 4 Tyre sealant bottle holder
- 5 Connector for socket
- 6 On/off switch

Safety measures

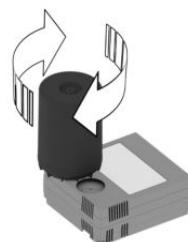
- ▷ Park the vehicle on a firm surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▷ As soon as the traffic flow permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ If necessary, set up the warning triangle or hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Remove the warning sign for the maximum permissible speed from the compressor and attach it in the visible area in the vehicle interior.
- ▷ Remove the warning sign from the tyre sealant bottle and stick it on the wheel rim.

Preparing the tyre repair kit

1. Insert the tyre sealant bottle into the mount on the housing of the compressor.



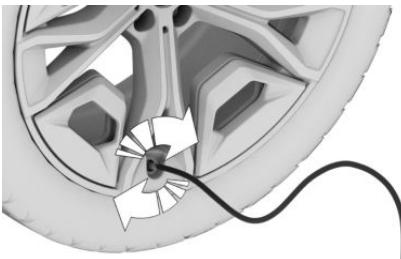
2. Turn the tyre sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.



3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the tyre sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.



- Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the filler hose onto the valve.



- With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the socket inside the vehicle interior.

Filling with tyre sealant

Safety information

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat if operated for too long. There is a risk of material damage. Do not let the compressor run for longer than 10 minutes.

Filling with tyre sealant

To fill in the tyre sealant and reach a tyre inflation pressure of 2.5 bar, let the compressor run for a maximum of 10 minutes.

- Switch on the compressor with standby state or drive-ready state switched on.

While the tyre is being filled with tyre sealant, the tyre inflation pressure indicator can briefly reach up to approx. 6 bar before it shows the actual tyre inflation pressure again. Do not turn off the compressor in this phase.



- Switch off the compressor when a tyre inflation pressure of 2.5 bar has been reached.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

Read the tyre pressure on the tyre inflation pressure indicator of the compressor. The tyre pressure must be at least 2.5 bar.

Tyre pressure too high

If the tyre inflation pressure is too high, reduce the tyre pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tyre pressure of 2.5 bar is reached. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached

If a tyre inflation pressure of at least 2.5 bar is reached, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the hose from the tyre sealant bottle and the valve on the wheel.
3. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
4. Stow the tyre repair kit in the luggage compartment.
5. Immediately drive for approximately 10 km/5 miles to evenly distribute the tyre sealant in the tyre.

Do not exceed the permitted maximum speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

If possible, do not drive slower than 20 km/h/12 mph.

Tyre sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotations.

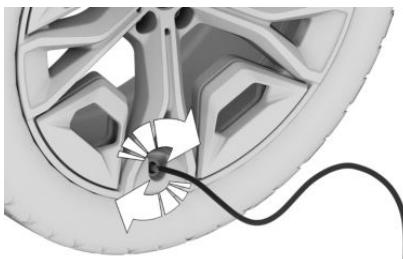
Adjusting the tyre pressure

To adjust the tyre inflation pressure, proceed as follows:

1. Stop in a suitable area.
2. Connect the hose directly to the compressor and turn clockwise by 90° until it audibly engages.



3. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the hose onto the valve.



4. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
5. Read the tyre pressure on the tyre inflation pressure indicator of the compressor.
Do not continue driving unless a minimum tyre pressure of 1.3 bar is displayed. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
6. Correct the tyre pressure to 2.5 bar.
 - ▷ Increase tyre inflation pressure: with standby or drive-ready state turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.
 - ▷ Reduce tyre inflation pressure: press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

Removing and stowing the tyre repair kit

To remove and stow the tyre repair kit, proceed as follows:

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Disconnect the hose from the compressor and the valve on the wheel.
4. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
5. Stow the tyre repair kit in the luggage compartment.

Resuming a journey

Do not exceed the permitted maximum speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

Do not exceed a maximum distance travelled of 200 km/125 miles.

Re-initialise the flat tyre monitor or reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

Have the punctured tyre and the tyre sealant bottle of the tyre repair kit replaced as soon as possible.

For further information:

- ▷ Flat Tyre Monitor, see page [346](#).
- ▷ Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page [340](#).

System limits

Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if it is not possible to put the tyre back in operation.

With Tyre Pressure Monitor: using sealant can damage the air pressure sensor. In this case, have the air pressure sensor replaced at the next opportunity.

Snow chains

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

If snow chains are fitted to unsuitable tyres, the snow chains can come into contact with parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Only fit snow chains on tyres which have been approved by the manufacturer as being suitable for snow chains.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficiently tensioned snow chains can damage tyres and vehicle components. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Ensure that snow chains are always adequately tensioned. Re-tension them if necessary in accordance with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using fine-link snow chains. Certain fine-link snow chains have been tested, found safe for use in traffic and rated as suitable by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Use

Use of snow chains is permitted only in pairs on the front wheels with the following wheel/tyre sizes:

Tyre size	Wheel size	Rim offset (IS)
205/65 R17	7.0J x 17	41
205/60 R18	6.5J x 18	41

The information on wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tyre sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information about approved wheels and tyres for the vehicle can be requested from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or specialist workshop.

Observe the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

If the vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitor: do not reset the Tyre Pressure Mon-

itor when using snow chains, otherwise incorrect information may be displayed.

If the vehicle is equipped with a flat tyre monitor: do not initialise the flat tyre monitor when using snow chains, otherwise incorrect information may be displayed.

When driving with snow chains, activate the drive-off support to optimise propulsion, if necessary.

Maximum speed with snow chains

When snow chains are fitted, do not exceed a maximum speed of 50 km/h, approx. 30 mph.

Tyre Pressure Monitor

Principle

The Tyre Pressure Monitor monitors the tyre pressure and issues a warning if the tyre pressure has dropped.

Sensors in the tyre valves measure the tyre inflation pressure and tyre air temperature.

Depending on the tyres detected or entered, the system displays the specified nominal pressures on the control display and compares them to the current tyre inflation pressures.

General

If the vehicle is fitted with tyres which are not listed in the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle, for example tyres with special approval, the system must be actively reset. The current tyre inflation pressures are then accepted as the nominal pressures.

When operating the system, please also comply with the information and notes in the chapter on tyre inflation pressure.
For further information:

Tyre inflation pressure, see page [330](#).

Safety information

WARNING

The display showing the nominal pressures does not replace the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle. If incorrect data has been entered into the tyre settings, the specified tyre inflation pressures will also be incorrect. As a result, reliable message of a tyre pressure loss can no longer be guaranteed. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Make sure that the tyre sizes of the fitted tyres are displayed correctly and that they match the specifications on the tyres and in the tyre inflation pressure information.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable message of a tyre pressure loss is not ensured:

- ▷ After each tyre or wheel change, the system has detected the fitted tyres, updated the relevant information and, after a short journey, shown it on the control display.
If the system does not detect the tyres automatically, enter the specifications for the fitted tyres in the tyre settings.
- ▷ The Tyre Pressure Monitor only becomes active after driving for several minutes:
 - ▷ After tyre/wheel change.
 - ▷ After a reset, For tyres with special approval.
 - ▷ After changing the tyre setting.
- ▷ For tyres with special approval:
 - ▷ After every tyre or wheel change, the system must be reset once the tyre inflation pressure is correct.
 - ▷ A reset must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.
 - ▷ Wheels with air pressure sensor are fitted.

Tyre settings

General

If the system does not detect the tyres automatically, the specifications for the fitted tyres can be entered in the tyre settings.

The tyre sizes of the fitted tyres can be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle or directly on the tyres.

The tyre data does not have to be re-entered if the tyre inflation pressure is being corrected.

For summer and winter tyres, the tyre data last entered for each type is saved. This means that the settings can be selected again after a tyre or wheel change.

Adjusting tyres

To enter the details of the fitted tyres in the tyre settings, proceed as follows:

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Tyre Pressure Monitor" / "Tyre settings" / "Tyre selection" / "Manual" / "Tyre type"
2. Select the tyre size that is mounted on the rear axle.
For tyres with special approval:
"Other tyres"
See the Performing a reset section for how to proceed.
3. After selecting the tyre size, select the load status of the vehicle.
4. "Save tyre settings"

The measurement of the current tyre inflation pressure is started. The progress of the measurement is shown.

Status display

Current status

The status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor, for example, whether the system is active, can be shown on the control display.

Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tyre inflation pressure

The current tyre inflation pressure is displayed for each tyre.

The current tyre inflation pressures can vary depending on vehicle operation or outside temperature.

Current tyre air temperature

The current tyre air temperatures are shown depending on the model.

The current tyre air temperatures can change as a result of driving the vehicle or the outside temperature.

Nominal pressure

The nominal pressure for the tyres on the front and rear axle is displayed.

The stated nominal pressure takes account of the temperature effects caused by driving the vehicle and the outside temperature. The appropriate nominal pressure is always displayed irrespective of the weather conditions, tyre air temperatures and length of journey.

The displayed nominal pressure may vary and differ from the value stated in the tyre inflation pressure information on the body pillar of the driver's door. The tyre inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed nominal pressures.

The nominal pressure is adjusted immediately if the load status is changed in the tyre settings.



Tyre statuses

General

The status of the system and tyres is indicated by the wheel colour and a message on the control display.

Existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached when the tyre inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

All wheels are illuminated green when the system is active.

- ▷ The system bases any warnings on the nominal pressures.
- ▷ For tyres with special approval, the system bases any warnings on the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset.

One to four wheels yellow

One to four wheels are illuminated yellow if there is a flat tyre or a major tyre pressure loss in the displayed tyres.

Wheels grey

Wheels are illuminated grey if a tyre pressure loss may possibly not be detected.

Possible causes:

- ▷ There is a malfunction.
- ▷ After confirming the tyre settings, an automatic tyre inflation pressure measurement is performed.
- ▷ For tyres with special approval: a system reset is being performed.

For tyres with special approval: performing a reset

To perform a reset for tyres with special approval, proceed as follows:

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
2. Make sure that the tyre settings are correct.
3. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
4. Reset the tyre inflation pressure: "Perform reset"
5. Drive off.

The wheels are shown grey and the following appears on the display: "Resetting tyre pressure...".

After driving for several minutes, the set tyre inflation pressures are accepted as the specified tyre inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically during the journey.

If the reset was successful, the wheels are shown in green on the control display and the following appears: "Reset successful."

You can interrupt your journey at any time. The reset resumes automatically when you continue driving.

For further information:

Tyre settings, see page [341](#).

Messages: for tyres without special approval

General

When a low tyre pressure is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tyre or replace the wheel.

With recommended tyre pressure check

Message

An icon with service information is shown on the control display and, if necessary, in the My BMW App.

Icon Possible cause



Leak detected on the tyre.

Measure

Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon Possible cause



The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added or there was a natural, even tyre pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.

If the tyre inflation pressure is too low

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon Possible cause



There has been a tyre pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tyre pressure loss

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon indicating which tyre is affected is shown in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon Possible cause



There is a flat tyre or substantial tyre pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Follow the description of what to do when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

For further information:

What to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page **345**.

Messages: for tyres with special approval

General

When a low tyre pressure is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tyre or replace the wheel.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon Possible cause

	The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset has been performed. The tyre inflation pressure has dropped compared to the last reset. No reset has been performed on the system. System warning is based on the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset.
--	---

Measure

1. Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tyre inflation pressure is too low

Message

	A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.
---	--

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There has been a tyre pressure loss. No reset has been performed on the system. System warning is based on the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a system reset.

If there is a significant tyre pressure loss

Message

	A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.
---	--

In addition, an icon indicating which tyre is affected is shown in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	<p>There is a flat tyre or substantial tyre pressure loss.</p> <p>No reset has been performed on the system. System warning is based on the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset.</p>

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Follow the description of what to do when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

For further information:

What to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page [345](#).

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre inflation pressure indicator of a tyre repair kit.

For tyres with special approval: if all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been reset. Perform a reset.

If no tyre damage can be found, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a tyre repair kit or by changing the wheel.

The use of tyre sealant, for example a tyre repair kit, can damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tyre inflation pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre.

The tyre inflation pressure increases as the tyre air temperature increases, for example while driving or when exposed to sunlight.

The tyre inflation pressure decreases when the tyre air temperature drops.

Due to the given warning thresholds, therefore, this behaviour may cause a warning to be triggered when significant temperature drops occur.

After a temperature-related warning, the nominal pressures are displayed again on the control display after driving a short distance.

Sudden tyre pressure loss

No warning can be given by the system in the event of extreme, sudden tyre damages caused by external factors.

Reset not carried out

Tyres with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset has not been carried out, for example, a flat tyre may be reported even though the tyre pressure is correct.

Malfunction

Message



The yellow warning light flashes and then illuminates continuously. A Check Control message is shown. Tyre pressure losses may not be detected.

Measure

- ▷ If a wheel without air pressure sensor is fitted, have the wheels checked if necessary.
- ▷ In the event of a fault due to systems or devices with the same transmission fre-



- quency, the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▷ The system was unable to complete the reset for tyres with special approval. Perform a system reset again.
 - ▷ If the Tyre Pressure Monitor has failed, have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Flat tyre monitor

Principle

The flat tyre monitor detects a tyre pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tyre pressure has dropped.

The system does not measure the tyre inflation pressure as such.

The system identifies a tyre pressure loss by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels during the journey.

A tyre pressure loss changes the diameter, and with it the rotational speed, of the corresponding wheel. The discrepancy is detected and reported as a flat tyre.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the flat tyre monitor, otherwise reliable indication of a tyre pressure loss is not ensured:

- ▷ After a tyre or wheel change, an initialisation was carried out at the correct tyre inflation pressure.
- ▷ The system must be initialised after the tyre inflation pressure is adjusted to a new value.

Status display

The status of the flat tyre monitor can be displayed on the control display, for example, to check whether the flat tyre monitor is active.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Flat Tyre Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialisation required

An initialisation must be performed in the following situations:

- ▷ After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure.
- ▷ After tyre/wheel change.

Initialisation

Initialisation saves the set tyre inflation pressures as reference values for subsequent detection of a flat tyre. Initialisation is started by confirming the correct tyre inflation pressures.

Do not initialise the system if driving with snow chains fitted.

To initialise the flat tyre monitor, proceed as follows:

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / "VEHICLE" / "Vehicle status" / "Flat Tyre Monitor"
2. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
3. Start the initialisation: "Perform reset"
4. Drive off.

Initialisation is completed while driving which can be interrupted at any time.

Initialisation resumes automatically when you continue driving.

Messages

General

When a flat tyre is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tyre or replace the wheel.

Flat tyre message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
------	----------------



There is a flat tyre or substantial tyre pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Follow the description of what to do when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

To do this, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre inflation pressure indicator of a tyre repair kit.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the flat tyre monitor might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

If no tyre damage can be found, contact an authorised Service Partner or another

qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a tyre repair kit or by changing the wheel.

System limits

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or could work incorrectly:

- ▷ A natural, even tyre pressure loss in all four tyres that occurs over time will not be detected. Therefore check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- ▷ No warning can be given in the event of extreme, sudden tyre damages caused by external factors.
- ▷ The system has not been initialised.
- ▷ When driving on snow-covered or slippery roads.
- ▷ If a sporty driving style is adopted, for example, due to slip on the drive wheels or high lateral acceleration.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Wheel change

General

When using a tyre repair kit, it is not always necessary to change a wheel immediately if tyre inflation pressure is lost due to a flat tyre.

If necessary, wheel change tools, such as the vehicle manufacturer's jack, are offered as optional accessories by an authorised Service Partner, or another qualified Service Partner, or a specialist workshop.



Safety information

WARNING

The jack is only intended for raising the vehicle briefly during a wheel change. Even if the safety measures are complied with, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling over due to the jack slipping. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie underneath the vehicle and do not switch on drive-ready state.

WARNING

Supports such as wooden blocks under the jack can prevent it from achieving its load capacity due to the restricted height. The load capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded, causing the vehicle to tip over. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

WARNING

The jack provided by the vehicle manufacturer is intended for changing a wheel in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tyres. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency spare wheel or a spare wheel in case of a breakdown.

WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example, snow, ice, tiles or similar, the jack may slip. There is a danger of injury. Change the wheel on a level, firm and non-slip surface if possible.

WARNING

The jack is only optimised for raising the vehicle and for use with the jacking points on the vehicle. There is a danger of injury. Do not lift another vehicle or other loads with the jack.

WARNING

If the jack has not been guided into the jacking point provided, the vehicle might be damaged when the jack is extended, or the jack could slip. There is a danger of injury or material damage. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheel arch.

WARNING

A vehicle raised with a jack can fall from the jack if lateral forces are applied. There is a danger of injury or material damage. If the vehicle is raised, do not apply any lateral forces to the vehicle or pull the vehicle with sudden movements. If the wheel is jammed, have it removed by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTICE

Using an impact screwdriver to loosen or tighten the locking wheel bolt can damage the bolt. There is a risk of material damage. Only use a wheel bolt wrench to loosen and tighten the locking wheel bolt.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General

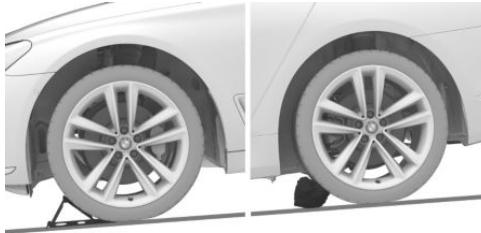
The vehicle manufacturer recommends that the vehicle should additionally be protected against rolling away during a wheel change.

On a level surface



Place chocks or other suitable objects in front of and behind the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being changed.

On a slight downhill gradient



If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill gradient, place chocks and other suitable objects, for example stones, under the wheels of the front and rear axles against the direction of roll.

Locking wheel bolts

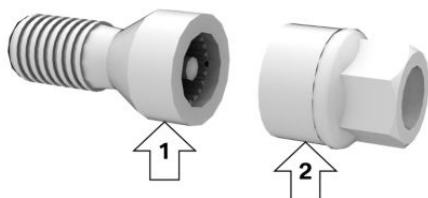
Principle

The locking wheel bolts offer effective protection against wheel theft.

The locking wheel bolts have a special coding. The bolts can only be released with an adapter that matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the locking wheel bolts can be found in the toolkit or in an oddments tray in the toolkit.



- Locking wheel bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. To unscrew the locking wheel bolt, place the adapter on the locking wheel bolt.
2. Unscrew the locking wheel bolt.
3. After unscrewing the wheel bolt, remove the adapter again.

Screwing in

1. To screw on the locking wheel bolt, place the adapter on the locking wheel bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the locking wheel bolt.
2. Screw on the locking wheel bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, 101 lb ft.
3. After screwing on, remove the adapter again.

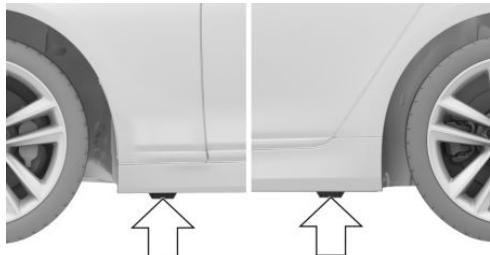


Safety measures

The following safety precautions must be taken when changing a wheel:

- ▷ Park the vehicle on firm and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▷ Engage a gear or select selector lever position P.
- ▷ As soon as the traffic flow permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ If necessary, set up the warning triangle or hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, take the wheel change set and, if applicable, the emergency spare wheel out of the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle should be additionally secured to prevent it from rolling away.
- ▷ Undo the wheel bolts by half a turn.

Jacking points



The jacking points are located in the marked positions.

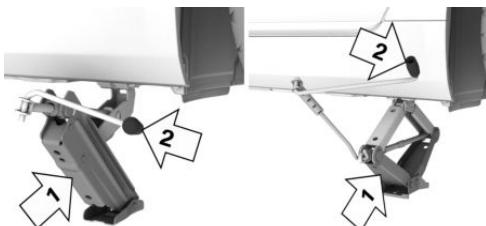
Raising the vehicle

⚠️ WARNING

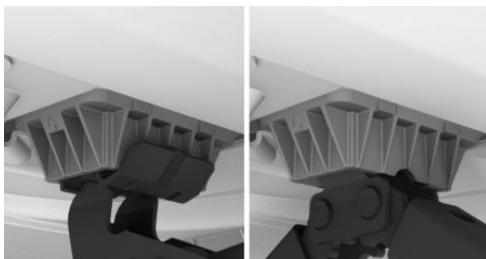
Hands or fingers could get trapped when using the jack. There is a danger of injury. Keep your hands in the described position when using the jack, and do not change this position.

To raise the vehicle, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank handle or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



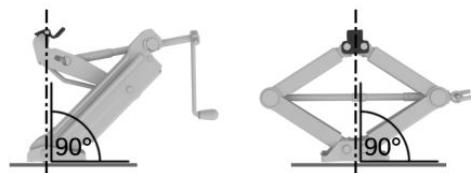
2. Guide the jack into the rectangular recess of the jocking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



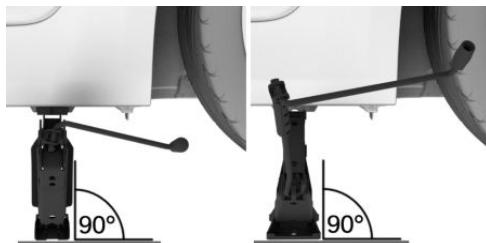
- Turn the jack crank handle or lever clockwise to extend the jack.



- Remove your hand from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue to turn the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.
- Make sure that the jack base is extended vertically and at right angles underneath the jacking point.



- Make sure that the jack base is vertical and at right angles below the jacking point after extension.



- Raise by cranking until the surface of the jack stands fully on the ground and the wheel in question is a maximum of 3 cm, 1.2 inches off the ground.

Fitting a wheel

No more than one emergency spare wheel may be fitted.

To perform a wheel change, proceed as follows:

- Unscrew the wheel bolts.
 - Remove the wheel.
 - Put on the new wheel or emergency spare wheel and tighten at least two wheel bolts crosswise until finger-tight.
- If installing non-original light alloy wheels not supplied by the manufacturer, the wheel bolts belonging to the wheels may also have to be used.
- Tighten the remaining wheel bolts until finger-tight and then tighten all the wheel bolts crosswise.
 - Turn the jack crank handle anticlockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
 - Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After wheel change

After changing the wheel, carry out the following steps:

- Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, 101 lb ft.
- Stow the faulty wheel in the luggage compartment, if necessary.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
- Re-initialise the flat tyre monitor or reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.
- Check the tight fit of the wheel bolts using a calibrated torque wrench.
- Drive to the nearest authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the damaged tyre replaced.



Emergency spare wheel

Principle

In case of a flat tyre, a maximum of one emergency spare wheel can be used as a replacement for defective tyres. The emergency spare wheel is intended for short-term use until the defective wheel has been replaced.

General

Additionally, regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency spare wheel in the luggage compartment and correct the pressure if necessary.

Safety information

WARNING

The emergency spare wheel has special dimensions. When driving with an emergency spare wheel, the driving properties may change, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering properties in the limit range. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

WARNING

If the emergency spare wheel is used for too long, the vehicle can be damaged. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed distance travelled of 1000 km, approx. 600 miles.

Overview

The emergency spare wheel and wheel change set for changing wheels are located in the luggage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.

Removing emergency spare wheel

To remove the emergency spare wheel, proceed as follows:

1. Pull up and remove the luggage compartment floor.
2. Undo the wing screw.
3. Remove the holder or the cover.
4. Where applicable, remove the mount with the trailer tow hitch.
5. Remove the jack and tool holder on the left next to the emergency spare wheel.
6. Push the emergency spare wheel to the left and remove.

Inserting the emergency spare wheel

To stow the emergency spare wheel, proceed as follows:

1. Insert the emergency spare wheel on the left and slide it to the right.
2. Where applicable, stow the mount with the trailer tow hitch.
3. Position the holder or cover.
4. Screw on and tighten the wing screw.
5. Insert and secure the jack and tool holder on the left next to the emergency spare wheel.
6. Insert the luggage compartment floor.

Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

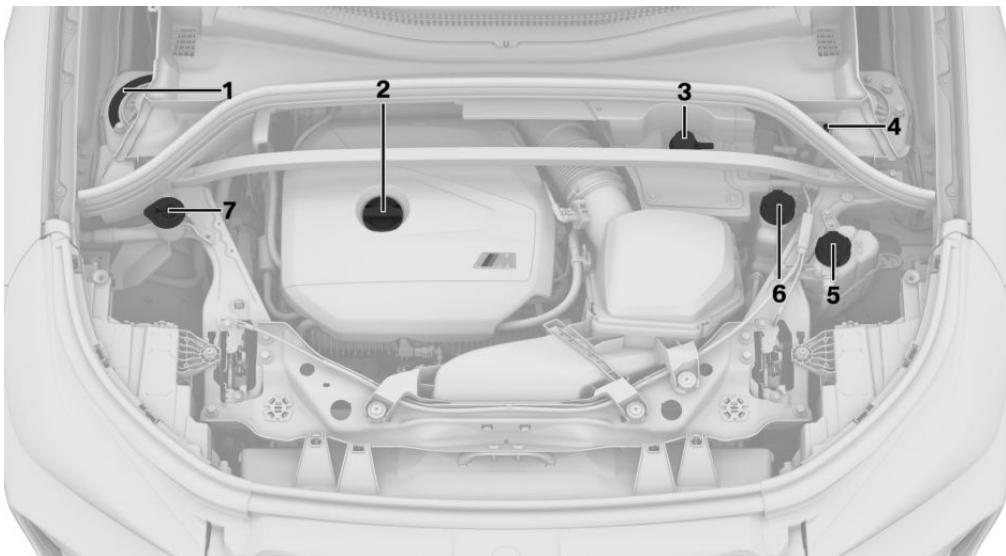
This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even

if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Overview



1 Vehicle identification number

2 Oil filler neck

3 Jump start, positive battery terminal

4 Jump start, negative battery terminal

5 Additional coolant expansion tank cooling

6 Engine coolant expansion tank

7 Filler neck for washer fluid

Bonnet

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

Incorrectly performed work in the engine compartment can damage components and poses a safety risk. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Have work in the engine compartment carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

⚠️ WARNING

The engine compartment contains moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move when the vehicle is switched off, for example the radiator fan. There is a danger of injury. Do not reach into an area where there are moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

⚠️ WARNING

The bonnet has protruding parts on the inside, for example locking hooks. There is a danger of injury. When the bonnet is open, watch out for protruding parts and keep these areas clear.

⚠️ WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly locked, it can come open during the journey and impair visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and close the bonnet correctly.

⚠️ WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when opening and closing the bonnet. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the bonnet is kept clear.

⚠️ NOTICE

Windscreen wipers which are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the bonnet is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wipers are fitted with wiper blades and are in contact with the windscreen.

⚠️ NOTICE

When closing, the bonnet must lock into place on both sides. Applying additional pressure can damage the bonnet. There is a risk of material damage. Open the bonnet again and close it firmly. Avoid applying additional pressure.

Opening bonnet

1. In the footwell, pull the lever to open the bonnet, arrow 1.

The bonnet is unlocked.

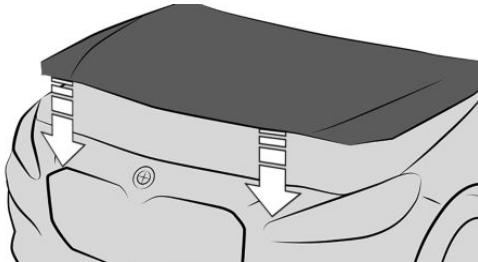


2. Release the lever and pull it again, arrow 2.

The bonnet can be opened.

3. Watch out for any protruding parts on the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet



Allow the bonnet to drop from a height of approximately 50 cm, approx. 20 in.

The bonnet must engage on both sides.

Operating fluids

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Fuel grade

General

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that is adapted to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is sold in winter helps with cold starting, for example.

Petrol

General

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or have a low sulphur content.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

You can fill up with fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, for example E10 or E25.



The engine has knock control. This means that different petrol grades can be used.

When using fuel of the minimum quality RON 91 or fuel with ethanol content of more than 10 % to a maximum of 25 %, knocking noises as well as driving and acoustic abnormalities may occur. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

NOTICE

The fuel system and engine can be damaged by the wrong fuel, even in small quantities, and by the wrong fuel additives. In addition, the catalytic converter will be permanently damaged. There is a risk of material damage. For petrol engines, do not refuel with or add the following:

- ▷ Leaded petrol.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for example manganese or iron.

After filling with the wrong fuel, do not press the Start/Stop button. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTICE

Fuel below the specified minimum grade can adversely affect engine function or lead to engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with fuel below the specified minimum grade.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with fuel with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuel containing methanol, for example M5 to M100.

Petrol grade

The engine is designed to run on petrol complying with DIN EN 228.

Super, RON 95.

Minimum grade

Unleaded petrol, RON 91.

Diesel

General

The following diesel fuels can be used for refuelling:

- ▷ Diesel fuels with a maximum biodiesel content of 10 %, e.g. B7 or B10.
- ▷ Paraffinic diesel fuels, e.g. XTL.



Safety information

NOTICE

The fuel system and engine can be damaged by the wrong fuel, even in small quantities, and by the wrong fuel additives. There is a risk of material damage.

Note the following with diesel engines:

- ▷ Do not fill up with petrol.
- ▷ Observe the minimum quality.
- ▷ Refuel with sulphur-free fuels or fuels with the lowest possible sulphur content.
- ▷ The vehicle manufacturer recommends only using diesel additives and additives that have been classified as suitable.

After filling with the wrong fuel, do not press the Start/Stop button. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Diesel quality

The engine is designed to run on diesel fuel complying with DIN EN 590 and ASTM D975.

Diesel with up to 7 % biodiesel (B7).

Minimum grade

Diesel with up to 10 % biodiesel (B10).

Paraffinic diesel fuel as per EN 15940.

**BMW recommends
Shell Quality Fuels** 

BMW Diesel with BluePerformance

Principle

BMW Diesel with BluePerformance reduces nitrogen oxides in the diesel exhaust by injecting the reducing agent AdBlue into the exhaust pipe system. In the catalytic converter, this produces a chemical reaction that reduces nitrogen oxides to a minimum.

General

The vehicle has a tank which requires topping up.

There must be a sufficient amount of the reducing agent present in order for drive-ready state to be activated the usual way.

The reducing agent can be topped up at any time.

The reducing agent AdBlue is a registered trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e. V. (VDA).

The reducing agent is available at many service stations.

Preferably top up with reducing agent at a pump dispenser.

Displays on the control display

Displaying filling level and top-up quantity

The filling level and the top-up quantity of the reducing agent are shown on the control display.

Select the following menu path via iDrive:
menu Apps / / / /

If the filling level is too low, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Fuel reserve indicator light

The fuel reserve indicator light in the instrument cluster notifies you if the reducing agent fill level in the tank is low.

Do not allow the reducing agent tank to run completely empty, as otherwise it will not be possible to switch drive-ready state back on after stopping the engine.



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster: filling level too low. The remaining range is shown in the instrument cluster. Top up with at least 5 litres, 1.3 gal of reducing agent immediately.

AdBlue on the minimum level



If the tank for reducing agent has run empty, an indicator light is displayed in the instrument cluster. Immediately top up with at least 15 litres, 4 gal of reducing agent. The engine will continue to run provided that it is not stopped and all other operating conditions are met, for example, there is sufficient fuel.

System fault

If there is a system fault, a Check Control message is displayed.

Visit the nearest authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Having AdBlue topped up

BMW recommends having the reducing agent topped up by a Service Partner as part of a regular maintenance schedule.

If you keep to this maintenance schedule, a single top-up is generally required between the maintenance appointments.

As soon as the fuel reserve indicator light is shown in the instrument cluster, have the reducing agent topped up, to avoid problems activating drive-ready state.

Topping up AdBlue yourself

Safety information

WARNING

When the reducing agent container is opened, small quantities of ammonia vapours can emerge. Ammonia vapours have a pungent smell and irritate the skin, mucous membranes and eyes. There is a danger of injury. Do not inhale ammonia vapours. Do not allow reducing agent to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow it. Keep children away from reducing agents.

WARNING

Operating fluids, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour operating fluids into other bottles. Keep operating fluids out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

The constituents of the reducing agent are highly aggressive. There is a risk of material damage. Do not allow reducing agent to come into contact with vehicle surfaces.

Suitable AdBlue

AdBlue complying with ISO 22241-1

At many service stations, reducing agent is available at a special pump dispenser. Preferably top up with reducing agent at a pump dispenser.

If no pump dispenser is available, reducing agent can be topped up from a container. Reducing agent is available in various containers. Preferably use the special bottle recommended by BMW. With this bottle and its special adapter, reducing agent can be topped up conveniently.

AdBlue at low temperatures

At outside temperatures below -11 °C/+12 °F, the reducing agent should only be topped up directly before the start of a journey.

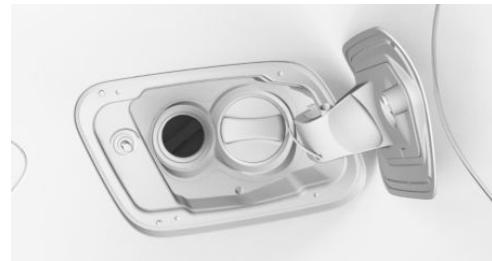
Top-up quantity

As soon as the reserve indicator light is displayed, top up at least 5 litres, approx. 1.3 gal reducing agent.

Displaying the top-up quantity

To display the top-up quantity of the reducing agent on the control display, select the following menu path: menu Apps / / / / .

Reducing agent tank



The fuel filler cap for the reducing agent is located next to the fuel filler cap for the fuel tank.

Topping up with reducing agent at the pump dispenser

General

When refilling reducing agent, hook the nozzle into the filler pipe. Lifting the fuel pump nozzle while topping up will cause the following to happen:

- ▶ The supply is stopped too soon.
- ▶ Overflow of reducing agent.

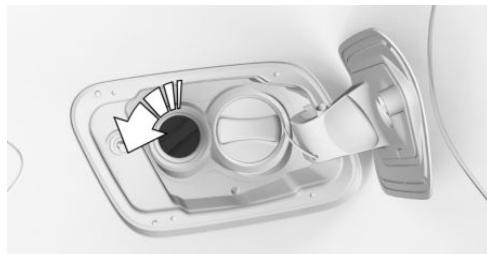
The reducing agent tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Please comply with the safety regulations displayed at filling stations.

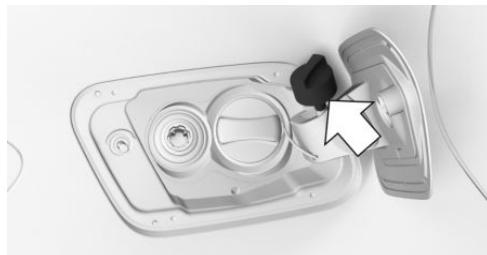
Adding reducing agent

To refill reducing agent, proceed as follows:

1. Open the fuel filler flap.
2. Turn the reducing agent cap anticlockwise and remove.

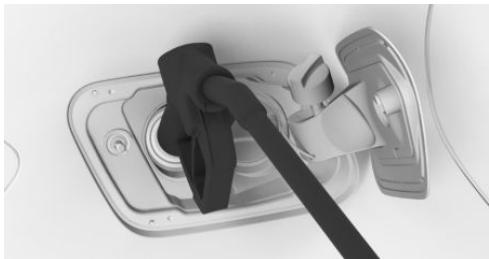


3. Place the fuel filler cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



4. Use the fuel pump nozzle to add the recommended top-up quantity as a minimum.

The tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle cuts out for the first time.



5. Put fuel filler cap on and turn clockwise.
6. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

For further information:

Fuel filler cap, see page [328](#).

Filling with an incorrect fluid

General

A Check Control message is displayed if the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid.

If the wrong type of liquid has been added, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

After filling with an incorrect liquid, the system may heat up and catch fire. There is a risk of fire and injury. Only fill with liquids that are intended for the tank. Do not start the engine after filling with an incorrect liquid.

After filling with reducing agent

Fuel reserve indicator light



After topping up the reducing agent, the reserve display continues to be shown with the remaining range.

Drive-ready state can be activated.

After driving for a short time, the fuel reserve indicator light turns off.

AdBlue on the minimum level



The display in the instrument cluster is still shown after refilling reducing agent.

Drive-ready state can only be activated when the display is no longer illuminated.

1. Press the Start/Stop button three times.
The display extinguishes after approximately 1 minute.
2. Press the Start/Stop button and switch on drive-ready state.

Engine oil

General

The engine oil consumption and the properties of the engine oil depend on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore check the engine oil level regularly each time you fill up with fuel by taking a detailed measurement.

Engine oil consumption may increase due to the following, for example:

- ▷ Dynamic driving style.
- ▷ While running in the engine.

- ▷ Engine idling.
- ▷ Use of engine oil grades rated as unsuitable.

Depending on the engine oil level and properties of the engine oil, different Check Control messages are displayed on the control display.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the engine oil changed by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

NOTICE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTICE

If the engine oil is not changed at the correct time, engine wear may increase which could cause engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not exceed the service date indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

General

Electronic oil measurement uses two measuring procedures:

- ▶ Monitoring.
- ▶ Detailed measurement.

When frequently making short journeys or using a sporty driving style, for example fast cornering, perform a detailed measurement at regular intervals.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically during the journey and can be shown on the control display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

Operating requirements

A current reading is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

To display the engine oil level on the control display, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / / /

System limits

When frequently making short journeys or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to obtain a measurement. In this case, the measurement for the last, sufficiently long journey is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

During a detailed measurement, the engine oil level is checked at standstill and displayed on a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

General

During measurement, the idle rotational speed is increased slightly.

Operating requirements

Observe the following functional requirements for a detailed measurement:

- ▶ The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- ▶ Drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▶ The engine is at operating temperature.
- ▶ The selector lever is in position N or P and the accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Carrying out a detailed measurement

To perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level, select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / / / /

The engine oil level is checked and shown on a scale.

Topping up engine oil

General

Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is specified in the message on the control display.

Only top up with suitable engine oil grades.

Stop the vehicle safely and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Do not add too much engine oil.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating fluids, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with

clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour operating fluids into other bottles. Keep operating fluids out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is in the engine compartment.

For further information:

Overview, see page [353](#).

Topping up engine oil

To top up the engine oil, proceed as follows:

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Open the cap in the engine compartment by turning it counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the cap in the engine compartment.

For further information:

Open bonnet, see page [354](#).

Engine oil grades for topping up

General

Engine oil quality is a critical factor in the service life of the engine.

Only top up with the types of engine oil that are listed.

Some engine oil grades may not be available in all countries.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Using the wrong engine oil can result in engine malfunctions and damage. There is a risk of material damage. When selecting the engine oil, make sure that it is the correct oil specification.

Suitable engine oil grades

Engine oil with the following oil specification can be topped up:

Petrol engine

BMW Longlife-12 FE.

BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

BMW Longlife-19 FE.



Diesel engine

BMW Longlife-12 FE.

BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil grades

If suitable engine oils are not available, up to 1 litre, approx. 2 pints, of an engine oil with the following oil specification can be used for topping up:

Petrol engine

ACEA C2.

ACEA C3.

ACEA C5.

Diesel engine

ACEA C2.

ACEA C5.

Viscosity classes

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil belongs to one of the following viscosity classes:

Petrol engine

SAE 0W-20.

SAE 0W-30.

Diesel engine

SAE 0W-20.

SAE 0W-30.

Viscosity classes with a high viscosity grade can increase fuel consumption.

Further information on suitable engine oil specifications and viscosity classes can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or

another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

**BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.**

Coolant

General

Coolant is a mixture of water and coolant additive.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix additives of different colours. Comply with the 50:50 mixing ratio of water to additive. Information regarding suitable additives is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

If the cooling system is opened when the engine is hot, coolant can escape and cause scalding. There is a danger of injury. Only open the cooling system when the engine has cooled down.

WARNING

Additives are harmful to health and using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Do not allow additives to come into con-

tact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow them. Only use suitable additives.

Coolant level

General

On factory delivery, the coolant may be over-filled in the coolant tank. The normal coolant level is achieved by an extended operating time.

The target coolant level is indicated by means of the max. mark in the coolant filler neck of the coolant tank.

For further information:

Overview, see page [353](#).

Checking the coolant level

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Open the bonnet.
3. Turn the cap on coolant expansion tank slightly anticlockwise to allow the excess pressure to escape.
4. Open the cap of the coolant expansion tank.
5. The coolant level is correct if it is just below the max. mark in the filler neck.



6. Close the cap of the coolant tank.

For further information:

Open bonnet, see page [354](#).

Topping up the coolant

Proceed as follows to top up the coolant:

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Open the bonnet.
3. Turn the cap on coolant expansion tank slightly anticlockwise to allow the excess pressure to escape.
4. Open the cap of the coolant expansion tank.
5. If required, slowly top up to the correct filling level; do not overfill.
6. Close the cap.
7. Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

For further information:

Open bonnet, see page [354](#).

Disposal



When disposing of coolant and coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations.

Washer fluid

General

All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and screenwash concentrate for the window washer system, if necessary with the antifreeze additive.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 2 litres/3.5 Imp. pints.

Safety information

WARNING

Some antifreeze additives can contain toxic substances, and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and danger of injury. Please comply with the instructions on the containers.



Keep antifreeze additives away from sources of combustion. Do not pour operating fluids into other bottles. Keep operating fluids out of the reach of children.

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite on contact with hot parts of the engine and catch fire. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down. Afterwards fully close the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicone additives mixed with the washer fluid for their water beading effect on the windows may damage the car wash. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add silicone additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different screenwash concentrates or antifreeze additives may damage the car wash. There is a risk of material damage. Do not mix different screenwash concentrates or antifreeze additives. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.

Overview



The reservoir for the washer fluid is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

Using undiluted screenwash concentrate or antifreeze additive based on alcohol may result in false readings at low temperatures below -15 °C, +5 °F.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Information on service requirements can be shown on the control display.

For further information:

Service requirements, see page [163](#).

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on maintenance requirement is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The Service Partner can read out this data and suggest a programme of maintenance for your vehicle.

Give the service advisor the vehicle key that was last used to drive the vehicle.

BMW Maintenance System

Principle

The maintenance system indicates what maintenance measures are required and thereby assists in maintaining the road safety and operational safety of the vehicle.

General

The exact work required and the maintenance intervals may vary depending on the national-market version. Labour, spare parts, operating materials and wear materials are charged separately. Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods when the vehicle is out of use with its vehicle battery disconnected are not taken into account.

In such cases, have any time-dependent maintenance procedures, for example those concerning the brake fluid, engine oil and the microfilter/activated carbon filter, updated by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Service history

Maintenance and repairs

Have maintenance and repairs carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Entries

The maintenance work carried out is entered in the maintenance records and the vehicle data. As with a Service Booklet, the entries serve as proof of regular maintenance.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance requirement using sensors and special algorithms which monitor the conditions in which the vehicle is used.

The maintenance requirement is determined taking into account the individual usage profile of the vehicle.

When data is entered into the vehicle's electronic service history, any service-relevant data is saved both in the vehicle and in the central IT systems of BMW AG, Munich.

After a change of registered keeper, the new owner will be able to view the data entered in the electronic service history. Similarly, an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can also view the data entered in the electronic service history.

Objection

The registered keeper is entitled to contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop and request that no entries are made in the electronic service history and that no data relating to his/her time as owner is subsequently stored in the vehicle or transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. In such cases, no entries will be made in the vehicle's electronic service history.

Displays

The entered services can be shown on the control display.

For further information:

Service requirements, see page [163](#).

Socket for on-board diagnosis

General

Devices connected to the on-board diagnostic socket trigger the alarm system after locking the vehicle.

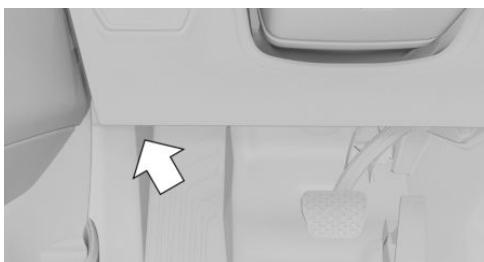
Remove devices connected to the on-board diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

Incorrect use of the on-board diagnostic socket can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Service and maintenance work involving the on-board diagnostic socket must be carried out by an authorised Service Partner, or another qualified Service Partner, or a specialist workshop, or other authorised persons. Only connect devices that have been tested and found to be safe for use with the socket for on-board diagnosis.

Position



Left-hand drive vehicle: There is an on-board diagnostic socket on the driver's side for reading out vehicle data.

Right-hand drive vehicle: On the driver's side, behind a marked cover on the side panel, there is an on-board diagnostic socket for reading out vehicle data.

Engine warning light



- ▷ When the warning light flashes:
There is an engine fault which could damage the catalytic converter.
Have the vehicle checked immediately.

- ▷ When warning light illuminates:

Emission levels have deteriorated. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Recycling vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends returning the vehicle to a collection point nominated by the manufacturer at the end of its life cycle. The relevant national legal provisions apply to returns and recycling in general. Information on recycling and sustainability can be found on the manufacturer's country-specific websites. Further information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Replacing parts

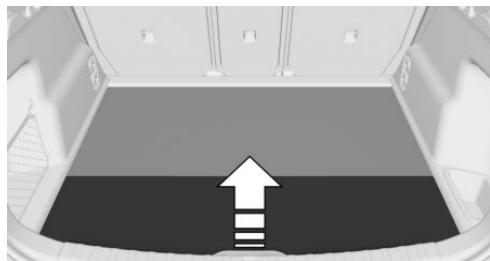
Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Toolkit



The toolkit is located under the luggage compartment floor.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The windscreen may sustain damage if a windscreen wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade fitted. There is a risk of material damage. Hold the windscreen wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the windscreen wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

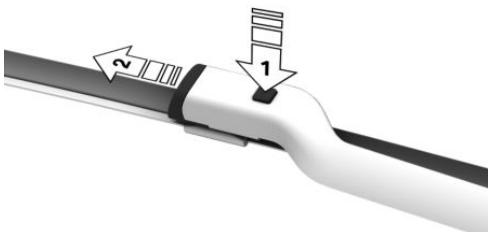
Windscreen wipers which are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the bonnet is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wipers are fitted with wiper blades and are in contact with the windscreen.

Replacing the front wiper blades

1. To replace the wiper blades, move the wipers to the fold-out position.
2. Lift the windscreen wipers away from the windscreen and hold them securely.



3. Press the button on the wiper, arrow 1, turn the wiper blade a little clockwise and pull it outwards, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it into the holder until it audibly engages
5. Fold in the windscreen wipers.

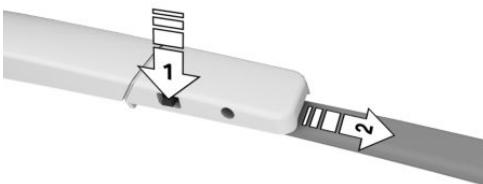
For further information:

For fold-out position of the windscreen wipers,
see page 143.

Replacing the rear wiper blade

The wiper blade locks into place at the end of the wiper arm.

1. Push the wiper down, arrow 1, and pull off the wiper blade, arrow 2.



2. Insert the new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.

Lights and bulbs

General

Lights and bulbs are an important aspect of driving safety.

All headlights and other lights use at least LED technology.

In the event of a fault, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the relevant work carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

Intense brightness can irritate or harm the retina of the eye. There is a danger of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove covers from LEDs.

Headlight glass

During cool or humid weather, the headlight glass can mist over on the inside. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight glass.

If moisture increases, for example if there are water droplets in the lamp despite the headlights being switched on, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information regarding the battery can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that could be live.

WARNING

Vehicle batteries that are classified as unsuitable may damage systems or result in functions no longer being carried out. There is a danger of injury or material damage. Only use vehicle batteries that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer.

Registering the battery with the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop register the vehicle battery with the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort functions will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages relating to the comfort functions will no longer be displayed.

Hazard icons

The following hazard icons can be found on the vehicle battery:

Icon	Meaning
	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks.
	Wear protective goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of acid burns: wear gloves, do not tilt the battery.

Icon	Meaning
	Rinse any splashes of acid with water immediately. If acid comes into contact with eyes or is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.
	No direct sunlight, no frost.
	Follow the operating instructions.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not seal any openings on the battery.

Replacing the battery

General

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends only having the vehicle battery replaced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If the battery is not replaced correctly, the vehicle may not recognise it properly and perfect functioning cannot be guaranteed.

Notes on removal

Observe the following notes on removing the vehicle battery:

- ▷ Park the vehicle and switch off consumers.
- ▷ First disconnect the power at the negative terminal. Then disconnect the power at the positive terminal.

Notes on installation

Observe the following notes on installing the vehicle battery:

- ▷ Remove any foreign bodies from the battery holder.
- ▷ Only install the battery in the intended position in the vehicle.

- ▷ Keep the battery and vehicle connection contacts clean.
- ▷ First connect the power at the positive terminal. Then connect the power at the negative terminal.
- ▷ Use the connections, connectors and covers provided.
- ▷ Connect a hose to the gas outlet opening if necessary.

Initial operation

The battery is operational. No special precautions are required for start-up.

Charging the battery

General

To ensure the full service life of the battery, keep the battery sufficiently charged.

Charge the battery under the following situations:

- ▷ If the inspection glass on the top of the battery is black.
- ▷ If there is not enough power to start the vehicle.

The following conditions can have a negative effect on battery performance:

- ▷ Frequently driving short distances.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for a period of one month or longer.

Safety information

NOTICE

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Battery charger

Battery chargers developed especially for the vehicle and suitable for the electrical system can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Charging the battery

Only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment and with the engine switched off.

With mild hybrid technology: only charge the battery when the bonnet is open.

For further information:

Jump start terminals, see page [381](#).

Open circuit

Following an open circuit, some equipment will have to be reinitialised or individual settings will need to be updated, for example:

- ▷ Initialise the parking brake.
- ▷ With memory function: save positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.

For further information:

Initialising the parking brake after power failure, see page [138](#).

Deep sleep mode

Use deep sleep mode for long stationary periods.

For further information:

Rest state, see page [45](#)

Storing the battery

Observe the following information on storing vehicle batteries:



- ▶ Store the battery in a cool and dry place.
- ▶ Protect the battery from direct sunlight and frost.
- ▶ Only clean the battery with a damp, anti-static cloth.
- ▶ Store the battery upright and secure it against falling over.
- ▶ Install the oldest batteries first.
- ▶ Do not remove the protective cap from the contacts.
- ▶ Charge or install the battery by the date on the battery label at the latest. Once fully charged, the battery will work for another 10 months.

Mild hybrid technology

Principle

The vehicle's mild hybrid technology includes a 48 volt battery. Mild hybrid technology can reduce fuel consumption.

Safety information

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that could be live.

Notice

Do not replace or work on the mild hybrid technology battery.

Disposing of the old battery

 Dispose of old batteries with an authorised Service Partner, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, or hand them in to an authorised collection point.

Batteries filled with acid should be transported upright. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit.

Warranty

See the vehicle purchase contract for information on the battery warranty.

Fuses

General

The fuses are located at different positions in the vehicle.

Information on fuse assignment, as well as the positions of the fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: fusecard.bmw.com.

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect or repaired fuses can overload electrical cables and components. There is a risk of fire. Do not repair blown fuses or replace them with fuses with a different colour or amp rating.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having fuses changed by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Help in case of a breakdown

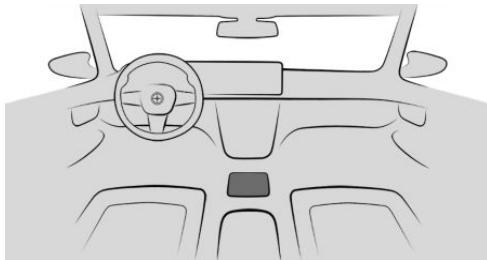
Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

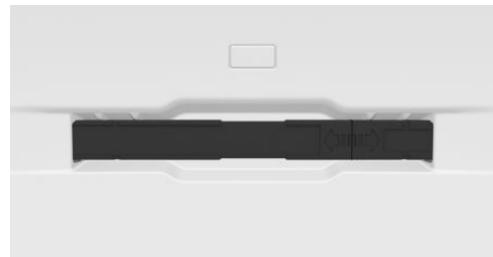
Hazard warning lights



 The button for the hazard warning lights is located in the centre console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning lights are turned on.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is housed on the inside of the tailgate.

To remove it, slide the warning triangle to the side.

First-aid kit

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the vehicle may have a first-aid kit.

Some items in the kit have a limited life.

Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time.

Storage

The first-aid kit is housed in the luggage compartment.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW Roadside Assistance. It is possible that malfunctions can be remedied directly.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance:

- ▷ Via supplementary text messages in the Check Control message.
- ▷ By calling with a mobile phone.
- ▷ Via the My BMW App.

Depending on the national-market version and vehicle type, a different roadside assistance provider can be assigned via the ConnectedDrive Customer Portal if necessary.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance manually

When equipped with Teleservices, support is provided first through Teleservice Diagnosis and then by Teleservice help if required.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "BMW Assistance"
2. "BMW Roadside Assistance" or select the desired service.

Follow the displays on the control display. A voice contact is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnostics enables detailed vehicle data, which is necessary for vehicle diagnosis, to be transmitted via mobile communication. This data is transferred automatically. It

may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Assistance

Teleservice Assistance is a country-specific feature that allows BMW Roadside Assistance to carry out a more in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle via mobile radio.

Teleservice Assistance can be started after a request by BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Turn on control display.
4. Consent to Teleservice help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident that did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. A corresponding text message also appears on the control display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is transferred to BMW.

Depending on the national-market version and vehicle type, a different accident assistance provider can be assigned via the ConnectedDrive Customer Portal if necessary.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A BMW Accident Assistance text message is shown on the control display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

For a short time, the Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be retrieved from the saved Check Control messages.

For further information:

Check Control, see page [147](#).

Starting BMW Accident Assistance manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. Select the following menu path via iDrive: menu Apps / "ALL" / "BMW Assistance"
2. "BMW Accident Assistance" or select the desired service.

Follow the displays on the control display.
A voice contact is established.

Emergency call

Statutory emergency call

Principle

In emergency situations, an emergency call can be triggered automatically or manually via the system.

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the vehicle may have an emergency call system.

Press the SOS button in the headliner only in an emergency.

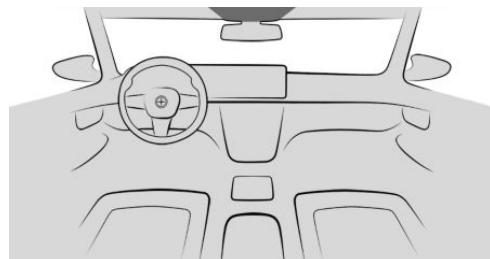
The emergency call establishes a connection to a public emergency call number.

This depends on factors such as the specific mobile communications network and national regulations, among others.

The emergency call is placed using the integrated SIM card in the vehicle and cannot be switched off.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview



The SOS button is located in the headliner.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Emergency call system is functional.
- ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the integrated SIM card in the vehicle is activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, e.g. if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is triggered automatically immediately after an accident of appropriate severity. Pressing the SOS button does not affect the automatic emergency call.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button in the headliner until the LED in the button area is illuminated green.

▷ The LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.

If a cancellation request is shown on the control display, the emergency call can be cancelled.

If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.

- ▷ The LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency call has been established.

When an emergency call is made, data is sent to the public rescue coordination centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required, for example the position of the vehicle, if this can be determined.

Even if the vehicle occupants can no longer hear the rescue coordination centre through the loudspeakers, the rescue coordination centre can still hear the vehicle occupants speak.

The rescue coordination centre ends the emergency call.

Further information on data transfer and storage:

Statutory emergency call system, see page 16.

Malfunction

The emergency call function may be impaired. The LED in the area of the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is shown.

Have it checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

The system can be used to trigger an emergency call automatically or manually in emergency situations.

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the vehicle may have an emergency call system.

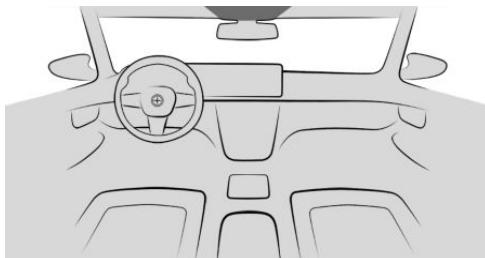
Press the SOS button in the headliner only in an emergency.

The intelligent emergency call system establishes a connection with the BMW emergency call centre.

Even if no emergency call through BMW is possible, in some cases an emergency call may still be established to a public emergency call number. This depends on factors such as the specific mobile phone network and national regulations, among others.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview



 The SOS button is located in the headliner.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Emergency call system is functional.
- ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the integrated SIM card in the vehicle is activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, e.g. if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is triggered automatically immediately after an accident of appropriate severity. Pressing the SOS button does not affect the automatic emergency call.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover flap.
 2. Press and hold the SOS button in the headliner until the LED in the button area is illuminated green.
- ▷ The LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.
- If a cancellation request is shown on the control display, the emergency call can be cancelled.
- If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.
- ▷ The LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency call has been established.

When an emergency call is made through BMW, data such as the vehicle's current position, if this can be determined, is sent to the emergency call centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required.

If questions asked by the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are implemented automatically.

Even if the vehicle occupants can no longer hear the emergency call centre through the loudspeakers, the emergency call centre can still hear the vehicle occupants speak.

The emergency call centre ends the emergency call.

Malfunction

The emergency call function may be impaired. The LED in the area of the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is shown.

Have it checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Fire extinguisher

Principle

The fire extinguisher can be used to put out vehicle fires.

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the vehicle may have a fire extinguisher.



Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

Incorrect use of the fire extinguisher can cause injury. There is a danger of injury. Observe the information below when using the fire extinguisher:

- ▷ Do not inhale the extinguishing agent. If the extinguishing agent has been inhaled, move the affected person into fresh air. If the casualty experiences breathing difficulties, contact a doctor immediately.
- ▷ Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the skin. Prolonged contact with the extinguishing agent can cause the skin to dry out.
- ▷ Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the eyes. In the event of contact with the eyes, rinse them immediately with plenty of water. In case of prolonged discomfort, contact a doctor.

⚠️ WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Ensure that items in the vehicle are stowed securely and cannot get into the driver's footwell.

Overview

The fire extinguisher is located in the interior, for example under the seat or in the glove compartment.

Removing the fire extinguisher

Open the buckles on the retaining strap.

Using the fire extinguisher

To use the fire extinguisher, follow the manufacturer's instructions on the fire extinguisher and the information supplied with it.

Stowing the fire extinguisher

1. Insert the fire extinguisher into the holder.
2. Hook in and close the buckles.

Maintenance and refilling

Have the fire extinguisher checked every 2 years by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Make a note of the next maintenance date for the fire extinguisher.

Replace the fire extinguisher after use or have it refilled.

Jump start

General

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the engine can be started from another vehicle's battery using two jump leads. Only use jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.

Safety information

⚠️ DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that could be live.

WARNING

Connecting the jump lead in the wrong sequence can cause sparks. There is a danger of injury. Please comply with the correct sequence when connecting.

NOTICE

Contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles when jump-starting can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure there is no contact between vehicle bodies.

Preparations

1. Check whether the battery in the other vehicle shows 12 V voltage. Information about the voltage is provided on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the donor vehicle.
3. Switch off any power consumers in both vehicles.

Jump start terminals

The starting aid terminals are located in the engine compartment.

Open the lid of the starting aid terminals.

For further information:

Overview, see page [353](#).

Connecting the cables

Before starting, switch off all unnecessary power consumers, for example the radio, on both vehicles.

1. Open the cover of the jump start terminal.
2. Connect a terminal clamp of the positive/+ jump lead to the positive battery terminal or the corresponding jump start terminal on the donor vehicle.
3. Connect the second terminal clamp to the positive battery terminal or to the corre-

sponding jump start terminal on the vehicle being started.

4. Connect a terminal clamp of the negative/- jump lead to the negative battery terminal or the corresponding engine or body ground on the donor vehicle.
5. Connect the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal or to a corresponding engine or body ground on the vehicle being started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray products to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly higher idle rotational speed.
If starting a vehicle with diesel engine: allow the engine of the donor vehicle to run for approximately 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle to be started in the usual way.
If an initial start attempt fails, wait a few minutes before trying again to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Allow both engines to run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jump leads in reverse order to connection.

Check the battery and have it recharged if necessary.

Tow-starting/towing away

Safety information

WARNING

Individual functions may malfunction when tow-starting or towing away with activated front-collision warning or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Turn

off the front-collision warning and Cruise Control before tow-starting or towing away.

Without xDrive: transporting vehicle

General

The vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are in contact with the ground.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

If the vehicle is towed away with the rear axle raised, the vehicle can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Only have the vehicle towed away with the front axle raised or have it transported on a loading platform.

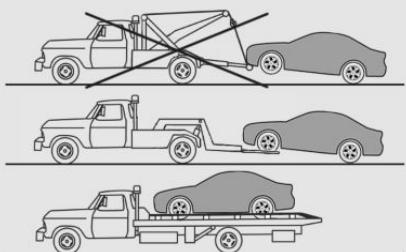
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from a danger area, it can be pushed over a short distance at a maximum speed of 10 km/h, 6 mph.

For further information:

For rolling or pushing the vehicle, see page [130](#).

Recovery vehicle



Have the vehicle transported by a recovery vehicle with a spectacle lift, or hoisted onto a loading platform.

⚠ NOTICE

The vehicle may be damaged when raising and securing it.

There is a risk of material damage.

- ▷ Use suitable equipment to raise the vehicle.
- ▷ Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing eye, body parts or suspension parts.

With xDrive: transporting the vehicle

General

The vehicle must not be towed for transport.

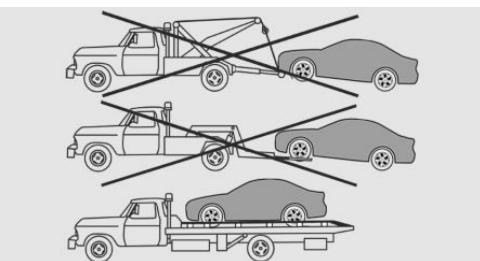
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from a danger area, it can be pushed over a short distance at a maximum speed of 10 km/h, 6 mph.

For further information:

Roll or push the vehicle, see page [130](#).

Recovery vehicle



Only have the vehicle transported on a loading platform.

⚠ NOTICE

The vehicle may be damaged when raising and securing it.

There is a risk of material damage.

- ▷ Use suitable equipment to raise the vehicle.
- ▷ Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing eye, body parts or suspension parts.

NOTICE

If the towbar or the towing rope is not attached correctly, other vehicle parts can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Attach the towbar or towing rope to the towing eye correctly.

Towing other vehicles

General

Switch on the hazard warning lights in line with local regulations.

If the electrical system of the vehicle being towed has failed, the vehicle must be made identifiable to other road users, for example by placing a sign or the warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the permitted total weight of the towing vehicle is less than that of the vehicle being towed, the towing eye may be torn off or it may not be possible to control the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the total weight of the towing vehicle is greater than the weight of the vehicle being towed.

WARNING

Different levels of braking may occur during tow-starting/towing away with adaptive recuperation. There is a risk of accident. Deactivate adaptive recuperation before tow-starting/towing away.

Towbar

The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

If it is impossible to avoid attaching the towbar at an angle, note the following:

- ▷ Clearance may be restricted when cornering.
- ▷ Lateral force will be generated if the towbar is installed at an angle.

Towing rope

Note the following if using a towing rope:

- ▷ Use nylon ropes or straps that will allow the vehicle to be towed smoothly.
- ▷ Fasten the towing rope so it is not twisted.
- ▷ Check the towing eye and towing rope fastening regularly.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 50 km/h, 30 mph.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 5 km, 3 miles.
- ▷ Ensure that the towing rope is taut when the towing vehicle drives off.

Towing eye

General



Always keep the screw-on towing eye in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The towing eye is located in the toolkit.

Observe the following notes when using the towing eye:

- ▷ Only use the towing eye supplied with the vehicle.
- ▷ Turn the towing eye at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in tight and as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.
- ▷ After use, unscrew the towing eye in an anti-clockwise direction.
- ▷ Only use the towing eye for towing on paved roads.
- ▷ Avoid transverse loads on the towing eye, for example do not raise the vehicle by the towing eye.
- ▷ Check the towing eye mounting regularly.

For further information:

Toolkit, see page [370](#).

Safety information

NOTICE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, the vehicle or towing eye may be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the notes on using the towing eye.

Thread for towing eye



Press the marking on the edge of the cover to press it out.

Tow-starting

Do not attempt to tow-start the vehicle.

If necessary, start the engine using the jump start.

Have the cause of the starting problems rectified by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Jump start, see page [380](#).

Care

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Vehicle wash

General

Regularly remove foreign objects, for example, leaves or snow, in the area below the windscreen.

Wash the vehicle frequently, especially in winter. Heavy soiling and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.

For further information:

For fold-out position of the windscreens wipers, see page [143](#).

Safety information

NOTICE

Damages may occur if the fuel filler flap is open while washing. There is a risk of material damage. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Remove any dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

High-pressure cleaners

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, excessive pressure or excessive temperatures can damage various components. There is a risk of material damage. Maintain a sufficient distance and do not spray for an extended period of time. Comply with the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner.

Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 60 °C, 140 °F.
- ▷ Minimum distance to sensors, cameras, seals, and lights: 30 cm, approx. 12 in.
- ▷ Minimum distance to the glass sunroof: 80 cm, 31.5 in.

Automatic car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged if automatic car washes are used incorrectly. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the following notes:

- ▷ Textile car washes or systems using soft brushes are preferable, to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- ▷ Do not drive into delete car washes or washing bays with guide rails higher than 10 cm, 4 in, to avoid damage to the body.



- ▷ Note the maximum tyre width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tyres and rims.
- ▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors to avoid damaging them.
- ▷ Deactivate the windscreen wipers and the rain sensor (if fitted) to avoid damage to the wiper system.

Entering a car wash

NOTICE

The selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are locked. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state if the vehicle is to roll, e.g. in conveyor car washes.

The vehicle must be able to roll freely while in the car wash.

Some car washes require you to leave the vehicle. It is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside in selector lever position N. If an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, a signal sounds.

For further information:

For rolling or pushing the vehicle, see page [130](#).

Exiting from a car wash

Make sure that the vehicle key is in the vehicle.

Switch on drive-ready state.

For further information:

Drive-ready state, see page [47](#).

Lights

Do not rub wet lights dry, and do not use abrasive, alcohol-based, or corrosive cleaning agents.

Soak impurities, for example insect residues, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Remove ice with a de-icer spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After vehicle wash

After vehicle wash, briefly apply the brakes to dry them, otherwise braking effect may be temporarily reduced. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove residues on the wind-screens to avoid affecting visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiping noise and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Care products

General

BMW recommends using care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or pose a health risk. There is a danger of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Use only products that are intended for vehicle cleaning. Observe the notes on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General

Regular care promotes driving safety and preserves your vehicle's value. Environmental effects in areas with high air pollution or natural contaminants, for example tree resin or pollen,

may affect the vehicle paintwork. Take such factors into consideration when deciding on the frequency and scope of vehicle care measures.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, or bird droppings, to prevent the paintwork from being damaged and discoloured.

Matt paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with matt paintwork.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather at regular intervals with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, resulting in considerable abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

To protect against discolouration, for example from clothing, clean and care for the leather approximately every two months.

Clean light-coloured leather more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster.

Use leather cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the leather.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, such as sunscreen, to prevent the leather from being altered or discoloured.

Synthetic leather care

Clean the synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfibre cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, resulting in considerable abrasion and causing the surface to become prematurely brittle.

In case of major contaminations, use a moist soft sponge or microfibre cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, such as sunscreen, to prevent the synthetic leather from being altered or discoloured.

Fabric care

General

In case of major contaminations, such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfibre cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, such as sunscreen, to prevent the fabric from being altered or discoloured.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers and other cloth upholstery in the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure that the hook and loop fasteners are closed.

Care of upholstery fabrics

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing vigorously.

Textile care

Use a microfibre cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.



Care of special parts

Display, operating elements and projection screen of the Head-up display

NOTICE

The surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g. with chemical cleaners, moisture or liquids of all kinds. There is a risk of material damage.

- ▷ Avoid applying excessive pressure and do not use abrasive materials.
- ▷ Use a dry, clean antistatic microfibre cloth for cleaning displays.
- ▷ Clean the operating elements and, depending on the equipment, clean the projection screen of the Head-up display using a damp microfibre cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

Light alloy wheels

When cleaning the wheels while they are installed on the vehicle, only use neutral rim cleaner with a pH value between 5 and 9. Do not use abrasive cleaners or high-pressure cleaners above 60 °C, 140 °F. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Corrosive, acidic or alkaline cleaners may destroy the protective coatings of adjacent parts, for example brake disc.

After cleaning, briefly apply the brakes to dry them. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome-like surfaces

Chrome-like surfaces, particularly those that have been exposed to road salt, should be cleaned carefully with plenty of water, with added shampoo if required.

Rubber parts

The surfaces of rubber parts can be contaminated or lose their shine due to environmental influences. Only use water and suitable care products for cleaning.

Rubber parts subjected to high wear and tear should be treated regularly with rubber care products. Do not use silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, otherwise these could be damaged and become a source of noise.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the window washer system.

Avoid additional manual cleaning of the wiper blades to prevent a reduction in wipe quality.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trim and fine wood parts with a damp cloth. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Treat parts made from kenaf fibres with a suitable care product only.

Plastic parts

NOTICE

Cleaning agents containing alcohol or solvents, for example nitro thinners, cold cleaners, fuel or similar can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of material damage. Clean with a microfibre cloth. Lightly moisten the cloth with water if necessary.

Do not soak the headliner.

Seat belts

WARNING

Chemical cleaners can cause irreparable damage to the fabric of the seat belts. The protective effect of the seat belts will be lost. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirt on the seat belt straps can interfere with the action of the reel and is a safety hazard.

Only clean the seat belt straps with a mild soap solution while still fitted to the vehicle.

Do not allow seat belts to retract until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Ensure that items in the vehicle are stowed securely and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after removal, for example for cleaning.

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly.

In the event of heavy soiling, clean floor carpets using a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. Rub back and forth in the direction of travel to prevent matting.

Sensors and camera lenses

General

Clean sensors or camera lenses using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Cleaning the Reversing Assist Camera

When the rear window is cleaned, the Reversing Assist Camera is also cleaned automatically.

Laying up the vehicle

Special measures need to be taken if putting the vehicle out of use for longer than three months. Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even

if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

General

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Handbook are reference figures. Data relating to a specific vehicle can deviate from this, for example, due to selected optional equipment, national-market versions or country-specific measurement procedures. Detailed values can be found in the permit documents, on signs on the vehicle or can be requested from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The information in the vehicle documents always takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Handbook.

Payload

The payload refers to a vehicle plus driver (75 kg, 165 lb) with standard equipment and does not take any optional equipment into account. Optional equipment can change the empty weight of the vehicle. This also changes the payload. The actual payload of the respective vehicle depends on the actual empty weight and can be found in the vehicle documents.

Dimensions

Dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

In addition, the height of the vehicle may vary, for example, due to tyres and load.

BMW X1

Width with mirrors	mm (in)	#tbd
Width without mirrors	mm (in)	#tbd
Height	mm (in)	#tbd
Length	mm (in)	#tbd
Wheelbase	mm (in)	#tbd
Smallest turning circle diameter	m (ft)	#tbd

Weights

X1 sDrive16i

Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, tank
90 % full, no optional equipment

Permitted total weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Payload	kg (lb)	#tbd
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted roof load	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 sDrive18i

Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, tank
90 % full, no optional equipment

Permitted total weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Payload	kg (lb)	#tbd
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted roof load	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 sDrive20i

Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, tank
90 % full, no optional equipment

Permitted total weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Payload	kg (lb)	#tbd
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted roof load	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive20i

Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, tank 90 % full, no optional equipment	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Payload	kg (lb)	#tbd
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted roof load	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive23i

Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, tank 90 % full, no optional equipment	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Payload	kg (lb)	#tbd
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted roof load	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 sDrive18d

Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, tank 90 % full, no optional equipment	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Payload	kg (lb)	#tbd
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted roof load	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive20d

Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, tank 90 % full, no optional equipment	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive20d

Payload	kg (lb)	#tbd
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted roof load	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive23d

Vehicle kerb weight ready for use, with 75 kg load, tank 90 % full, no optional equipment	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Payload	kg (lb)	#tbd
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted roof load	kg (lb)	#tbd

Trailer operation

X1 sDrive18i

Trailer loads according to EU operating permit. Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Trailer load without brake	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 sDrive20i

Trailer loads according to EU operating permit. Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Trailer load without brake	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive20i

Trailer loads according to EU operating permit. Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Trailer load without brake	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive23i

Trailer loads according to EU operating permit. Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Trailer load without brake	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive23i

Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 sDrive18d

Trailer loads according to EU operating permit. Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Trailer load without brake	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive20d

Trailer loads according to EU operating permit. Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Trailer load without brake	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)

X1 xDrive20d

Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd

X1 xDrive23d

Trailer loads according to EU operating permit. Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Trailer load without brake	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	#tbd
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	#tbd
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd
Permitted total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	#tbd

Capacities

BMW X1

Fuel tank, approx.	Litres (gal)	#tbd
Larger fuel tank, approx.	Litres (gal)	#tbd

Please observe the additional information about fuel grade, see page [356](#).

For further information:

Observe the notes on fuel grade.

Fuel grade, see page [356](#).

Seats for child restraint systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page [8](#).

Information for manufacturers of child seats

General

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on each seat, in accordance with the ECE-R 16 and ECE-R 129 standards.

Left-hand drive vehicles: Suitability of child restraint systems for each vehicle seat

Seat position – a, b)	1	3 – Airbag ON	3	4	5	6
	Airbag OFF					
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	No	Yes forward facing	Yes rearward facing	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	Yes forward facing	Yes rearward facing	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	No	R3	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	F3	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	B3	No	B3	B3	B3

A seat position without i-Size approval is not compatible with an i-Size support stand.

A seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but with no top tether, is not available.

There are no seat belt buckles for adults between the two bottom ISOFIX anchors.

a) Only use i-Size child restraint system if equipped with i-Size child seat mountings.

b) Only use a ISOFIX child restraint system if vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX or i-Size child safety seat fasteners.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left
2	Front centre
3	Front right
4	Second-row seating left
5	Second-row seating centre

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
6	Second-row seating right
7	Third-row seating left
8	Third-row seating centre
9	Third-row seating right

Right-hand drive vehicles: suitability of child restraint systems for each vehicle seat

Seat position – a, b)	1 – Airbag ON	1 – Airbag OFF	3	4	5	6
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	Yes forward facing	Yes rearward facing	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	Yes forward facing	Yes rearward facing	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	R3	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	F3	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	B3	No	No	B3	B3	B3

A seat position without i-Size approval is not compatible with an i-Size support stand.

A seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but with no top tether, is not available.

There are no seat belt buckles for adults between the two bottom ISOFIX anchors.

- a) Only use i-Size child restraint system if equipped with i-Size child seat mountings.
- b) Only use a ISOFIX child restraint system if vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX or i-Size child safety seat fasteners.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left
2	Front centre
3	Front right
4	Second-row seating left

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
5	Second-row seating centre
6	Second-row seating right
7	Third-row seating left

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
8	Third-row seating centre
9	Third-row seating right

Appendix

General

Here is where any updates to the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle are listed.

Updates after going to press

After the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle went to press, the following chapters were updated in the printed Owner's Handbook:

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D view 257

48 V technology, see Mild hybrid technology 374

A

ABS, see Anti-lock Braking System 214

Acceleration assistant, see Launch Control 133

Acceleration sensor, see G-Meter 161

Accessories and parts 10

Accident Assistance, see BMW Accident Assistance 376

Accident prevention, see Active Protection 211

Activated carbon filter, see Interior filter 284

Activation, airbag 177

Activation points, panorama view 259

Activation, trailer operation 315

Activation word 57

Active bonnet, see Active pedestrian protection 178

Active Cruise Control, distance control, see Cruise Control Systems 222

Active Guard, refer to Collision warning systems 179

Active Park Distance Control 264

Active pedestrian protection 178

Active Protection 211

Active shock absorber adjustment, see Adaptive M suspension 275

Adaptive brake light, see Dynamic brake lights 208

Adaptive Headlights 169

Adaptive lighting functions 168

Adaptive M suspension 275

Adaptive recuperation 321

AdBlue at low temperatures 359

AdBlue at minimum 358

AdBlue, see BMW diesel with BluePerformance 358

AdBlue, topping up 358

Additional displays camera views 253

Additives, engine oil grades 363

Adjust driving dynamics, see My Modes 135

Adjust speed to route 245

After-run of fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 308

Airbags 175

Airbags, indicator/warning light 176

Air conditioning function, climate control 279

Air distribution, manual 279

Air pressure, tyres 330

Air quality 284

Air recirculation function 280

Air vents, see Ventilation 283

Alarm system 91

All-season tyres, see Winter tyres 334

All-wheel drive, see BMW xDrive 217

Ambient lighting 173

Amount of air, automatic air conditioning 279

Android Auto, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Anticipation, Speed Limit Info 221

Antifreeze additive, see Washer fluid 365

Antifreeze protection, see Washer fluid 365

Anti-lock Braking System 214

Anti-theft security system, locking wheel bolts 349

Anti-trap mechanism, glass sunroof 98

Anti-trap mechanism, windows 94

Apple CarPlay, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Applications, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Aquaplaning 308

Assistance lines camera views 253

- Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Cruise Control Systems 222
- Assisted Driving Mode, tracking, see Cruise Control Systems 222
- Assisted View 160
- Attentiveness Assistant 212
- Attentiveness camera, driver, see Driver Attention Camera 213
- Audioplayer, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- AUTO H button, see Automatic Hold 138
- Automatic activation, panorama view 259
- Automatic air conditioning 276
- Automatic camera perspective 256
- Automatic car washes 385
- Automatic dimming, see High-beam Assistant 170
- Automatic driving lights 165
- Automatic driving lights control 165
- Automatic Hold 138
- Automatic parking function, exterior mirror 111
- Automatic programme, automatic air conditioning 277
- Automatic rear air-conditioning system 276
- Automatic Start/Stop function 126
- Automatic time setting 161
- Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 128
- Automatic unlocking 90
- Automating habits, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 59
- AUTO programme, automatic air conditioning 277
- Average consumption, see Trip data 159
- Axle loads, permitted 391
- B**
- Backrest angle 102
- Backrest angle, rear seats 104
- Backrest contour, see Lumbar support 103
- Backrest, seats 100
- Back seats 104
- Bad weather light 171
- Ball head, electrically adjustable 313
- Bar for tow-starting/towing away 383
- Battery, disposal 374
- Battery, vehicle 371
- Belts, see Seat belts 104
- Biodiesel 357
- Blower, see Amount of air 279
- Bluetooth audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- Bluetooth connection, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- BMW Accident Assistance 376
- BMW app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- BMW Assistance, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- BMW Curved Display 50
- BMW diesel with BluePerformance 358
- BMW Digital Key 85
- BMW Drive Recorder 208
- BMW IconicSounds 275
- BMW ID 67
- BMW iDrive 49
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
- BMW Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display 50
- BMW Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display 50
- BMW Maintenance System 367
- BMW Operating System, see BMW iDrive 49
- BMW Roadside Assistance 375
- BMW Services, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- BMW SIM Reader, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- BMW Theatre Screen, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- BMW xDrive 217
- Bonnet 353
- Boost, see Sport Boost function 134
- Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front 296
- Bottle holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 297
- Brake Assist 214
- Brake discs, running in 306
- Brake discs, see Brake system 306

Brake light, adaptive, see Dynamic brake light [208](#)
Brake lights, dynamic [208](#)
Brake pads, running in [306](#)
Brake pads, see Brake system [306](#)
Brake system [306](#)
Braking, notes [309](#)
Braking safely [309](#)
Breakdown, help [375](#)
Break recommendation, see Attentiveness Assistant [212](#)
Brightness, control display [55](#)
Buckling angle, Trailer Assistant [317](#)
Button, AUTO H, see Automatic Hold [138](#)
Button, central locking system [88](#)
Button, key, Hill Descent Control [217](#)
Buttons on the steering wheel [36](#)
Button SOS, see Intelligent emergency call [378](#)
Button SOS, see Legal emergency call [377](#)
Button, start/stop [126](#)

C

Calendar day, see Date [161](#)
Calibration of the front seats [103](#)
Camera cleaning [389](#)
Camera, instrument cluster, see Driver Attention Camera [213](#)
Camera lenses, care [389](#)
Camera perspective, automatic [256](#)
Camera perspective, semi-automatic [256](#)
Camera, Reversing Assist Camera [255](#)
Cameras, see Sensors in the vehicle [40](#)
Can holder, front, see Cup holder, front [296](#)
Can holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear [297](#)
Care [385](#)
Care, displays, screens [388](#)
Care, Head-up display [388](#)
Care, light-alloy wheels [388](#)
Care of upholstery fabrics [387](#)
Care products [386](#)
Care, vehicle [386](#)
Cargo position, rear seat backrest [301](#)
Car key, see Vehicle key [72](#)
Carpet, care [389](#)

Carrying children [114](#)
Carrying children safely [114](#)
Car wash [385](#)
Car washes, automatic [385](#)
Car wash view [258](#)
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system [307](#)
CBS, see Condition Based Service [367](#)
Central airbag [176](#)
Central display, see Control display [52](#)
Central indication range, instrument cluster [158](#)
Central key, see Vehicle key [72](#)
Central locking switch, see Central locking system [88](#)
Central locking system [88](#)
Centre airbag, see Central airbag [176](#)
Centre armrest, front [296](#)
Centre console [38](#)
Changes, technical, see Your own safety [9](#)
Change, wheels and tyres [333](#)
Changing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [371](#)
Changing the battery, vehicle key [73](#)
Charging a smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [290](#)
Charging cradle for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray [290](#)
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number [20](#)
Check Control [147](#)
Checking tyre pressure, see Tyre Pressure Monitor [340](#)
Child locks [125](#)
Child restraint systems, i-Size [117](#)
Child restraint systems, see Carrying children safely [114](#)
Child safety seat fasteners, ISOFIX [116](#)
Child seat classes, see Suitable seats for child restraint systems [121](#)
Child seat installation [115](#)
Child seats, see Carrying children safely [114](#)
Chrome-like surfaces, care [388](#)
Chrome-plated surfaces, care [388](#)
Cleaning, displays, screens [388](#)
Cleaning, Head-up display [388](#)
Cleaning the camera [389](#)
Climate control [276](#)

- Closing with a smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 85
Closing with the Key Card 84
Coasting 322
Coasting in idle 322
Coat hooks 297
Cold start, see Engine start 47
Collision Warning, see Front-collision warning 180
Collision warning systems 179
Comfort Access 78
Communication, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency spare wheel 352
Compartments in the doors 295
Compressor 336
Condensation when vehicle is parked 310
Condensation, windscreen 281
Condition Based Service 367
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
ConnectedDrive Services, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
ConnectedMusic, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 288
Connecting, mobile devices 60
Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle 60
Consumption, see Trip data 159
Contactless opening and closing of tailgate 82
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continuing driving with flat tyre, see Flat tyre monitor, checking tyre pressure, see Flat tyre monitor 346
Continuing driving with flat tyre, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 340
Control display 52
Control display, brightness 55
Control systems, driving stability 214
Conveyor car wash 385
Coolant 364
Coolant level 365
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 157
Cooling, maximum 280
Cornering light 169
Corrosion, brake discs 310
Coupling angle, Trailer Assistant 317
Crossing-traffic warning 205
Crossroads Warning, see Front-collision warning 180
Cruise Control, see Cruise Control systems 222
Cruise Control Systems 222
Cup holder, front 296
Cup holder, rear 297
Current driving condition 162
Curved Display 50

D

- Damages, tyres 332
Dashboard, see Instrument cluster 50
Dashcam, see BMW Drive Recorder 208
Data protection, settings 66
Data, see Deleting personal data 66
Data storage medium, see Vehicle data and data protection 10
Data, technical 390
Date 161
Daytime driving lights 168
Deactivation, airbag 177
Defrosting, windscreen 281
De-icing 281
Deleting, personal data 66
Departure schedule, see Pre-cooling 284
Departure time, pre-conditioning via Remote Engine Start 286
Departure time, pre-cooling 284
Destination entry, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Detecting traffic lights 248
Diagnostic connection 368
Diesel fuel 357
Diesel particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 308
Digital Key, see BMW Digital Key 85
Digit input, iDrive 49
Dimensions 390

- Dimming exterior mirror 111
Dimming interior mirror 111
Direct dial buttons, see Shortcuts 54
Display and operating concept, see BMW iDrive 49
Display, current driving condition 162
Display, iDrive 49
Displaying information on driver assistance, see Assisted View 160
Displaying information on parking assistance, see Assisted View 160
Display in the windscreen, see Head-up display 145
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 172
Display panel, see Instrument cluster 50
Displays 145
Displays and icons 7
Display, see BMW Curved Display 50
Display, see Control display 52
Displays for the vehicle, see Live Vehicle 145
Display, speed limit, see Speed Limit Info 219
Disposal, coolant 365
Disposal, vehicle battery 374
Disposing of the old battery 374
Distance control, see Cruise Control Systems 222
Distance to vehicle driving ahead, distance control, see Cruise Control Systems 222
Distance warning, see Park Distance Control 261
Door handle lighting, see Welcome light 167
Door opening angle 260
Downhill gradient 309
Drinks holder, front, see Cup holder, front 296
Drinks holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 297
Drive-off Assistant, see Dynamic Stability Control 214
Drive off monitoring 266
Drive-off support 216
Drive power reduced 156
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 213
Driver assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 250
Driver assistance systems 219
Driver Attention Camera 213
Drive-ready state, engine start 47
Drive-ready state, see Operating condition of the vehicle 45
Drive Recorder 208
Driver profiles 67
Driver profiles, welcome display 67
Drive sound, see BMW IconicSounds 275
Driving 126
Driving Assistant, refer to Collision warning systems 179
Driving comfort 275
Driving condition, display 162
Driving dynamics, setting 215
Driving Experience Control, see My Modes 135
Driving lane lines, additional displays camera views 253
Driving lights control, automatic 165
Driving notes, general 307
Driving notes, running in 306
Driving off, see Drive-off support 216
Driving on poor road surfaces 306
Driving Stability Control Systems 214
Driving, Start/Stop button 126
Driving through water 308
Driving tips, see General driving notes 307
Drying air, see Air conditioning function 279
DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control 214
DTC, see Setting for increased driving dynamics 215
Dynamic brake lights 208
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M suspension 275
Dynamic ECO light function 168
Dynamic Stability Control 214
Dynamic Traction Control, see Setting for increased driving dynamics 215

E

- ECO light function, dynamic 168
Efficiency Coach, Efficient Mode 324
Efficient coasting, see Current driving condition 162
Efficient drive mode 323
Efficient mode 323
Efficient Mode drive mode, see My Modes 135
Efficient Mode, see My Modes 135

- Electronic oil measurement [361](#)
 Electronic Stability Programme ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control [214](#)
 Emergency assistance, see BMW Accident Assistance [376](#)
 Emergency assistance, see BMW Roadside Assistance [375](#)
 Emergency brake, see Emergency Stop Assistant [204](#)
 Emergency braking, see PostCrash – iBrake [211](#)
 Emergency call [377](#)
 Emergency Lane Assistant [239](#)
 Emergency release, fuel filler flap [329](#)
 Emergency release, parking lock [131](#)
 Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance [376](#)
 Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [375](#)
 Emergency spare wheel [352](#)
 Emergency Stop Assistant [204](#)
 Engine, automatic start-stop function [126](#)
 Engine compartment [353](#)
 Engine coolant [364](#)
 Engine cooling system [364](#)
 Engine idling when driving, see Coasting [322](#)
 Engine oil filler neck [362](#)
 Engine oil grades for topping up [363](#)
 Engine oil level, checking electronically [361](#)
 Engine oil, topping up [362](#)
 Engine sound, see BMW IconicSounds [275](#)
 Engine start, see Drive-ready state [47](#)
 Engine start, see Jump start [380](#)
 Engine stop, see Drive-ready state [47](#)
 Engine temperature [157](#)
 Entering an address, Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Entering letters and numbers [49](#)
 Entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster [154](#)
 Equipment, interior [288](#)
 eSIM Telephony, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- ESP Electronic Stability Programme, see Dynamic Stability Control [214](#)
 Evasion Assistant, see Front-collision warning [180](#)
 Exchange, wheels and tyres [333](#)
 Exhaust gas particulate filter [308](#)
 Exhaust, see Exhaust system [307](#)
 Exhaust system [307](#)
 Exit warning [189](#)
 Exterior lights, locked vehicle [167](#)
 Exterior mirror [109](#)
 Exterior mirror, automatic parking function [111](#)
 Exterior mirror inner [111](#)
 Exterior mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function [111](#)
 External start, see Jump start [380](#)
 Eye for securing cable, trailer operation [315](#)
 Eye for towing [384](#)
 Eyes, see Lashing eye in the luggage compartment [299](#)

F

- Factory settings, see Resetting vehicle data [66](#)
 Failure message, see Check Control [147](#)
 False alarms, see Avoiding false warnings [92](#)
 False warnings, avoiding [92](#)
 Fan run-on, see Exhaust gas particulate filter [308](#)
 Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts [104](#)
 Fatigue Warning, see Attentiveness Assistant [212](#)
 Fault displays, see Check Control [147](#)
 Filling pressure, tyres [330](#)
 Filter, see Interior filter [284](#)
 Fine wood parts, care [388](#)
 Fire extinguisher [379](#)
 First-aid kit [375](#)
 Flank view [257](#)
 Flat tyre, continue driving, see Flat tyre monitor [346](#)
 Flat tyre, fixing [335](#)
 Flat tyre message, see Flat Tyre Monitor [346](#)
 Flat tyre message, see Tyre Pressure Monitor [343](#)
 Flat tyre monitor [346](#)

Flat tyre, see Flat tyre monitor 346
Flat tyre, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 340
Flat tyre warning light, see Flat Tyre Monitor 346
Flat tyre warning light, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 343
Flat tyre, wheel change 347
Flood, driving through 308
Floor carpet, care 389
Floor mats, care 389
Fold-out position, windscreen wiper 143
Foot brake 309
For information on Wi-Fi connections, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Front airbags 175
Front-collision warning 180
Front passenger's mirror, tilting down, see Automatic parking function 111
Front passenger airbag, indicator light 178
Front seats 100
Fuel 356
Fuel filler cap 328
Fuel filler flap 328
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 329
Fuel grade 356
Fuel level indicator 161
Fuel recommendation 356
Fuel, saving 321
Fuel tank capacity 396
Fuel tank, see Capacities 396
Fuses 374

G

Gear change, Steptronic transmission 128
General driving notes 307
Glare protection, see Sun visor 288
Glass sunroof 95
Glass sunroof, initialising system 98
Glove compartment 295
G-Meter 161
GPS navigation, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Guest profile, see BMW ID 67

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 136
Hands-free system, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning lights 375
HDC, see Hill Descent Control 217
Head airbag 175
Headlight flasher 140
Headlight glass 371
Headlights, adaptive 169
Headlights, care 386
Headlights, setting, see Right-hand/left-hand traffic 171
Headliner 39
Head restraints and seats 100
Head restraints, front 107
Head restraints, rear 108
Head-up display 145
Head-up display, care 388
Head-up Display position, saving, see Memory function 112
Heavy load, stowing 298
Height, vehicle 390
Help in case of a breakdown 375
High-beam Assistant 170
High-beam headlight 140
Hill Descent Control 217
Holder for drinks, front 296
Holder for drinks, rear 297
Home lights 167
Home lights, switching on 167
Home page, see Internet 7
Horn 36
Hotel function, see Valet parking mode 89
Hot exhaust system 307
Hour, see Time 161

I

iBrake – PostCrash 211
Ice, see Outside temperature 157
Ice warning, see Outside temperature 157
IconicSounds 275
Icons and displays 7

Identification number, see Vehicle identification number [20](#)
 Identification of recommended tyres [334](#)
 iDrive [49](#)
 Ignition key, see Vehicle key [72](#)
 Important considerations [114](#)
 Inclination, backrest [102](#)
 Increase engine braking effect, see LOW programme [128](#)
 Indicator light, front passenger airbag [178](#)
 Indicator lights [148](#)
 Individual air distribution [279](#)
 Individual settings, see BMW ID [67](#)
 Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [290](#)
 Initialisation, see Flat Tyre Monitor [346](#)
 Input comparison [49](#)
 Installing child restraint systems [115](#)
 Instrument cluster [50](#)
 Instrument lighting [172](#)
 Instrument panel, see Instrument cluster [50](#)
 Integrated key [73](#)
 Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle [6](#)
 Intelligent emergency call [378](#)
 Intelligent Personal Assistant [56](#)
 Intended use [9](#)
 Interior camera [292](#)
 Interior equipment [288](#)
 Interior filter [284](#)
 Interior lights [172](#)
 Interior lights, locked vehicle [167](#)
 Interior mirror [111](#)
 Interior mirror, manual dim [111](#)
 Interior mirror, outer [109](#)
 Interior movement detector [92](#)
 Intersection Assistant, see Traffic light detection [248](#)
 Interval Display, see Service requirements [163](#)
 i-Size child restraint systems [117](#)
 ISOFIX, child safety seat fasteners [116](#)

J

Jacking points [350](#)
 Journey data [159](#)
 Joystick, Steptronic transmission [128](#)

Jump start [380](#)
 Jump starting, see Jump start [380](#)
 Jump start terminals [381](#)

K

Kenaf, care [388](#)
 Key Card [84](#)
 Keyless Go, see Comfort Access [78](#)
 Key, mechanical [73](#)
 Key, see Vehicle key [72](#)
 Kickdown, Steptronic transmission [128](#)

L

Laminated vehicle glass [308](#)
 Lane boundary, warning [191](#)
 Lane Change Assistant [240](#)
 Lane Change Warning [195](#)
 Lane change with active route guidance [247](#)
 Lane Departure Warning [191](#)
 Lane Keeping Assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision warning [198](#)
 Language, setting [58](#)
 Lashing eyes in the luggage compartment [299](#)
 Lashing straps, see Lashing eyes in the luggage compartment [299](#)
 Last service, see Service history [164](#)
 Lateral Parking Aid [256](#)
 Launch Control [133](#)
 Laying up the vehicle [389](#)
 Laying up, vehicle [389](#)
 Leather care [387](#)
 LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [371](#)
 Left-hand traffic, light setting [171](#)
 Legal emergency call [377](#)
 Length, vehicle [390](#)
 Light-alloy wheels, care [388](#)
 Light in exterior mirror, see Crossing-traffic Warning [205](#)
 Lighting [165](#)
 Lighting, loudspeakers [173](#)
 Light in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning [195](#)

- Lights 165
Lights and bulbs 371
Lights, care 386
Light switch 165
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 154
Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display 50
Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display 50
Live Vehicle 145
Load 298
Loading position 301
Loading the luggage compartment, see Stowing loads 298
Loads 298
Loads, stowing and securing 298
Local time, see Time 161
Locking, doors and windows 125
Locking, see Opening and closing 72
Locking, settings 89
Locking wheel bolts 349
Lock, wheel bolts 349
Lock, window lifters, see Safety switch 95
Loudspeaker lighting 173
Low-beam headlight, operation 166
Lower back support, see Lumbar support 103
LOW programme 128
Luggage compartment 298
Luggage compartment cover 302
Luggage compartment, extending 301
Luggage compartment partition net 303
Luggage rack, see Roof bars 310
Lumbar massage, see Seat massage 103
Lumbar support 103
- M**
- Maintenance requirement, see Condition Based Service 367
Maintenance System, BMW 367
Make-up mirror 288
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 147
Malfunction, vehicle key 75
Manually unlock doors, see Integrated key 73
Manual mode, transmission 132
Manual operation, air distribution 279
Manual operation, amount of air 279
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 329
Map, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Matt paintwork, care 387
Maximum cooling 280
Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info 219
Maximum speed, winter tyres 334
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 375
Memory function 112
Messages, see Check Control 147
Messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Methyl ester, see Diesel 357
Metres, see Instrument cluster 50
Microfilter, see Interior filter 284
Mild hybrid technology 374
Minimum tread depth, tyres 332
Mirror position, saving, see Memory function 112
Mirror, vanity 288
Mobile communications in the vehicle 308
Mobile phone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Mobility system, see Tyre repair kit 335
MODE button, see Cruise Control Systems 222
Moisture in the headlights, see Headlight glass 371
Monitoring tyre pressure, see Flat tyre monitor 346
Monitoring tyre pressure, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 340
Monitor, see Control display 52
MP3 player, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M suspension 275
Multifunction hook 299
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 36
My BMW app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
My Modes 135

N

Neck restraints, front, see Front head restraints [107](#)

Neck restraints, rear, see Rear head restraints [108](#)

Net, luggage compartment [299](#)

Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care [388](#)

Non-hard roads, off-road trips [306](#)

No-overtaking indicator [219](#)

No Passing information, see Speed Limit Display with no-overtaking indicator [219](#)

Notes [6](#)

Notifications, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing away [383](#)

O

OBD, see On-board diagnosis [368](#)

Obstacle marking, additional displays camera views [253](#)

Octane number, see Petrol grade [357](#)

Odometer, see Trip data [159](#)

OFF display, instrument cluster, see Standby state and Drive-ready state [157](#)

Oil filler neck [362](#)

Oil grades for topping up, engine [363](#)

Oil level, checking electronically [361](#)

Oil service interval, see Service requirements [163](#)

Oil, topping up [362](#)

On-board computer, see Trip data [159](#)

On-board diagnosis [368](#)

On-board monitor, see Control display [52](#)

One-touch signalling [140](#)

Open circuit [373](#)

Opening and closing [72](#)

Opening with a smartphone, see BMW Digital Key [85](#)

Opening with the Key Card [84](#)

Operating condition of the vehicle [45](#)

Operating menus, see BMW iDrive [49](#)

Operating principle, see BMW iDrive [49](#)

Operating System, see BMW iDrive [49](#)

Operating temperature, see Engine temperature [157](#)

Operation by voice control [56](#)

Optimum shift indicator [155](#)

Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment [8](#)

Outlets, see Ventilation [283](#)

Outside temperature [157](#)

Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature [157](#)

P

Paintwork, vehicle care [386](#)

Panorama View [259](#)

Panorama View, see Panorama View [259](#)

Panoramic display, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof [95](#)

Park Assist [267](#)

Park Distance Control [261](#)

Parking aid, see Park Distance Control [261](#)

Parking assistance lines, additional displays camera views [253](#)

Parking assistance systems [250](#)

Parking Assistant [267](#)

Parking Assistant Plus, see Parking assistance systems [250](#)

Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems [250](#)

Parking brake [136](#)

Parking brake function, see Active Park Distance Control [264](#)

Parking light [167](#)

Parking lock, unlocking electronically [131](#)

Parking with Automatic Hold [138](#)

Particle filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter [308](#)

Particulate filter, see Interior filter [284](#)

Partition net [303](#)

Part replacement [370](#)

Parts and accessories [10](#)

Payload, technical data [391](#)

PDC, see Park Distance Control [261](#)

Pedestrian protection, active [178](#)

- Pedestrian Warning, see Front-collision warning 180
Personal Assistant 56
Personal data, deleting 66
Personal eSIM, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Personal hotspot, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Personal Mode drive mode, see My Modes 135
Personal Mode, see My Modes 135
Personal profile, see BMW ID 67
Personal settings 66
Petrol 356
Petrol grade 357
Petrol particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 308
Physical units, see Setting units of measurement 162
Place for children 114
Plasters, see First-aid kit 375
Plastic parts, care 388
PostCrash – iBrake 211
Power display, instrument cluster 156
Power display, see Sport displays 163
Powermeter, see Power display 156
Power window regulators 93
Pre-conditioning via Remote Engine Start 285
Pre-cooling 284
Pressure, tyres 330
Pressure warning, see Flat tyre monitor, tyre pressure warning, see Flat tyre monitor 346
Pressure warning, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 340
Prevention of rear-end collision, see Rear Collision Prevention 200
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Anti-trap mechanism 98
Protective function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism 94
- R**
- Racing track 311
Radar sensors, see Sensors in the vehicle 40
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 308
Radio information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Radio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Radio stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rain sensor 141
Range 161
Rapeseed methyl ester RME, see Diesel 357
READY display, instrument cluster, see Standby state and Drive-ready state 157
Real Time Traffic Information, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rear Collision Prevention 200
Rear fog light 171
Rear fog light, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Rear light, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Rear luggage rack 319
Rear seat backrest angle 104
Rear seat backrests, folding down 301
Rear seats 104
Rear-view mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function 111
Rear window heating 282
Rear wiper, operation 143
Recirculation, see Air recirculation function 280
Recommended gear for fuel-efficient driving, see Optimum shift indicator 155
Recommended makes of tyre 334
Recuperation, adaptive 321
Recycling, see Recycling 369
Reduced drive power 156
Reducing agent, see BMW diesel with Blue-Performance 358
Refuelling 328
Remote 3D View 261
Remote control, see Vehicle key 72
Remote Engine Start, see Pre-conditioning 285
Remote services, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 62
Renewal, wheels and tyres 333
Replacement of parts 370

Replacement, wheels and tyres 333
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 371
Replacing front lights, see Lights and bulbs 371
Replacing headlights, see Lights and bulbs 371
Replacing light-emitting diodes, see Lights and bulbs 371
Replacing lights, see Lights and bulbs 371
Replacing parts 370
Replacing rear lights, see Lights and bulbs 371
Reserve warning, see Range 161
Resetting, vehicle data 66
Reset, Tyre Pressure Monitor 342
Reset, vehicle settings 66
Restraint systems for children, see Carrying children safely 114
Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key 85
Rest state, see Operating condition of the vehicle 45
Retreaded tyres 334
Reversing Assistant 272
Reversing Assist Camera 255
Revolution counter 157
Right-hand traffic, light setting 171
Risk of collision when exiting 189
RME rapeseed methyl ester, see Diesel 357
Road Priority Warning 201
Roadside Assistance, see BMW Accident Assistance 376
Roadside Assistance, see BMW Roadside Assistance 375
Rolling in idle, see Coasting 322
RON, see Petrol grade 357
Roof bars 310
Roof load, permitted 391
Roof luggage bars, see Roof bars 310
Rope for tow-starting/towing away 383
Roundabout light 169
Route and Intersection Assistant, see Adjusting speed to route 245
Route and Intersection Assistant, see Traffic light detection 248
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber parts, care 388
Running in 306

S

Safe Exit, see Exit warning 189
Safe seating position 100
Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key 85
Safety and warning, refer to Collision warning systems 179
Safety package, see Active Protection 211
Safety switch, windows 95
Safety systems, refer to Collision warning systems 179
Safety systems, see Airbags 175
Saved stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Saving energy, see Optimum shift indicator 155
Sealing compound, see Tyre repair kit 335
Seat belt reminder, see Seat belt warning 106
Seat belts 104
Seat belts, care 389
Seat belt warning 106
seat calibration 103
Seat heating 282
Seat massage 103
Seat position, saving, see Memory function 112
Seats and head restraints 100
Seats, front 100
Seats, rear 104
Securing, loads 298
Selection list in the instrument cluster 154
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 128
Semi-automatic camera perspective 256
Sensors, care 389
Sensors in the vehicle 40
Service 367
Service history 164
Service performed, see Service history 164
Service requirements 163
Service requirement, see Condition Based Service 367
Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 376
Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 375
Service, see Service requirements 163
Servotronic 218
SET button, see Cruise Control Systems 222
Set clock 161
Set day, see Date 161

- Set time, see Time 161
Setting, control display 55
Settings, locking/unlocking 89
Settings, resetting, vehicle 66
Settings, seats and head restraints 100
Settings, steering wheel 112
Shift Lights, revolution counter 158
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 132
Shock absorber adjustment, active, see Adaptive M suspension 275
Shortcuts, iDrive 54
Side airbag 175
Side collision warning 198
Side lights 166
Side nozzles, see Ventilation 283
Side protection, see Automatic camera perspective 256
Signal horn, horn 36
Signals on unlocking, see Acknowledgement signals 90
SIM Reader, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sizes, see Dimensions 390
Slipperiness, see Outside temperature 157
Slippery road, see Outside temperature 157
Smallest turning radius, vehicle 390
Smartphone, operating via voice input 59
Smartphone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Snaking movement of the trailer, see Trailer Stability Control 319
Snapshot camera, see Interior camera 292
Snow chains 339
Socket for on-board diagnosis 368
Sockets, electrical devices 288
Software update, see Remote Software Upgrade 62
Software upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 62
Software version, see Remote Software Upgrade 62
Soot particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 308
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 378
SOS button, see Legal emergency call 377
Sound settings, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sound system, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spanner, see Toolkit 370
Spare wheel, see Emergency spare wheel 352
Speech recognition 56
Speed Limit Assist 243
Speed Limit Device, speed limiter, see Cruise Control Systems 222
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info 219
Speed limiter, manual, see Cruise Control Systems 222
Speed Limit Info 219
Speed Limit Info with anticipation 221
Speed limit warning 219
Sport Boost function 134
Sport displays 163
Sport Mode drive mode, see My Modes 135
Sport Mode, see My Modes 135
SPORT PLUS setting, see Setting for increased driving dynamics 215
Sport programme, transmission 128
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension 275
Stability control systems 214
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Standby state, see Operating condition of the vehicle 45
Start/Stop button 126
Starting, see Drive-ready state 47
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 47
Starting the engine with the Key Card 84
Status indicator, tyres 342
Status information, iDrive 53
Status of the Owner's Handbook 9
Status, vehicle 162
Steering assistance, see Servotronic 218
Steering column adjustment 112
Steering wheel, adjusting 112
Steering wheel, buttons 36
Steering wheel heating 282
Steering wheel position, saving, see Memory function 112
Steptronic sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 128

- Steptronic transmission 128
 Steptronic transmission with double clutch, see
 Steptronic transmission 128
 Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state 47
 Storage compartment, centre console 296
 Storage compartments 295
 Storage, see Laying up the vehicle 389
 Storage, tyres 335
 Stowing, loads 298
 Summer tyres, tread 332
 Sun visor 288
 Supplementary Owner's Handbook 7
 Suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M sus-
 pension 275
 Switches, see Vehicle cockpit 36
 SYNC programme, automatic air condition-
 ing 281
 System, alarm, see Alarm system 91
 System language, setting, see Language 58

T

- Tailgate, contactless opening and closing 82
 Tank display 161
 Technical changes, see Your own safety 9
 Technical data 390
 Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navi-
 gation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 Telephone, selection list in the instrument
 cluster 154
 Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navi-
 gation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 Temperature, automatic air conditioning 278
 Temperature display, see Outside tempera-
 ture 157
 Tensioning strap, see Lashing eyes in the lug-
 gage compartment 299
 Terminal, jump start 381
 Thigh support 103
 Tilt alarm sensor 92
 Tilting down, front passenger's mirror, see Au-
 tomatic parking function 111
 Time 161
 Time of day, see Time 161
 Time setting, automatic 161
 Time zone 161
- Toolkit 370
 Tools 370
 Torque display, see Sport displays 163
 Total weight, permitted 391
 Total weight, trailer operation 393
 Tourist function, see Right-hand/left-hand traf-
 fic 171
 Towbar 383
 Tow fitting, see Towing eye 384
 Towing away 381
 Towing eye 384
 Towing rope 383
 Towing, see Tow-starting and towing
 away 381
 Tow-starting 381
 Tracking, Assisted Driving Mode, see Cruise
 Control Systems 222
 Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability
 Control 214
 Traffic information, see Owner's Handbook for
 Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 Traffic information, see Owner's Manual for
 Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 Traffic jam assistant, Assisted Driving Mode
 Plus, see Cruise Control Systems 222
 Traffic light detection 248
 Traffic-queue assistant, Assisted Driving Mode
 Plus, see Cruise Control Systems 222
 Trailer Assistant 317
 Trailer loads 393
 Trailer nose weight, technical data 393
 Trailer operation 312
 Trailer operation, activation 315
 Trailer operation, technical data 393
 Trailer Stability Control 319
 Trailer tow hitch, ball head, electrically adjusta-
 ble 313
 Trailer tow hitch view 258
 Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 128
 Tread, tyres 332
 Trip data 159
 Trip odometer, see Trip data 159
 Trips on poor road surfaces 306
 Turn indicator, indicator light 151
 Turn indicator, operation 140

Turn indicator, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 371

Turn Indicator, see Turn indicator 140

Turning circle lines, additional displays camera views 253

Turning radius, vehicle 390

Turning up, dimming, see High-beam Assistant 170

Turn Warning, see Front-collision warning 180

Tyre age 333

Tyre change 333

Tyre damages 332

Tyre inflation pressure 330

Tyre makes, recommendation 334

Tyre pressure 330

Tyre Pressure Monitor 340

Tyre Pressure Monitor, reset 342

Tyre pressure warning, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 340

Tyre repair kit 335

Tyres and wheels 330

Tyre sealant, see Tyre repair kit 335

Tyre settings 341

Tyre tread 332

U

UCC, see Traffic light detection 248

Ultrasonic sensors, see Sensors in the vehicle 40

Units of measurement, setting 162

Units, see Setting units of measurement 162

Unloaded weight 391

Unlocking, automatic 90

Unlocking, see Opening and closing 72

Unlocking, settings 89

Updates after going to press 9

Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 62

Upper retaining strap, top tether 118

Urban Cruise Control, see Traffic light detection 248

USB audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication. 6

USB port, position in the vehicle 289

Use, intended 9

V

Valet parking mode 89

Vanity mirror 288

Variable light distribution 169

Vehicle acknowledgement signals 90

Vehicle battery 371

Vehicle breakdown, see Help in case of a breakdown 375

Vehicle care 386

Vehicle cockpit 36

Vehicle data and data protection 10

Vehicle data, resetting 66

Vehicle equipment 8

Vehicle identification number 20

Vehicle key 72

Vehicle key, additional 72

Vehicle key, changing the battery 73

Vehicle key, integrated key 73

Vehicle key, loss 72

Vehicle key, malfunction 75

Vehicle paintwork, care 386

Vehicle, running in 306

Vehicle status 162

Vehicle wash 385

Ventilation 283

Ventilation, see Pre-cooling 284

Video recording, see BMW Drive Recorder 208

Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

VIN, see Vehicle identification number 20

Voice control 56

Voice control system 56

Voice input, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56

Volume, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

W

Warning function for oncoming traffic, see Front-collision warning 180

Warning function, rear-end collision 200

Warning function with wrong direction of travel, see Wrong-way Warning 203

Warning in case of crossing traffic 205

Warning light in exterior mirror, see Crossing-traffic Warning 205
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning 195
Warning lights 148
Warning messages, see Check Control 147
Warnings, false 92
Warning systems for collision risk 179
Warning triangle 375
Warning when exiting 189
Warning when opening the doors, see Exit warning 189
Warranty 9
Warranty Booklet, see Warranty 9
Washer fluid 365
Washer fluid, reservoir 365
Washer jets, windows 143
Washing fluid, see Washer fluid 365
Wash, vehicle 385
Water on roads 308
Water, see Condensation when vehicle is parked 310
Web page, see Internet 7
Website 7
Weights 391
Welcome display, driver profiles 67
Welcome light 167
Wheelbase, vehicle 390
Wheel change 347
Wheels and tyres 330
Wheels and tyres, exchange 333
Widgets, iDrive 53
Widgets, instrument cluster, see Central indication range 158
Width, vehicle 390
Window glass, defrosting 281
Window lifters 93
Windscreen, defrosting 281
Windscreen washer jets 143
Windscreen washing system, see Wiper system 140
Windscreen wiper, fold-out position 143
Windscreen wipers 140
Windscreen wipers, see Wiper system 140
Winter storage, see Laying up the vehicle 389
Winter tyres 334

Winter tyres, tread 332
Wiper blades, changing 370
Wipers, see Wiper system 140
Wiping fluid, see Washer fluid 365
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 290
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 290
Wood parts, care 388
Wordmatch principle, see Input comparison 49
Workshop, see Service requirements 163
Wrong-way Warning 203

X

xDrive 217

Y

Your own safety 9



01405A7CB30 en

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app tells you all about your vehicle's equipment and offers additional content and functions:



Everything you need to know about navigation, entertainment and communication

Photo-realistic animated content demonstrating various vehicle functions

Keyword search

360° View: An interactive virtual tour of the interior and exterior of your vehicle

Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons inside the vehicle

Available in more than 30 languages

Can be downloaded and used offline



01405A7CB30 en



Download on the
App Store

GET IT ON
Google Play